



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 08231331 7

ENGLISH GRAMMAR

---

---

BENNETT



KRIO  
Bennett  
Digitized by Google



A

# LATIN GRAMMAR

BY

CHARLES E. BENNETT

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN CORNELL UNIVERSITY

*REVISED EDITION*

ALLYN AND BACON

Boston and Chicago

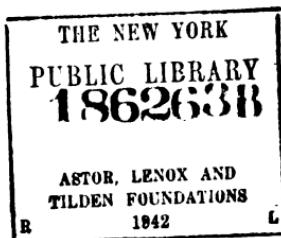
[1919]

Digitized by Google

First edition printed February, 1895.

Reprinted April and September, 1895; April, 1896;  
July, 1897; April, 1898; May and September, 1899;  
April and November, 1900; October, 1901; March,  
1902; April and November, 1903; July, 1904; April,  
1905; April and November, 1906.

Revised edition printed March, 1908; April and  
October, 1909.



COPYRIGHT, 1895 AND 1908,  
BY CHARLES E. BENNETT.

Reprinting missing copy.  
653914.

Norwood Press  
J. S. Cushing Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.  
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.

## PREFACE.

THE present book is a revision of my *Latin Grammar* originally published in 1895. Wherever greater accuracy or precision of statement seemed possible, I have endeavored to secure this. The rules for syllable division have been changed and made to conform to the prevailing practice of the Romans themselves. In the Perfect Subjunctive Active, the endings *-is*, *-imus*, *-itis* are now marked long. The theory of vowel length before the suffixes *-gnus*, *-gna*, *-gnum*, and also before *j*, has been discarded. In the Syntax I have recognized a special category of Ablative of Association, and have abandoned the original doctrine as to the force of tenses in the Prohibitive.

Apart from the foregoing, only minor and unessential modifications have been introduced. In its main lines the work remains unchanged.

C. E. B.

ITHACA, NEW YORK,  
October 16, 1907.

---

## FROM THE PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

THE object of this book is to present *the essential facts* of Latin grammar in a direct and simple manner, and within the smallest compass consistent with scholarly standards. While intended primarily for the secondary school, it has not neglected the needs of the college student, and aims to furnish such grammatical information as is ordinarily required in undergraduate courses.

The experience of German educators in recent years has tended to restrict the size of school-grammars of Latin, and has demanded an incorporation of the main principles of the language in compact manuals of 250 pages.<sup>1</sup> Within the past decade, several grammars of this scope have appeared which have amply met the exacting demands of the full Gymnasial Latin course, — a period of study representing quite as much reading as that covered by the average American undergraduate.

The publication in this country of a grammar of similar plan and scope seems fully justified at the present time, as all recent editions of classic texts summarize in introductions the special idioms of grammar and style peculiar to individual authors. This makes it feasible to dispense with the enumeration of many *minutiae* of usage which would otherwise demand consideration in a student's grammar.

In the chapter on Prosody, I have designedly omitted all special treatment of the lyric metres of Horace and Catullus, as well as of the measures of the comic poets. Our standard editions of these authors all give such thorough consideration to versification that repetition in a separate place seems superfluous.

ITHACA, NEW YORK,  
December 15, 1894.

---

<sup>1</sup> One of the most eminent of living Latinists, Professor Eduard Wölfflin, of Munich, has expressed the opinion that the essentials may be given within even smaller compass than this. See his Preface to the Schmalz-Wagener *Latinische Grammatik*, 1891.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

---

## PART I.

### SOUNDS, ACCENT, QUANTITY, ETC.

	PAGE		PAGE
The Alphabet . . . . .	1	Accent . . . . .	5
Classification of Sounds . . . . .	1	Vowel Changes . . . . .	6
Sounds of the Letters . . . . .	3	Consonant Changes . . . . .	7
Syllables . . . . .	4	Peculiarities of Orthography . . . . .	7
Quantity . . . . .	4		

## PART II.

### INFLECTIONS.

#### CHAPTER I.—*Declension.*

##### *A. NOUNS.*

Gender of Nouns . . . . .	10
Number . . . . .	11
Cases . . . . .	11
The Five Declensions . . . . .	12
First Declension . . . . .	13
Second Declension . . . . .	14
Third Declension . . . . .	18
Fourth Declension . . . . .	28
Fifth Declension . . . . .	29
Defective Nouns . . . . .	30

##### *B. ADJECTIVES.*

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions . . . . .	34
Adjectives of the Third Declension . . . . .	36
Comparison of Adjectives . . . . .	40
Formation and Comparison of Adverbs . . . . .	43
Numerals . . . . .	45

##### *C. PRONOUNS.*

Personal Pronouns . . . . .	48
Reflexive Pronouns . . . . .	49
Possessive Pronouns . . . . .	49
Demonstrative Pronouns . . . . .	50
The Intensive Pronoun . . . . .	51
The Relative Pronoun . . . . .	51
Interrogative Pronouns . . . . .	52
Indefinite Pronouns . . . . .	52
Pronominal Adjectives . . . . .	53

#### CHAPTER II.—*Conjugation.*

Verb-Stems . . . . .	54
The Four Conjugations . . . . .	55
Conjugation of <i>Sum</i> . . . . .	56
First Conjugation . . . . .	58
Second Conjugation . . . . .	62
Third Conjugation . . . . .	66
Fourth Conjugation . . . . .	70
Verbs in <i>-iō</i> of the Third Conjugation . . . . .	74
Deponent Verbs . . . . .	76



PAGE	PAGE		
Semi-Deponents . . . . .	78	List of the Most Important Verbs	
Periphrastic Conjugation . . . . .	78	with Principal Parts . . . . .	83
Peculiarities of Conjugation . . . . .	79	Irregular Verbs . . . . .	95
Formation of the Verb-Stems . . . . .	80	Defective Verbs . . . . .	102
		Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	104

**PART III.****PARTICLES.**

Adverbs . . . . .	106
Prepositions . . . . .	107
Interjections . . . . .	108

**PART IV.****WORD FORMATION.**

I. DERIVATIVES.	Adverbs . . . . .	114	
Nouns . . . . .	109		
Adjectives . . . . .	111	II. COMPOUNDS.	
Verbs . . . . .	113	Examples of Compounds . . . . .	115

**PART V.****SYNTAX.**

CHAPTER I.— <i>Sentences.</i>	CHAPTER III.— <i>Syntax of Adjectives.</i>	
Classification of Sentences . . . . .	Agreement of Adjectives . . . . .	153
Form of Interrogative Sentences . . . . .	Adjectives used Substantively . . . . .	154
Subject and Predicate . . . . .	Adjectives with the Force of Adverbs . . . . .	156
Simple and Compound Sentences . . . . .	Comparatives and Superlatives . . . . .	156
CHAPTER II.— <i>Syntax of Nouns.</i>	Other Peculiarities . . . . .	156
Subject . . . . .	CHAPTER IV.— <i>Syntax of Pronouns.</i>	
Predicate Nouns . . . . .	Personal Pronouns . . . . .	157
Appositives . . . . .	Possessive Pronouns . . . . .	157
The Nominative . . . . .	Reflexive Pronouns . . . . .	158
The Accusative . . . . .	Reciprocal Pronouns . . . . .	159
The Dative . . . . .	Demonstrative Pronouns . . . . .	159
The Genitive . . . . .		
The Ablative . . . . .		
The Locative . . . . .		

PAGE	PAGE			
Relative Pronouns . . . . .	161	Conditional Clauses of Comparison . . . . .	203	
Indefinite Pronouns . . . . .	163	Concessive Clauses . . . . .	203	
Pronominal Adjectives . . . . .	164	Adversative Clauses with <i>Quamvis, Quamquam, etc.</i> . . . . .	203	
<b>CHAPTER V.—<i>Syntax of Verbs.</i></b>				
Agreement of Verbs . . . . .	165	Clauses of Wish and Proviso . . . . .	205	
Voices . . . . .	167	Relative Clauses . . . . .	205	
Tenses . . . . .	167	Indirect Discourse . . . . .	206	
Of the Indicative . . . . .	167	Moods in Indirect Discourse . . . . .	206	
Of the Subjunctive . . . . .	171	Tenses in Indirect Discourse . . . . .	208	
Of the Infinitive . . . . .	174	Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse . . . . .	209	
Moods . . . . .	176	Implied Indirect Discourse . . . . .	211	
In Independent Sentences .	176	Subjunctive by Attraction . . . . .	212	
Volitive Subjunctive .	176	Noun and Adjective Forms of the Verb . . . . .	212	
Optative Subjunctive .	178	Infinitive . . . . .	213	
Potential Subjunctive .	179	Participles . . . . .	217	
Imperative . . . . .	180	Gerund . . . . .	220	
In Dependent Sentences .	181	Supine . . . . .	223	
Clauses of Purpose .	181	<b>CHAPTER VI.—<i>Particles.</i></b>		
Clauses of Characteristic .	182	Coördinate Conjunctions . . . . .	223	
Clauses of Result . . . . .	184	Adverbs . . . . .	227	
Causal Clauses . . . . .	185	<b>CHAPTER VII.—<i>Word-Order and Sentence-Structure.</i></b>		
Temporal Clauses . . . . .	187	Word-Order . . . . .	227	
Introduced by <i>Postquam</i> , <i>Ut, Ubi, etc.</i> . . . . .	187	Sentence-Structure . . . . .	232	
<i>Cum</i> -Clauses . . . . .	188	<b>CHAPTER VIII.—<i>Hints on Latin Style.</i></b>		
Introduced by <i>Antequam</i> and <i>Priusquam</i> . . . . .	190	Nouns . . . . .	233	
Introduced by <i>Dum, Dō-</i> <i>nec, Quoad</i> . . . . .	191	Adjectives . . . . .	235	
Substantive Clauses . . . . .	192	Pronouns . . . . .	236	
Developed from the Voli- tive . . . . .	192	Verbs . . . . .	236	
Developed from the Opta- tive . . . . .	194	The Cases . . . . .	238	
Of Result . . . . .	195			
After <i>nōn dubitō, etc.</i> . . .	195			
Introduced by <i>Quod</i> . . . . .	196			
Indirect Questions . . . . .	197			
Conditional Sentences . . . . .	198			
Use of <i>Si, Nisi, Sīn</i> . . . . .	202			

**PART VI.****PROSODY.**

	PAGE		PAGE
Quantity of Vowels and Sylla- bles . . . . .	240	The Dactylic Hexameter . . . . .	245
Verse-Structure . . . . .	243	The Dactylic Pentameter . . . . .	246
		Iambic Verses . . . . .	246

**SUPPLEMENTS TO THE GRAMMAR.**

I. Roman Calendar . . . . .	247	III. Figures of Syntax and Rhet- oric . . . . .	249
II. Roman Names . . . . .	249		

## PART I.

### SOUNDS, ACCENT, QUANTITY.

#### THE ALPHABET.

1. The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English, except that the Latin has no **w**.

1. **K** occurs only in *Kalendae* and a few other words; **y** and **z** were introduced from the Greek about 50 B.C., and occur only in foreign words—chiefly Greek.

2. With the Romans, who regularly employed only capitals, **I** served both as vowel and consonant; so also **V**. For us, however, it is more convenient to distinguish the vowel and consonant sounds, and to write **i** and **u** for the former, **j** and **v** for the latter. Yet some scholars prefer to employ **i** and **u** in the function of consonants as well as vowels.

#### CLASSIFICATION OF SOUNDS.

2. 1. The Vowels are **a, e, i, o, u, y**. The other letters are Consonants. The Diphthongs are **ae, oe, ei, au, eu, ui**.

2. Consonants are further subdivided into Mutes, Liquids, Nasals, and Spirants.

3. The Mutes are **p, t, c, k, q; b, d, g; ph, th, ch**. Of these,—

*a)* **p, t, c, k, q** are voiceless,<sup>1</sup> *i.e.* sounded *without* voice or vibration of the vocal cords.

*b)* **b, d, g** are voiced,<sup>2</sup> *i.e.* sounded *with* vibration of the vocal cords.

---

<sup>1</sup> For 'voiceless,' 'surd,' 'hard,' or 'tenuis' are sometimes used.

<sup>2</sup> For 'voiced,' 'sonant,' 'soft,' or 'media' are sometimes used.

c) **ph, th, ch** are aspirates. These are confined almost exclusively to words derived from the Greek, and were equivalent to **p + h, t + h, c + h**, i.e. to the corresponding voiceless mutes with a following breath, as in Eng. *loop-hole, hot-house, block-house*.

4. The Mutes admit of classification also as

Labials,	p, b, ph.
Dentals (or Linguals),	t, d, th.
Gutturals (or Palatals),	c, k, g, ch.

5. The Liquids are **l, r**. These sounds were voiced.

6. The Nasals are **m, n**. These were voiced. Besides its ordinary sound, **n**, when followed by a guttural mute, also had another sound,—that of **ng** in *sing*,—the so-called **n adulterinum**; as,—

*anceps, double*, pronounced *angeceps*.

7. The Spirants (sometimes called Fricatives) are **f, s, h**. These were voiceless.

8. The Semivowels are **j** and **v**. These were voiced.

9. Double Consonants are **xx** and **zz**. Of these, **xx** was equivalent to **cs**, while the equivalence of **zz** is uncertain. See § 3. 3.

10. The following table will indicate the relations of the consonant sounds:—

	VOICELESS.	VOICED.	ASPIRATES.	
Mutes,	{ p, t, c, k, q,	b, d, g,	ph, th, ch,	(Labials). (Dentals). (Gutturals).
Liquids,		l, r,		
Nasals,		m, n,		
Spirants,	{ f, s, h,			(Labial). (Dental). (Guttural).
Semivowels,		j, v.		

a. The Double Consonants, **xx** and **zz**, being compound sounds, do not admit of classification in the above table.



## SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

3. The following pronunciation (often called Roman) is substantially that employed by the Romans at the height of their civilization; *i.e.* roughly, from 50 B.C. to 50 A.D.

## I. Vowels.

ä as in <i>father</i> ;	ă as in the first syllable of <i>ahd</i> ;
ë as in <i>they</i> ;	ĕ as in <i>met</i> ;
î as in <i>machine</i> ;	ĭ as in <i>pin</i> ;
ö as in <i>note</i> ;	ŏ as in <i>obey, melody</i> ;
ü as in <i>rude</i> ;	û as in <i>put</i> ;
y like French <i>u</i> , German <i>ü</i> .	

## 2. Diphthongs.

æ like <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i> ;	eu with its two elements, ĕ and û, pronounced in rapid succession;
œ like <i>oi</i> in <i>oil</i> ;	ui occurs almost exclusively in <i>cui</i> and <i>hui</i> . These words are pronounced as though written <i>kwee</i> and <i>wheek</i> .
ei as in <i>rein</i> ;	
au like <i>ow</i> in <i>how</i> ;	

## 3. Consonants.

b, d, f, h, k, l, m, n, p, qu are pronounced as in English, except that  
bs, bt are pronounced *ps*, *pt*.

c is always pronounced as *k*.

t is always a plain *t*, never with the sound of *sh* as in Eng. *oration*.

g always as in *get*; when ngu precedes a vowel, gu has the sound of *gw*, as in *anguis, languidus*.

j has the sound of *y* as in *yet*.

r was probably slightly trilled with the tip of the tongue.

s always voiceless as in *sin*; in *suădeō, suăvis, suăscō*, and in compounds and derivatives of these words, su has the sound of *sw*.

v like *w*.

z always like *ks*; never like Eng. *gz* or *z*.

z uncertain in sound; possibly like Eng. *zd*, possibly like *s*. The latter sound is recommended.

The aspirates ph, ch, th were pronounced very nearly like our stressed Eng. *p*, *c*, *t*—so nearly so, that, for practical purposes, the latter sounds suffice.

Doubled letters, like ll, mm, tt, etc., should be so pronounced that both members of the combination are distinctly articulated.

## SYLLABLES.

4. There are as many syllables in a Latin word as there are separate vowels and diphthongs.

In the division of words into syllables,—

1. A single consonant is joined to the following vowel; as, **vo-lat**, **ge-rit**, **pe-rit**, **a-dest**.

2. Doubled consonants, like **tt**, **ss**, *etc.*, are always separated; as, **vit-ta**, **mis-sus**.

3. Other combinations of two or more consonants are regularly separated, and the first consonant of the combination is joined with the preceding vowel; as, **ma-gis-tri**, **dig-nus**, **mōn-strum**, **sis-te-re**.

4. An exception to Rule 3 occurs when the two consonants consist of a mute followed by l or r (pl, cl, tl; pr, cr, tr, *etc.*). In such cases both consonants are regularly joined to the following vowel; as, **a-grī**, **vo-lu-cris**, **pa-tris**, **mā-tris**. Yet if the l or r introduces the second part of a compound, the two consonants are separated; as, **ab-rumpō**, **ad-lātūs**.

5. The double consonant **xx** is joined to the preceding vowel; as, **ax-is**, **tāx-i**.

## QUANTITY.

## 5. A. Quantity of Vowels.

A vowel is *long* or *short* according to the length of time required for its pronunciation. No absolute rule can be given for determining the quantity of Latin vowels. This knowledge must be gained, in large measure, by experience; but the following principles are of aid:—

1. A vowel is long,<sup>1</sup>—

a) before nf or ns; as, **Infāns**, **Inferior**, **cōnsūmō**, **cēnseō**, **Insum**.

b) when the result of contraction; as, **nīlum** for **nihilum**.

## 2. A vowel is short,—

a) before nt, nd; as, **amant**, **amandus**. A few exceptions occur in compounds whose first member has a long vowel; as, **nōn-dūm** (**nōn dum**).

b) before another vowel, or h; as, **meus**, **trahō**. Some exceptions occur, chiefly in proper names derived from the Greek; as, **Aenēas**.

<sup>1</sup> In this book, long vowels are indicated by a horizontal line above them; as, **ā**, **ī**, **ō**, *etc.* Vowels not thus marked are short. Occasionally a curve is set above short vowels; as, **ē**, **ū**.

## B. Quantity of Syllables.

Syllables are distinguished as *long* or *short* according to the length of time required for their pronunciation.

### 1. A syllable is long,<sup>1</sup> —

- a) if it contains a long vowel; as, māter, rēgnūm, dīus.
- b) if it contains a diphthong; as, causae, foedus.
- c) if it contains a short vowel followed by x, z, or any two consonants (except a mute with l or r); as, axis, gaza, restō.

### 2. A syllable is short, if it contains a short vowel followed by a vowel or by a single consonant; as, mea, amat.

3. Sometimes a syllable varies in quantity, *viz.* when its vowel is short and is followed by a mute with l or r, *i.e.* by pl, cl, tl; pr, or, tr, etc.; as, ḡrī, volūoris.<sup>2</sup> Such syllables are called *common*. In prose they were regularly short, but in verse they might be treated as long at the option of the poet.

NOTE. — These distinctions of *long* and *short* are not arbitrary and artificial, but are purely natural. Thus, a syllable containing a short vowel followed by two consonants, as ng, is long, because such a syllable requires *more time* for its pronunciation; while a syllable containing a short vowel followed by one consonant is short, because it takes *less time* to pronounce it. In case of the common syllables, the mute and the liquid blend so easily as to produce a combination which takes scarcely more time than a single consonant. Yet by separating the two elements (as ag-rī) the poets were able to use such syllables as long.

## ACCENT.

### 6. 1. Words of two syllables are accented upon the first; as, tégit, mōrem.

### 2. Words of more than two syllables are accented upon the penult (next to the last) if that is a long syllable, otherwise upon the antepenult (second from the last); as, amāvī, amāntis, mísérūm.

### 3. When the enclitics -que, -ne, -ve, -ce, -met, -dum are appended to words, if the syllable preceding the enclitic is long (either originally or as a result of adding the enclitic) it is accented; as, miserōque, hominísque. But if the syllable still remains short after the enclitic has been added, it is not accented unless the word originally took the accent on the antepenult. Thus, pórtaque; but miseráque.

<sup>1</sup> To avoid confusion, the quantity of *syllables* is not indicated by any sign.

<sup>2</sup> But if the l or r introduces the second part of a compound, the preceding syllable is always long; as, abrumpō.

4. Sometimes the final -e of -ne and -oe disappears, but without affecting the accent; as, *tantōn*, *istīc*, *illūc*, *vidén* (for *vidēsne*).

5. In *utráque*, *each*, and *pléráque*, *most*, -que is not properly an enclitic; yet these words accent the penult, owing to the influence of their other cases,— *utérque*, *utrímque*, *plérímque*.

### VOWEL CHANGES.<sup>1</sup>

7. 1. In Compounds,—

- a) ē before a single consonant becomes ī; as,—  
*colligō* for *con-legō*.
- b) ā before a single consonant becomes ī; as,—  
*adīgō* for *ad-agō*.
- c) ā before two consonants becomes ē; as,—  
*expers* for *ex-pars*.
- d) ae becomes ī; as,—  
*conquīrō* for *con-quaerō*.
- e) au becomes ū, sometimes ū; as,—  
*conclūdō* for *con-claudō*;  
*explōdō* for *ex-plaudō*.

2. Contraction. Concurrent vowels were frequently contracted into one long vowel. The first of the two vowels regularly prevailed; as,—

<i>trēs</i>	for <i>tre-es</i> ;	<i>cōpia</i>	for <i>co-opia</i> ;
<i>mālō</i>	for <i>ma(v)elō</i> ;	<i>cōgō</i>	for <i>co-agō</i> ;
<i>amāsti</i>	for <i>amā(v)isti</i> ;	<i>cōmō</i>	for <i>co-emō</i> ;
<i>dēbeō</i>	for <i>dē(h)abeō</i> ;	<i>jūnior</i>	for <i>ju(v)enior</i> .
<i>nīl</i>	for <i>nihil</i> ;		

3. Parasitic Vowels. In the environment of liquids and nasals a parasitic vowel sometimes develops; as,—

*vinculum* for earlier *vinclum*.

So *periculum*, *saeculum*.

4. Syncope. Sometimes a vowel drops out by syncope; as,—  
*ārdor* for *āridor* (compare *āridus*);  
*valdē* for *validē* (compare *validus*).

---

<sup>1</sup> Only the simplest and most obvious of these are here treated.

CONSONANT CHANGES.<sup>1</sup>

8. 1. **Rhotacism.** An original **s** between vowels became **r**; as,—

**arbōs**, Gen. **arboris** (for **arbosis**);  
**genus**, Gen. **generis** (for **genesis**);  
**dirimō** (for **dis-emō**).

2. **dt, tt, ts** each give **s** or **ss**; as,—

**pēnsum** for **pend-tum**;  
**versum** for **vert-tum**;  
**mīles** for **mīlet-s**;  
**sessus** for **sedtus**;  
**passus** for **pattus**.

3. Final consonants were often omitted; as,—

**cor** for **cord**;  
**lac** for **lact**.

4. **Assimilation of Consonants.** Consonants are often assimilated to a following sound. Thus: **accurrō** (**adc-**); **aggerō** (**adg-**); **asserō** (**ads-**); **allātus** (**adl-**); **apportō** (**adp-**); **attullī** (**adt-**); **arrīdeō** (**adr-**); **afferō** (**adf-**); **occurrō** (**obo-**); **suppōnō** (**subp-**); **offerō** (**obf-**); **corrūō** (**comr-**); **collātus** (**coml-**); etc.

5. **Partial Assimilation.** Sometimes the assimilation is only partial. Thus:—

- a)* **b** before **s** or **t** becomes **p**; as,—  
**scripsi** (**scrib-sī**),      **scriptum** (**scrib-tum**).
- b)* **g** before **s** or **t** becomes **c**; as,—  
**āctus** (**āg-tus**).
- c)* **m** before a dental or guttural becomes **n**; as,—  
**eundem** (**eum-dem**);    **prīnceps** (**prīm-ceps**).

PECULIARITIES OF ORTHOGRAPHY.

9. Many words have variable orthography.

1. Sometimes the different forms belong to different periods of the language. Thus, **quom**, **voltus**, **volnus**, **volt**, etc., were the prevail-

---

<sup>1</sup> Only the simplest and most obvious of these are here treated.

ing forms almost down to the Augustan age; after that, *cum*, *vultus*, *vulnus*, *vult*, etc. So *optumus*, *maxumus*, *lubet*, *libidō*, etc., down to about the same era; later, *optimus*, *maximus*, *libet*, *libidō*, etc.

2. In some words the orthography varies at one and the same period of the language. Examples are *exspectō*, *expectō*; *existō*, *existō*; *epistula*, *epistola*; *adulēsoōns*, *adolēsoōns*; *paulus*, *paulus*; *cottidiē*, *cotidiē*; and, particularly, prepositional compounds, which often made a concession to the etymology in the spelling; as,—

<i>ad-gerō</i>	or <i>aggerō</i> ;	<i>ad-serō</i>	or <i>asserō</i> ;
<i>ad-liciō</i>	or <i>alliciō</i> ;	<i>in-lātus</i>	or <i>illātus</i> ;
<i>ad-rogāns</i>	or <i>arrogāns</i> ;	<i>sub-moveō</i>	or <i>summoveō</i> ;

and many others.

3. Compounds of *jaciō* were usually written *ēiciō*, *dēiciō*, *adiciō*, *obiciō*, etc., but were probably pronounced as though written *adjiciō*, *objiciō*, etc.

4. Adjectives and nouns in *-quus*, *-quum*; *-vus*, *-vum*; *-uus*, *-uum* preserved the earlier forms in *-quos*, *-quom*; *-vos*, *-vom*; *-uos*, *-uom*, down through the Ciceronian age; as, *antiquos*, *anti-quom*; *saevos*; *perpetuos*; *equos*; *servos*. Similarly verbs in the 3d plural present indicative exhibit the terminations *-quont*, *-quontur*; *-vont*, *-vontur*; *-uont*, *-uontur*, for the same period; as, *relinquent*, *loquontur*; *vivont*, *metuont*.

The older spelling, while generally followed in editions of Plautus and Terence, has not yet been adopted in our prose texts.

## PART II.

### INFLECTIONS.

10. The Parts of Speech in Latin are the same as in English, *viz.* Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections; but the Latin has no article.

11. Of these eight parts of speech the first four are capable of **Inflection**, *i.e.* of undergoing change of form to express modifications of meaning. In case of Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns, this process is called **Declension**; in case of Verbs, **Conjugation**.

### CHAPTER I.—*Declension.*

#### A. NOUNS.

12. A Noun is the name of a *person*, *place*, *thing*, or *quality*; as, **Caesar**, *Caesar*; **Rōma**, *Rome*; **penna**, *feather*; **virtūs**, *courage*.

1. Nouns are either Proper or Common. Proper nouns are permanent names of persons or places; as, **Caesar**, **Rōma**. Other nouns are Common; as, **penna**, **virtūs**.

2. Nouns are also distinguished as Concrete or Abstract.

a) Concrete nouns are those which designate individual objects; as, **mōns**, *mountain*; **pēs**, *foot*; **diēs**, *day*; **mēns**, *mind*.

Under concrete nouns are included, also, collective nouns ; as, *legiō, legion* ; *comitātus, retinue*.

b) Abstract nouns designate qualities ; as, *cōstantia, steadfastness* ; *paupertās, poverty*.

### GENDER OF NOUNS.

13. There are three Genders, — Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter. Gender in Latin is either natural or grammatical.

#### Natural Gender.

14. The gender of nouns is natural when it is based upon sex. Natural gender is confined entirely to names of persons ; and these are —

1. Masculine, if they denote males ; as, —  
*nauta, sailor; agricola, farmer.*
2. Feminine, if they denote females ; as, —  
*māter, mother; rēgina, queen.*

#### Grammatical Gender.

15. Grammatical gender is determined not by sex, but by the general signification of the word, or the ending of its Nominative Singular. By grammatical gender, nouns denoting things or qualities are often Masculine or Feminine, simply by virtue of their signification or the ending of the Nominative Singular. The following are the general principles for determining grammatical gender : —

##### A. Gender determined by Signification.

1. Names of *Rivers*, *Winds*, and *Months* are Masculine ; as, —

*Sequana, Seine; Eurus, east wind; Aprīlis, April.*

2. Names of *Trees*, and such names of *Towns* and *Islands* as end in *-us*, are Feminine ; as, —

*querous, oak; Corinthus, Corinth; Rhodus, Rhodes.*

Other names of towns and islands follow the gender of their endings (see *B*, below); as,—

**Delphi**, m.; **Leuctra**, n.; **Tibur**, n.; **Carthāgō**, f.

3. Indeclinable nouns, also infinitives and phrases, are Neuter; as,—

**nihil**, *nothing*; **nefās**, *wrong*; **amāre**, *to love*.

NOTE.—Exceptions to the above principles sometimes occur; as, **Allia** (the river), f.

#### *B. Gender determined by Ending of Nominative Singular.*

The gender of other nouns is determined by the ending of the Nominative Singular.<sup>1</sup>

NOTE 1.—*Common Gender.* Certain nouns are sometimes Masculine, sometimes Feminine. Thus, **sacerdōs** may mean either *priest* or *priestess*, and is Masculine or Feminine accordingly. So also **cīvis**, *citizen*; **parēns**, *parent*; etc. The gender of such nouns is said to be *common*.

NOTE 2.—Names of animals usually have grammatical gender, according to the ending of the Nominative Singular, but the one form may designate either the male or female; as, **ānsor**, m., *goose* or *gander*. So **vulpea**, f., *fox*;  **aquila**, f., *eagle*.

### NUMBER.

16. The Latin has two Numbers,—the Singular and Plural. The Singular denotes one object; the Plural, more than one.

### CASES.

17. There are six Cases in Latin:—

<b>Nominative</b> ,	Case of Subject;
<b>Genitive</b> ,	Objective with <i>of</i> , or Possessive;
<b>Dative</b> ,	Objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> ;
<b>Accusative</b> ,	Case of Direct Object;
<b>Vocative</b> ,	Case of Address;
<b>Ablative</b> .	Objective with <i>by</i> , <i>from</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>with</i> .

<sup>1</sup> The great majority of all Latin nouns come under this category. The principles for determining their gender are given under the separate declensions.

1. LOCATIVE. Vestiges of another case, the **Locative** (denoting place where), occur in names of towns and in a few other words.

2. OBLIQUE CASES. The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative are called **Oblique Cases**.

3. STEM AND CASE-ENDINGS. The different cases are formed by appending certain **case-endings** to a fundamental part called the **Stem**.<sup>1</sup> Thus, **portam** (Accusative Singular) is formed by adding the case-ending **-m** to the stem **porta-**. But in most cases the final vowel of the stem has coalesced so closely with the actual case-ending that the latter has become more or less obscured. The *apparent case-ending* thus resulting is called a **termination**.

### THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.

18. There are five Declensions in Latin, distinguished from each other by the final letter of the Stem, and also by the Termination of the Genitive Singular, as follows:—

DECLENSION.	FINAL LETTER OF STEM.	GEN. TERMINATION.
First	ā	-ae
Second	ō	-i
Third	{ ī Some consonant	-is
Fourth	ū	-ius
Fifth	ū	-ī

### Cases alike in Form.

19. 1. The Vocative is regularly like the Nominative, except in the Singular of nouns in **-us** of the Second Declension.

2. The Dative and Ablative Plural are always alike.

3. In Neuters the Accusative and Nominative are always alike, and in the Plural end in **-ā**.

4. In the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions, the Accusative Plural is regularly like the Nominative.

<sup>1</sup> The Stem is often derived from a more primitive form called the **Root**. Thus, the stem **porta-** goes back to the root **per-, por-**. Roots are usually mono-syllabic. The addition made to a root to form a stem is called a **Suffix**. Thus in **porta-** the suffix is **-ta-**.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

## -a-Stems.

20. Pure Latin nouns of the First Declension regularly end, in the Nominative Singular, in **-a**, weakened from **-ā**, and are of the Feminine Gender. They are declined as follows:—

*Porta, gate; stem, portā-.*

## SINGULAR.

CASES.	MEANINGS.	TERMINATIONS.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>porta</i>	<i>a gate (as subject)</i>	<b>-ā</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>portae</i>	<i>of a gate</i>	<b>-ae</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>portae</i>	<i>to or for a gate</i>	<b>-ae</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>portam</i>	<i>a gate (as object)</i>	<b>-am</b>
<i>Voc.</i> <i>porta</i>	<i>O gate!</i>	<b>-ā</b>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>portā</i>	<i>with, by, from, in a gate</i>	<b>-ā</b>

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i> <i>portae</i>	<i>gates (as subject)</i>	<b>-ae</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>portarū</i>	<i>of gates</i>	<b>-arūm</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>portis</i>	<i>to or for gates</i>	<b>-is</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>portās</i>	<i>gates (as object)</i>	<b>-is</b>
<i>Voc.</i> <i>portae</i>	<i>O gates!</i>	<b>-ae</b>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>portis</i>	<i>with, by, from, in gates</i>	<b>-is</b>

1. The Latin has no article, and *porta* may mean either *a gate* or *the gate*; and in the Plural, *gates* or *the gates*.

## Peculiarities of Nouns of the First Declension.

21. 1. EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER. Nouns denoting males are Masculine; as, *nauta, sailor*; *agricola, farmer*; also *Hadria, Adriatic Sea*.

2. Rare Case-Endings,—

a) An old form of the Genitive Singular in **-ās** is preserved in the combination *pater familiās, father of a family*; also in *māter familiās, filius familiās, filia familiās*. But the regular form of the Genitive in **-ae** is also admissible in these expressions; as, *pater familiae*.

b) In poetry a Genitive in **-āi** also occurs; as, *aulāi*.

- c) The Locative Singular ends in **-ae**; as, **Rōmae**, *at Rome*.
- d) A Genitive Plural in **-um** instead of **-arum** sometimes occurs; as, **Dardanidūm** instead of **Dardanidārum**. This termination **-um** is not a contraction of **-arum**, but represents an entirely different case-ending.
- e) Instead of the regular ending **-is**, we usually find **-abus** in the Dative and Ablative Plural of **dea**, *goddess*, and **filia**, *daughter*, especially when it is important to distinguish these nouns from the corresponding forms of **deus**, *god*, and **filius**, *son*. A few other words sometimes have the same peculiarity; as, **libertābus** (from **liberta**, *freedwoman*), **equābus** (*mares*), to avoid confusion with **libertis** (from **libertus**, *freedman*) and **equis** (from **equus**, *horse*).

#### Greek Nouns.

22. These end in **-ē** (Feminine); **-ās** and **-ās** (Masculine). In the Plural they are declined like regular Latin nouns of the First Declension. In the Singular they are declined as follows:—

**Archīās, Archias. Epitomē, epitome. Comētēs, comet.**

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>Archīās</b>	<b>epitomē</b>	<b>comētēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>Archīae</b>	<b>epitomēs</b>	<b>comētae</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>Archīae</b>	<b>epitomae</b>	<b>comētae</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>Archīam</b> (or <b>-ān</b> )	<b>epitomēn</b>	<b>comētēn</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>Archīa</b>	<b>epitomē</b>	<b>comētē</b> (or <b>-ē</b> )
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>Archīa</b>	<b>epitomē</b>	<b>comētē</b> (or <b>-ē</b> )

1. But most Greek nouns in **-ē** become regular Latin nouns in **-a**, and are declined like **porta**; as, **grammatica**, *grammar*; **mūsica**, *music*; **rhētorica**, *rhetoric*.

2. Some other peculiarities occur, especially in poetry.

#### SECOND DECLENSION.

##### ō-Stems.

23. Pure Latin nouns of the Second Declension end in **-us**, **-er**, **-ir**, Masculine; **-um**, Neuter. Originally **-us** in the Nominative of the Masculines was **-os**; and **-um** of the Neuters **-om**. So also in the Accusative.

Nouns in **-us** and **-um** are declined as follows :—

**Hortus**, *garden* ;      **Bellum**, *war* ;  
stem, *hortō-*.      stem, *bellō-*.

## SINGULAR.

	TERMINATION.		TERMINATION.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>hortus</i>	<b>-us</b>	<i>bellum</i>	<b>-um</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>hortī</i>	<b>-ī</b>	<i>bellī</i>	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>hortō</i>	<b>-ō</b>	<i>bellō</i>	<b>-ō</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>hortūm</i>	<b>-um</b>	<i>bellūm</i>	<b>-um</b>
<i>Voc.</i> <i>hortē</i>	<b>-e</b>	<i>bellūm</i>	<b>-um</b>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>hortō</i>	<b>-ō</b>	<i>bellō</i>	<b>-ō</b>

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i> <i>hortī</i>	<b>-ī</b>	<i>bella</i>	<b>-a</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>hortōrum</i>	<b>-ōrum</b>	<i>bellōrum</i>	<b>-ōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>hortīs</i>	<b>-īs</b>	<i>bellīs</i>	<b>-īs</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>hortōs</i>	<b>-ōs</b>	<i>bella</i>	<b>-a</b>
<i>Voc.</i> <i>hortī</i>	<b>-ī</b>	<i>bella</i>	<b>-a</b>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>hortīs</i>	<b>-īs</b>	<i>bellīs</i>	<b>-īs</b>

Nouns in **-er** and **-ir** are declined as follows :—

**Puer**, *boy* ;      **Ager**, *field* ;      **Vir**, *man* ;  
stem, *puerō-*.      stem, *agrō-*.      stem, *virō-*.

## SINGULAR.

			TERMINATION.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>vir</i>	Wanting
<i>Gen.</i> <i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<b>-ō</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>puerūm</i>	<i>agrum</i>	<i>virūm</i>	<b>-um</b>
<i>Voc.</i> <i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>vir</i>	Wanting
<i>Abl.</i> <i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<b>-ō</b>

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i> <i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>puerōrum</i>	<i>agrōrum</i>	<i>virōrum</i>	<b>-ōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virīs</i>	<b>-īs</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>puerōs</i>	<i>agrōs</i>	<i>virōs</i>	<b>-ōs</b>
<i>Voc.</i> <i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virīs</i>	<b>-īs</b>

Note that in words of the type of *puer* and *vir* the final vowel of the stem has disappeared in the Nominative and Vocative Singular.

In the Nominative and Vocative Singular of *ager*, the stem is further modified by the development of *e* before *r*.

2. The following nouns in *-er* are declined like *puer*: *adulter*, *adulterer*; *gener*, *son-in-law*; *Liber*, *Bacchus*; *socer*, *father-in-law*; *vesper*, *evening*; and compounds in *-fer* and *-ger*, as *signifer*, *armiger*.

**Nouns in *-vus*, *-vum*, *-quus*.**

24. Nouns ending in the Nominative Singular in *-vus*, *-vum*, *-quus*, exhibited two types of inflection in the classical Latin,—an earlier and a later,—as follows: —

*Earlier Inflection (including Caesar and Cicero).*

**Servos**, m., *slave*.    **Aevom**, n., *age*.    **Equos**, m., *horse*.

**SINGULAR.**

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>servos</i>	<i>aevom</i>	<i>equos</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>servī</i>	<i>aevī</i>	<i>equī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>servō</i>	<i>aevō</i>	<i>equō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>servom</i>	<i>aevom</i>	<i>equom</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>serve</i>	<i>aevom</i>	<i>eque</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>servō</i>	<i>aevō</i>	<i>equō</i>

*Later Inflection (after Cicero).*

**SINGULAR.**

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>servus</i>	<i>aevum</i>	<i>equus</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>servī</i>	<i>aevī</i>	<i>equī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>servō</i>	<i>aevō</i>	<i>equō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>servum</i>	<i>aevum</i>	<i>equum</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>serve</i>	<i>aevum</i>	<i>eque</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>servō</i>	<i>aevō</i>	<i>equō</i>

1. The Plural of these nouns is regular, and always uniform.

**Peculiarities of Inflection in the Second Declension.**

25. 1. Proper names in *-ius* regularly form the Genitive Singular in *-i* (instead of *-ii*), and the Vocative Singular in *-i* (for *-ie*); as, *Vergili*, *of Virgil*, or *O Virgil* (instead of *Vergilli*, *Vergillie*). In such words the accent stands upon the penult, even though that be short. Nouns in *-ajus*, *-ejus* form the Gen. in *-ai*, *-ei*, as *Pompejus*, *Pompef*.

2. Nouns in *-ius* and *-ium*, until after the beginning of the reign of Augustus (31 B.C.), regularly formed the Genitive Singular in *i* (instead of *-ii*); as, —

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ingenium</i>	<i>filius</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ingéni</i>	<i>fili</i>

These Genitives accent the penult, even when it is short.

3. *Filius* forms the Vocative Singular in *-i* (for *-ie*) ; *viz.* *fili*, *O son!*

4. *Deus, god*, lacks the Vocative Singular. The Plural is inflected as follows :—

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>di</i>	<i>(dei)</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>deōrum</i>	<i>(deum)</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>dīs</i>	<i>(deis)</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>deōs</i>	
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>di</i>	<i>(dei)</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>dīs</i>	<i>(deis)</i>

5. The Locative Singular ends in *-i*; as, *Corinthi*, *at Corinth*.
6. The Genitive Plural has *-um*, instead of *-ōrum*,—
  - a) in words denoting money and measure; as, *talentum, of talents*; *modium, of pecks*; *sēstertium, of sesterces*.
  - b) in *duumvir, triumvir, decemvir*; as, *duumvirum*.
  - c) sometimes in other words; as, *līberum, of the children*; *socium, of the allies*.

#### Exceptions to Gender in the Second Declension.

26. 1. The following nouns in *-us* are Feminine by exception :—
  - a) Names of *towns, islands, trees*—according to the general rule laid down in § 15. 2; also some names of countries; as, *Aegyptus, Egypt*.
  - b) Five special words,—
    - alvus, belly*;
    - carbāsus, flax*;
    - colus, distaff*;
    - humus, ground*;
    - vannus, winnowing-fan*.
  - c) A few Greek Feminines; as,—
    - atomus, atom*;
    - diphthongus, diphthong*.
2. The following nouns in *-us* are Neuter :—
  - pelagus, sea*;
  - vīrus, poison*;
  - vulgus, crowd*.

## Greek Nouns of the Second Declension.

27. These end in **-os**, **-sa**, Masculine or Feminine; and **-on**, Neuter. They are mainly proper names, and are declined as follows:—

<b>Barbitos</b> , m. and f., lyre.	<b>Androgeos</b> , m., Androgeos.	<b>Ilion</b> , n., <i>Troy</i> .
<i>Nom.</i> barbitos	Androgeos	Ilion
<i>Gen.</i> barbit <i>f</i>	Androge <i>o</i> , <i>-i</i>	Il <i>i</i>
<i>Dat.</i> barbit <i>o</i>	Androge <i>o</i>	Il <i>o</i>
<i>Acc.</i> barbiton	Androge <i>o</i> , <i>-on</i>	Ilion
<i>Voc.</i> barbite	Androgeos	Ilion
<i>Abl.</i> barbit <i>o</i>	Androge <i>o</i>	Il <i>o</i>

1. Nouns in **-os** sometimes form the Accusative Singular in **-um**, instead of **-on**; as, **Dēlum**, *Delos*.

2. The Plural of Greek nouns, when it occurs, is usually regular.
3. For other rare forms of Greek nouns the lexicon may be consulted.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

28. Nouns of the Third Declension end in **-a**, **-e**, **-i**, **-o**, **-y**, **-c**, **-l**, **-n**, **-r**, **-s**, **-t**, **-x**. The Third Declension includes several distinct classes of Stems,—

- I. Pure Consonant-Stems.
- II. *i*-Stems.
- III. Consonant-Stems which have partially adapted themselves to the inflection of *i*-Stems.
- IV. A very few Stems ending in a long vowel or a diphthong.
- V. Irregular Nouns.

## I. Consonant-Stems.

29. 1. In these the stem appears in its unaltered form in all the oblique cases; so that the actual case-endings may be clearly recognized.

2. Consonant-Stems fall into several natural subdivisions, according as the stem ends in a **Mute**, **Liquid**, **Nasal**, or **Spirant**.

*A. Mute-Stems.*

30. Mute-Stems may end,—

1. In a Labial (p); as, **prīncep-s**.
2. In a Guttural (g or c); as, **rēmex** (**rēmeg-s**); **dux** (**duc-s**).
3. In a Dental (d or t); as, **lapis** (**lapid-s**); **mīles** (**mīlet-s**).

**1. STEMS IN A LABIAL MUTE (p).**

31. **Prīceps**, m., *chief*.

SINGULAR.		TERMINATION.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>prīnceps</b>	<b>-s</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>prīncipis</b>	<b>-is</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>prīncipi</b>	<b>-i</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>prīncipem</b>	<b>-em</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>prīnceps</b>	<b>-s</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>prīncipe</b>	<b>-e</b>

PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>prīcipēs</b>	<b>-es</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>prīcipūm</b>	<b>-um</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>prīcipībus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>prīcipēs</b>	<b>-es</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>prīcipēs</b>	<b>-es</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>prīcipībus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>

**2. STEMS IN A GUTTURAL MUTE (g, c).**

32. In these the termination **-s** of the Nominative Singular unites with the guttural, thus producing **-x**.

**Rēmex**, m., *rower*.

**Dux**, c., *leader*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>rēmex</b>	<b>rēmigēs</b>	<b>dux</b>	<b>ducēs</b>	
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>rēmigis</b>	<b>rēmigum</b>	<b>ducis</b>	<b>ducum</b>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>rēmigi</b>	<b>rēmigibus</b>	<b>ducī</b>	<b>ducibus</b>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>rēmigem</b>	<b>rēmigēs</b>	<b>ducem</b>	<b>ducēs</b>	
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>rēmex</b>	<b>rēmigēs</b>	<b>dux</b>	<b>ducēs</b>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>rēmige</b>	<b>rēmigibus</b>	<b>duce</b>	<b>ducibus</b>	

## 3. STEMS IN A DENTAL MUTE (d, t).

33. In these the final d or t of the stem disappears in the Nominative Singular before the ending -s.

Lapis, m., stone.		Miles, m., soldier.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> lapis	lapidēs	miles	militēs
<i>Gen.</i> lapidis	lapidum	militis	militum
<i>Dat.</i> lapidi	lapidibus	militi	militibus
<i>Acc.</i> lapideim	lapidēs	militem	militēs
<i>Voc.</i> lapis	lapidēs	miles	militēs
<i>Abl.</i> lapide	lapidibus	militē	militibus

## B. Liquid Stems.

34. These end in -l or -r.

Vigil, m., watchman.	Victor, m., conqueror.	Aequor, n., sea.
SINGULAR.		
<i>Nom.</i> vigil	victor	aequor
<i>Gen.</i> vigilis	victōrls	aequoris
<i>Dat.</i> vigil	victōrl	aequorī
<i>Acc.</i> vigilēm	victōrem	aequor
<i>Voc.</i> vigil	victor	aequor
<i>Abl.</i> vigilē	victōrē	aequore

PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i> vigilēs	victōrēs	aequora
<i>Gen.</i> vigilum	victōrum	aequorum
<i>Dat.</i> vigilibus	victōribus	aequoribus
<i>Acc.</i> vigilēs	victōrēs	aequora
<i>Voc.</i> vigilēs	victōrēs	aequora
<i>Abl.</i> vigilibus	victōribus	aequoribus

1. Masculine and Feminine stems ending in a liquid form the Nominative and Vocative Singular without termination.

2. The termination is also lacking in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of all neuters of the Third Declension.

## C. Nasal Stems.

35. These end in **-n<sup>1</sup>** which often disappears in the Nom. Sing.

Leō, m., *lion*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	leō	leōnēs
<i>Gen.</i>	leōnis	leōnum
<i>Dat.</i>	leōnī	leōnībus
<i>Acc.</i>	leōnem	leōnēs
<i>Voc.</i>	leō	leōnēs
<i>Abl.</i>	leōne	leōnībus

Nōmen, n., *name*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	nōmen	nōmina
<i>Gen.</i>	nōminis	nōminum
<i>Dat.</i>	nōminī	nōminībus
<i>Acc.</i>	nōmen	nōmina
<i>Voc.</i>	nōmen	nōmina
<i>Abl.</i>	nōmine	nōminībus

## D. s-Stems.

36. Mōs, m., *custom*.      Genus, n., *race*.      Honor, m., *honor*.

## SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	mōs	genus	honor
<i>Gen.</i>	mōris	generis	honōris
<i>Dat.</i>	mōrī	generī	honōrī
<i>Acc.</i>	mōrem	genus	honōrem
<i>Voc.</i>	mōs	genus	honor
<i>Abl.</i>	mōre	generē	honōrē

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	mōrēs	genera	honōrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	mōrum	generum	honōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	mōribus	generibus	honōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	mōrēs	genera	honōrēs
<i>Voc.</i>	mōrēs	genera	honōrēs
<i>Abl.</i>	mōribus	generibus	honōribus

1. Note that the final **s** of the stem becomes **r** (between vowels) in the oblique cases. In some words (*honor*, *color*, and the like) the **r** of the oblique cases has, by analogy, crept into the Nominative, displacing the earlier **s**, though the forms **honōs**, **colōs**, etc., also occur, particularly in early Latin and in poetry.

<sup>1</sup> There is only one stem ending in **-m**, — **hiems**, **hiemis**, *winter*.

II. *i*-Stems.A. *Masculine and Feminine i-Stems.*

37. These regularly end in *-is* in the Nominative Singular, and always have *-ium* in the Genitive Plural. Originally the Accusative Singular ended in *-im*, the Ablative Singular in *-i*, and the Accusative Plural in *-is*; but these endings have been largely displaced by *-em*, *-e*, and *-es*, the endings of Consonant-Stems.

38. *Tussis*, f., *cough*; *Ignis*, m., *fire*; *Hostis*, c., *enemy*;  
stem, *tussi*.      stem, *Igni*.      stem, *hosti*.

		SINGULAR.	TERMINATION.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>tussis</i>	<i>ignis</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>-is</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>tussis</i>	<i>ignis</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>-is</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>tussi</i>	<i>igni</i>	<i>hosti</i>	<i>-I</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>tussim</i>	<i>ignem</i>	<i>hostem</i>	<i>-im, -em</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>tussis</i>	<i>ignis</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>-is</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>tussi</i>	<i>igni or -e</i>	<i>hoste</i>	<i>-e, -I</i>
		PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>tusses</i>	<i>ignes</i>	<i>hostes</i>	<i>-es</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>tassium</i>	<i>ignium</i>	<i>hostium</i>	<i>-ium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>tussibus</i>	<i>ignibus</i>	<i>hostibus</i>	<i>-ibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>tussis or -es</i>	<i>ignis or -es</i>	<i>hostis or -es -is, -es</i>	
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>tusses</i>	<i>ignes</i>	<i>hostes</i>	<i>-es</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>tussibus</i>	<i>ignibus</i>	<i>hostibus</i>	<i>-ibus</i>

I. To the same class belong —

<i>apis, bee.</i>	<i>cratis, hurdle.</i>	<i>† *secūris, axe.</i>
<i>auris, ear.</i>	<i>*febris, fever.</i>	<i>sēmentis, sowing.</i>
<i>avis, bird.</i>	<i>orbis, circle.</i>	<i>† *sitis, thirst.</i>
<i>axis, axle.</i>	<i>ovis, sheep.</i>	<i>torris, brand.</i>
<i>*būris, plough-beam.</i>	<i>pelvis, basin.</i>	<i>† *turris, tower.</i>
<i>clavis, key.</i>	<i>puppis, stern.</i>	<i>trudis, pole.</i>
<i>collis, hill.</i>	<i>restis, rope.</i>	<i>vectis, lever.</i>

and many others.

Words marked with a star regularly have Acc. *-im*; those marked with a † regularly have Abl. *-I*. Of the others, many at times show *-im* and *-I*. Town and river names in *-is* regularly have *-im*, *-I*.

2. Not all nouns in **-is** are I-Stems. Some are genuine consonant-stems, and have the regular consonant terminations throughout, notably, *canis*, *dog*; *juvenis*, *youth*.<sup>1</sup>

3. Some genuine I-Stems have become disguised in the Nominative Singular; as, *pārs*, *part*, for *par(ti)s*; *anas*, *duck*, for *ana(ti)s*; so also *mors*, *death*; *dōs*, *dowry*; *nox*, *night*; *sors*, *lot*; *mēns*, *mind*; *ars*, *art*; *gēns*, *tribe*; and some others.

#### B. Neuter I-Stems.

39. These end in the Nominative Singular in **-e**, **-al**, and **-ar**. They always have **-i** in the Ablative Singular, **-ia** in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, and **-ium** in the Genitive Plural, thus holding more steadfastly to the **i**-character than do Masculine and Feminine I-Stems.

**Sedile**, *seat*; **Animal**, *animal*; **Calcar**, *spur*;  
stem, *sedili-*. stem, *animāli-*. stem, *calcāri-*

SINGULAR.			TERMINATION.
<i>Nom.</i> <b>sedile</b>	animal	calcar	<b>-e</b> or wanting
<i>Gen.</i> <b>sedilis</b>	animālis	calcāris	<b>-is</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>sedili</b>	animāli	calcāri	<b>-I</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <b>sedile</b>	animal	calcar	<b>-e</b> or wanting
<i>Voc.</i> <b>sedile</b>	animal	calcar	<b>-e</b> or wanting
<i>Abl.</i> <b>sedili</b>	animali	calcāri	<b>-I</b>

PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i> <b>sedilia</b>	animālia	calcāria	<b>-ia</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <b>sedilium</b>	animālium	calcārium	<b>-ium</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>sedilibus</b>	animālibus	calcāribus	<b>-ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <b>sedilia</b>	animālia	calcāria	<b>-ia</b>
<i>Voc.</i> <b>sedilia</b>	animālia	calcāria	<b>-ia</b>
<i>Abl.</i> <b>sedilibus</b>	animālibus	calcāribus	<b>-ibus</b>

1. In most words of this class the final **-i** of the stem is lost in the Nominative Singular; in others it appears as **-e**.

2. Proper names in **-e** form the Ablative Singular in **-e**; as, **Sōracte**, *Soracte*; so also sometimes **mare**, *sea*.

<sup>1</sup> **Mēnsis**, *month*, originally a consonant stem (*mēns-*), has in the Genitive Plural both *mēnsium* and *mēnsum*. The Accusative Plural is *mēnsēs*.

### III. Consonant-Stems that have partially adapted themselves to the Inflection of *i*-Stems.

40. Many Consonant-Stems have so far adapted themselves to the inflection of i-stems as to take -ium in the Genitive Plural, and -is in the Accusative Plural. Their true character as Consonant-Stems, however, is shown by the fact that they never take -im in the Accusative Singular, or -i in the Ablative Singular. The following words are examples of this class :—

## SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	caedēs	arx	linter
<i>Gen.</i>	caedis	arcis	lintris
<i>Dat.</i>	caedī	arcī	lintrī
<i>Acc.</i>	caudem	arcem	lintrēm
<i>Voc.</i>	caedēs	arx	linter
<i>Abl.</i>	caedo	arce	lintrē

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	caedēs	arcēs	lintrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	caedium	arcium	lintrium
<i>Dat.</i>	caedibus	arcibus	lintribus
<i>Acc.</i>	caedēs, -is	arcēs, -is	lintrēs, -is
<i>Voc.</i>	caedēs	arcēs	lintrēs
<i>Abl.</i>	caedibus	arcibus	lintribus

### **I. The following classes of nouns belong here :—**

- a) Nouns in **-ēs**, with Genitive in **-is**; as, **nūbēs**, **aedēs**, **clādēs**, etc.
- b) Many monosyllables in **-s** or **-x** preceded by one or more consonants; as, **urbs**, **mōns**, **stirps**, **lanx**.
- c) Most nouns in **-ns** and **-rs**; as, **cliēns**, **cohors**.
- d) **Ūter**, **venter**; **fūr**, **līs**, **mās**, **mūs**, **nix**; and the Plurals **faučēs**, **penātēs**, **Optimātēs**, **Samnītēs**, **Quirītēs**.
- e) Sometimes nouns in **-tās** with Genitive **-tātis**; as, **cīvitās**, **aetās**. **Cīvitās** usually has **cīvitātium**.

## IV. Stems in -ī, -ū, and Diphthongs.

41.	Vīs, f., force; stem, vī-.	Sūs, c., swine; stem, sū-.	Bōs, c., ox, cow; stem bou-.	Juppiter, m., Jupiter; stem, Jou-.
-----	----------------------------------	----------------------------------	------------------------------------	--

## SINGULAR.

Nom.	vīs	sūs	bōs	Juppiter
Gen.	—	suis	bovis	Jovis
Dat.	—	sui	bovi	Jovi
Acc.	vim	suem	bovem	Jovem
Voc.	vīs	sūs	bōs	Juppiter
Abl.	vī.	sue	bove	Jove

## PLURAL.

Nom.	vīrēs	suēs	bovēs	
Gen.	vīrium	suum	{ bovum boum	
Dat.	vīribus	{ subus subus	{ bōbus būbus	
Acc.	vīrēs	suēs	bovēs	
Voc.	vīrēs	suēs	bovēs	
Abl.	vīribus	{ subus subus	{ bōbus būbus	

- Notice that the oblique cases of **sūs** have **ū** in the root syllable.
- Grūs** is declined like **sūs**, except that the Dative and Ablative Plural are always **gruibus**.
- Juppiter** is for **Jou-pater**, and therefore contains the same stem as in **Jov-is**, **Jov-I**, etc.
- Nāvis** was originally a diphthong stem ending in **au-**, but it has passed over to the **I**-stems (§ 37). Its Ablative often ends in **-I**.

## V. Irregular Nouns.

42.	Senex, m., old man.	Carō, f., flesh.	Os, n., bone.
-----	---------------------	------------------	---------------

## SINGULAR.

Nom.	senex	carō	os
Gen.	senis	carnis	ossis
Dat.	seni	carni	ossi
Acc.	senem	carnem	os
Voc.	senex	carō	os
Abl.	sene	carne	osse

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>senēs</i>	<i>carnēs</i>	<i>ossa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>senum</i>	<i>carnium</i>	<i>ossum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>senibus</i>	<i>carnibus</i>	<i>ossibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>senēs</i>	<i>carnēs</i>	<i>ossa</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>senēs</i>	<i>carnēs</i>	<i>ossa</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>senibus</i>	<i>carnibus</i>	<i>ossibus</i>

1. *Iter, itineris, n., way*, is inflected regularly throughout from the stem *itiner-*.

2. *Supellex, supellectilis, f., furniture*, is confined to the Singular. The oblique cases are formed from the stem *supellectil-*. The ablative has both *-i* and *-e*.

3. *Jecur, n., liver*, forms its oblique cases from two stems, — *jecor-* and *jecinor-*. Thus, Gen. *jecoris* or *jecinoris*.

4. *Femur, n., thigh*, usually forms its oblique cases from the stem *femor-*, but sometimes from the stem *femin-*. Thus, Gen. *femoris* or *feminis*.

## General Principles of Gender in the Third Declension.

43. 1. Nouns in *-ō*, *-or*, *-ōs*, *-er*, *-ēs* are Masculine.
2. Nouns in *-ās*, *-ēs*, *-is*, *-ys*, *-x*, *-s* (preceded by a consonant); *-dō*, *-gō* (Genitive *-inis*); *-īs* (abstract and collective), *-īs* (Genitive *-ūtis* or *-ūdis*) are Feminine.
3. Nouns ending in *-a*, *-e*, *-i*, *-y*, *-c*, *-l*, *-n*, *-t*, *-ar*, *-ur*, *-ūs* are Neuter.

## Chief Exceptions to Gender in the Third Declension.

## 44. Exceptions to the Rule for Masculines.

1. Nouns in *-ō*.
  - a. Feminine: *carō, flesh*.
2. Nouns in *-or*.
  - a. Feminine: *arbor, tree*.
  - b. Neuter: *aequor, sea*; *cor, heart*; *marmor, marble*.
3. Nouns in *-ōs*.
  - a. Feminine: *dōs, dowry*.
  - b. Neuter: *ōs (ōris), mouth*.
4. Nouns in *-er*.
  - a. Feminine: *linter, skiff*.

b. Neuter: *cadäver*, *corpse*; *iter*, *way*; *tüber*, *tumor*; *tiber*, *udder*. Also botanical names in -er; as, *acer*, *maple*.

5. Nouns in -ës.

a. Feminine: *seges*, *crop*.

#### 45. Exceptions to the Rule for Feminines.

1. Nouns in -ës.

a. Masculine: *väs*, *bondsman*.

b. Neuter: *väs*, *vessel*.

2. Nouns in -ës.

a. Masculine: *ariës*, *ram*; *pariës*, *wall*; *pës*, *foot*.

3. Nouns in -is.

a. Masculine: all nouns in -nis and -guis; as *amnis*, *river*; *Ignis*, *fire*; *pänis*, *bread*; *sanguis*, *blood*; *uniguis*, *nail*.  
Also —

<i>axis</i> , <i>axle</i> .	<i>piscis</i> , <i>fish</i> .
<i>collis</i> , <i>hill</i> .	<i>postis</i> , <i>post</i> .
<i>fascis</i> , <i>bundle</i> .	<i>pulvis</i> , <i>dust</i> .
<i>lapis</i> , <i>stone</i> .	<i>orbis</i> , <i>circle</i> .
<i>mënsis</i> , <i>month</i> .	<i>sentis</i> , <i>brier</i> .

4. Nouns in -x.

a. Masculine: *apex*, *peak*; *cödex*, *tree-trunk*; *grex*, *flock*; *imbrex*, *tile*; *pollex*, *thumb*; *vertex*, *summit*; *calix*, *cup*.

5. Nouns in -ë preceded by a consonant.

a. Masculine: *dëns*, *tooth*; *föns*, *fountain*; *möns*, *mountain*; *pöns*, *bridge*.

6. Nouns in -dë.

a. Masculine: *oardë*, *hinge*; *ördë*, *order*.

#### 46. Exceptions to the Rule for Neuters.

1. Nouns in -l.

a. Masculine: *söl*, *sun*; *säl*, *salt*.

2. Nouns in -n.

a. Masculine: *pecten*, *comb*.

3. Nouns in -ur.

a. Masculine: *vultur*, *vulture*.

4. Nouns in -ës.

a. Masculine: *lepus*, *hare*.

## Greek Nouns of the Third Declension.

47. The following are the chief peculiarities of these :—

1. The ending **-ă** in the Accusative Singular ; as, **aetheră**, *aether* ; **Salamină**, *Salamis*.
2. The ending **-ăs** in the Nominative Plural ; as, **Phrygăs**, *Phrygians*.
3. The ending **-ăs** in the Accusative Plural ; as, **Phrygăs**, *Phrygians*.
4. Proper names in **-ăs** (Genitive **-antis**) have **-ă** in the Vocative Singular ; as, **Atlăs** (*Atlantis*), Vocative **Atlă**, *Atlas*.

5. Neuters in **-ma** (Genitive **-matis**) have **-ăs** instead of **-ibus** in the Dative and Ablative Plural ; as, **poëmatăs**, *poems*.

6. **Orpheus**, and other proper names ending in **-eus**, form the Vocative Singular in **-eu** (*Orpheu*, etc.). But in prose the other cases usually follow the second declension ; as, **Orpheł**, *Orpheo*, etc.

7. Proper names in **-ăs**, like **Pericłăs**, form the Genitive Singular sometimes in **-ăs**, sometimes in **-ă** ; as, **Periclis** or **Pericli**.

8. Feminine proper names in **-ă** have **-ăs** in the Genitive, but **-ă** in the other oblique cases ; as, —

*Nom.* **Didō**

*Gen.* **Didūs**

*Dat.* **Didō**

*Acc.* **Didō**

*Voc.* **Didō**

*Abl.* **Didō**

9. The regular Latin endings often occur in Greek nouns.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

## ă-Stems.

48. Nouns of the Fourth Declension end in **-us** Masculine, and **-ă** Neuter. They are declined as follows :—

Fructus, m., *fruit*.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>fructus</b>	<b>fructūs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>fructūs</b>	<b>fructuum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>fructūf</b>	<b>fructibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>fructum</b>	<b>fructūs</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>fructus</b>	<b>fructūs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>fructū</b>	<b>fructibus</b>

Cornū, n., *horn*.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

<b>cornū</b>	<b>cornua</b>
<b>cornūs</b>	<b>cornuum</b>
<b>cornū</b>	<b>cornibus</b>
<b>cornū</b>	<b>cornua</b>
<b>cornū</b>	<b>cornua</b>
<b>cornū</b>	<b>cornibus</b>

## Peculiarities of Nouns of the Fourth Declension.

49. 1. Nouns in *-us*, particularly in early Latin, often form the Genitive Singular in *-I*, following the analogy of nouns in *-us* of the Second Declension; as, *senātī*, *ōrnātī*. This is usually the case in Plautus and Terence.

2. Nouns in *-us* sometimes have *-ū* in the Dative Singular, instead of *-uī*; as, *frūctū* (for *frūctuī*).

3. The ending *-ubus*, instead of *-ibus*, occurs in the Dative and Ablative Plural of *artūs* (Plural), *limbs*; *tribus*, *tribe*; and in disyllables in *-cus*; as, *artubus*, *tribubus*, *arcubus*, *lacubus*. But with the exception of *tribus*, all these words admit the forms in *-ibus* as well as those in *-ubus*.

4. *Domus*, *house*, is declined according to the Fourth Declension, but has also the following forms of the Second:—

*domī* (locative), *at home*; *domum*, *homewards*, *to one's home*;  
*domō*, *from home*; *domōs*, *homewards*, *to their (etc.) homes*.

5. The only Neuters of this declension in common use are: *cornū*, *horn*; *genū*, *knee*; and *verū*, *spit*.

## Exceptions to Gender in the Fourth Declension.

50. The following nouns in *-us* are Feminine: *acus*, *needle*; *domus*, *house*; *manus*, *hand*; *porticus*, *colonnade*; *tribus*, *tribe*; *īdūs* (Plural), *Ides*; also names of trees (§ 15. 2).

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

## ē-Stems.

51. Nouns of the Fifth Declension end in *-ēs*, and are declined as follows:—

Diēs, m., *day*.Rēs, f., *thing*.

## SINGULAR. PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	diēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēī	diērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēī	diēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diēm	diēs
<i>Voc.</i>	diēs	diēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	diēbus

## SINGULAR. PLURAL.

rēs	rēs
rēī	rērum
rēī	rēbus
rem	rēs
rēs	rēs
rē	rēbus

## Peculiarities of Nouns of the Fifth Declension.

52. 1. The ending of the Genitive and Dative Singular is **-ēI**, instead of **-ēI**, when a consonant precedes ; as, **spēI**, **rēI**, **fidēI**.

2. A Genitive ending **-I** (for **-ēI**) is found in **plēbI** (from **plēbēs** = **plēbs**) in the expressions **tribūnus plēbI**, *tribune of the people*, and **plēbI scītum**, *decree of the people* ; sometimes also in other words.

3. A Genitive and Dative form in **-ē** sometimes occurs ; as, **aciē**.

4. With the exception of **diēs** and **rēs**, most nouns of the Fifth Declension are not declined in the Plural. But **aciēs**, **seriēs**, **speciēs**, **spēs**, and a few others are used in the Nominative and Accusative Plural.

## Gender in the Fifth Declension.

53. Nouns of the Fifth Declension are regularly Feminine, except **diēs**, *day*, and **meridiēs**, *mid-day*. But **diēs** is sometimes Feminine in the Singular, particularly when it means an *appointed day*.

## DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

54. Here belong —

1. Nouns used in the Singular only.
2. Nouns used in the Plural only.
3. Nouns used only in certain cases.
4. Indeclinable Nouns.

## Nouns used in the Singular only.

55. Many nouns, from the nature of their signification, are regularly used in the Singular only. Thus : —

1. Proper names ; as, **Cicerō**, *Cicero* ; **Italia**, *Italy*.
2. Nouns denoting material ; as, **aes**, *copper* ; **lac**, *milk*.
3. Abstract nouns ; as, **ignōrantia**, *ignorance* ; **bonitās**, *goodness*.
4. But the above classes of words are sometimes used in the Plural. Thus : —

- a) Proper names, — to denote different members of a family, or specimens of a type ; as, **Cicerōnēs**, *the Ciceros* ; **Catōnēs**, *men like Cato*.

- b) Names of materials, — to denote objects made of the material, or different kinds of the substance ; as, *aera, bronses* (*i.e.* bronze figures) ; *ligna, woods*.
- c) Abstract nouns, — to denote instances of the quality ; as, *ignorantiae, cases of ignorance*.

**Nouns used in the Plural only.**

**56. Here belong —**

1. Many geographical names ; as, *Thēbae, Thebes* ; *Leuctra, Leuctra* ; *PompejI, Pompeii*.
2. Many names of festivals ; as, *Megalēsia, the Megalesian festival*.
3. Many special words, of which the following are the most important : —

<i>angustiae, narrow pass.</i>	<i>mānēs, spirits of the dead.</i>
<i>arma, weapons.</i>	<i>mina, threats.</i>
<i>dēliciae, delight.</i>	<i>moenia, city walls.</i>
<i>dīvitiae, riches.</i>	<i>nuptiae, marriage.</i>
<i>Idūs, Ides.</i>	<i>posteri, descendants.</i>
<i>indūtiae, truce.</i>	<i>reliquiae, remainder.</i>
<i>Insidiae, ambush.</i>	<i>tenebrae, darkness.</i>
<i>majōrēs, ancestors.</i>	<i>verbera, blows.</i>

Also in classical prose regularly —

<i>cervicēs, neck.</i>	<i>nārēs, nose.</i>
<i>fidēs, lyre.</i>	<i>viscerā, viscera.</i>

**Nouns used only in Certain Cases.**

**57. 1. Used in only One Case.** Many nouns of the Fourth Declension are found only in the Ablative Singular ; as, *jussū, by the order* ; *injussū, without the order* ; *nātū, by birth*.

**2. Used in Two Cases.**

- a. *Fors (chance), Nom. Sing. ; forte, Abl. Sing.*
- b. *Spontis (free-will), Gen. Sing. ; sponte, Abl. Sing.*

**3. Used in Three Cases.** *Nēmō, no one* (Nom.), has also the Dat. *nēminī* and the Acc. *nēminem*. The Gen. and Abl. are supplied by the corresponding cases of *nūllus* ; *vis. nūllius* and *nūllō*.

4. **Impetus** has the Nom., Acc., and Abl. Sing., and the Nom. and Acc. Plu.; *viz. impetus, impetum, impetū, impetūs*.
5. a. **Precī, precem, preoe**, lacks the Nom. and Gen. Sing.  
b. **Vicis, vicem, vice**, lacks the Nom. and Dat. Sing.
6. **Opis, dapis, and frūgis**, — all lack the Nom. Sing.
7. Many monosyllables of the Third Declension lack the Gen. Plu.; *as, cor, lūx, sōl, aes, ős (ōris), rūs, sāl, tūs*.

### Indeclinable Nouns.

#### 58. Here belong—

<b>fās</b> , n., <i>right</i> .	<b>nefās</b> , n., <i>impiety</i> .
<b>Instar</b> , n., <i>likeness</i> .	<b>nihil</b> , n., <i>nothing</i> .
<b>māne</b> , n., <i>morning</i> .	<b>secus</b> , n., <i>sex</i> .

1. With the exception of **māne** (which may serve also as Ablative, *in the morning*), the nouns in this list are simply Neuters confined in use to the Nominative and Accusative Singular.

### Heteroclites.

#### 59. These are nouns whose forms are partly of one declension, and partly of another. Thus:—

1. Several nouns have the entire Singular of one declension, while the Plural is of another; *as*,

**vās, vāsis** (*vessel*); Plu., **vāsa, vāsōrum, vāsīs, etc.**  
**jūgerum, jūgerī** (*acre*); Plu., **jūgera, jūgerum, jūgeribus, etc.**

2. Several nouns, while belonging in the main to one declension have certain special forms belonging to another. Thus:—

- a) Many nouns of the First Declension ending in **-īa** take also a Nom. and Acc. of the Fifth; *as, māteriēs, māteriem, material*, as well as **māteria, māteriam**.
- b) **Famēs, hunger**, regularly of the Third Declension, has the Abl. **famē** of the Fifth.
- c) **Requiēs, requiētis, rest**, regularly of the Third Declension, takes an Acc. of the Fifth, **requiem**, in addition to **requiētem**.
- d) Besides **plēbs, plēbis**, *common people*, of the Third Declension, we find **plēbēs, plēbētī** (also **plēbī**, see § 52.2), of the Fifth.

## Heterogeneous Nouns.

60. Heterogeneous nouns vary in Gender. Thus:—

1. Several nouns of the Second Declension have two forms, — one Masc. in *-us*, and one Neuter in *-um*; as, *clipeus*, *clipeum*, *shield*; *carrus*, *carrum*, *cart*.

2. Other nouns have one gender in the Singular, another in the Plural; as,—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>balneum</i> , n., <i>bath</i> ,	<i>balneae</i> , f., <i>bath-house</i> .
<i>epulum</i> , n., <i>feast</i> ;	<i>epulæ</i> , f., <i>feast</i> .
<i>frēnum</i> , n., <i>bridle</i> ;	<i>frēnī</i> , m. (rarely <i>frēna</i> , n.), <i>bridle</i> .
<i>jocus</i> , m., <i>jest</i> ;	<i>joca</i> , n. (also <i>jocī</i> , m.), <i>jest</i> s.
<i>locus</i> , m., <i>place</i> ;	<i>loca</i> , n., <i>places</i> ; <i>locī</i> , m., <i>passages</i> or <i>topics in an author</i> .
<i>rāstrum</i> , n., <i>rake</i> ;	<i>rāstrī</i> , m. ; <i>rāstra</i> , n., <i>rakes</i> .

a. Heterogeneous nouns may at the same time be heteroclites, as in case of the first two examples above.

## Plurals with Change of Meaning.

61. The following nouns have one meaning in the Singular, and another in the Plural:—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>aedēs</i> , <i>temple</i> ;	<i>aedēs</i> , <i>house</i> .
<i>auxilium</i> , <i>help</i> ;	<i>auxilia</i> , <i>auxiliary troops</i> .
<i>caroer</i> , <i>prison</i> ;	<i>caroerēs</i> , <i>stalls for racing-chariots</i> .
<i>castrum</i> , <i>fort</i> ;	<i>castra</i> , <i>camp</i> .
<i>cōpia</i> , <i>abundance</i> ;	<i>cōpiae</i> , <i>troops, resources</i> .
<i>finis</i> , <i>end</i> ;	<i>finēs</i> , <i>borders, territory</i> .
<i>fortūna</i> , <i>fortune</i> ;	<i>fortūnae</i> , <i>possessions, wealth</i> .
<i>grātia</i> , <i>favor</i> ;	<i>grātiae</i> , <i>thanks</i> .
<i>impedimentum</i> , <i>hindrance</i> ;	<i>impedimenta</i> , <i>baggage</i> .
<i>littera</i> , <i>letter</i> (of the alphabet);	<i>litterae</i> , <i>epistle; literature</i> .
<i>mōs</i> , <i>habit, custom</i> ;	<i>mōrēs</i> , <i>character</i> .
<i>opera</i> , <i>help, service</i> ;	<i>operae</i> , <i>laborers</i> .
( <i>ops</i> ) <i>opis</i> , <i>help</i> ;	<i>opēs</i> , <i>resources</i> .
<i>pars</i> , <i>part</i> ;	<i>partēs</i> , <i>party; role</i> .
<i>sāl</i> , <i>salt</i> ;	<i>sālēs</i> , <i>wit</i> .

## B. ADJECTIVES.

62. Adjectives denote *quality*. They are declined like nouns, and fall into two classes,—

1. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.
2. Adjectives of the Third Declension.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND  
DECLENSIONS.

63. In these the Masculine is declined like *hortus*, *puer*, or *ager*, the Feminine like *porta*, and the Neuter like *bellum*. Thus, Masculine like *hortus* :—

*Bonus, good.*

SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>bonus</i>	<i>bona</i>	<i>bonum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>boni</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>boni</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>bonum</i>	<i>bonam</i>	<i>bonum</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>bone</i>	<i>bona</i>	<i>bonum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonā</i>	<i>bonō</i>

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>boni</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bona</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>bonōrum</i>	<i>bonōrum</i>	<i>bonōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>bonōs</i>	<i>bonōs</i>	<i>bonōs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>bonōs</i>	<i>bonās</i>	<i>bona</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>boni</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bona</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>bonōs</i>	<i>bonis</i>	<i>bonis</i>

1. The Gen. Sing. Masc. and Neut. of Adjectives in *-ius* ends in *-ii* (not in *-i* as in case of Nouns; see § 25. 1; 2). So also the Voc. Sing. of such Adjectives ends in *-ie*, not in *-i*. Thus *eximus* forms Gen. *eximii*; Voc. *eximie*.

2. Distributives (see § 78. 1. c) regularly form the Gen. Plu. Masc. and Neut. in *-um* instead of *-ōrum* (compare § 25. 6); as, *dēnum*, *centōnum*; but always *singulōrum*.

64. Masculine like *puer* :—

*Tener, tender.*

SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	tener	tenera	tenerum
<i>Gen.</i>	teneri	tenerae	teneri
<i>Dat.</i>	tenerō	tenerae	tenerō
<i>Acc.</i>	tenerum	teneram	tenerum
<i>Voc.</i>	tener	tenera	tenerum
<i>Abl.</i>	tenerō	tenerā	tenerō

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	teneri	tenerae	tenera
<i>Gen.</i>	tenerōrum	tenerōrum	tenerōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	teneris	teneris	teneris
<i>Acc.</i>	tenerōs	teneras	tenera
<i>Voc.</i>	teneri	tenerae	tenera
<i>Abl.</i>	teneris	teneris	teneris

65. Masculine like *ager* :—

*Sacer, sacred.*

SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	sacer	sacra	sacrum
<i>Gen.</i>	sacrī	sacrae	sacrī
<i>Dat.</i>	sacrō	sacrae	sacrō
<i>Acc.</i>	sacrum	sacram	sacrum
<i>Voc.</i>	sacer	sacra	sacrum
<i>Abl.</i>	sacrō	sacrā	sacrō

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	sacrī	sacrae	sacra
<i>Gen.</i>	sacrōrum	sacrōrum	sacrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	sacrīs	sacrīs	sacrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	sacrōs	sacrīs	sacra
<i>Voc.</i>	sacrī	sacrae	sacra
<i>Abl.</i>	sacrīs	sacrīs	sacrīs

i. Most adjectives in -er are declined like *sacer*. The following, however, are declined like *tener*: *asper, rough*; *lacer, torn*; *liber, free*;

*miser, wretched; prōsper, prosperous; compounds in -fer and -ger; sometimes dexter, right.*

2. *Satur, full*, is declined: *satur, saturā, saturum.*

### Nine Irregular Adjectives.

66. Here belong —

<i>alius, another;</i>	<i>alter, the other;</i>
<i>ullus, any;</i>	<i>nūllus, none;</i>
<i>uter, which? (of two);</i>	<i>neuter, neither;</i>
<i>sōlus, alone;</i>	<i>tōtus, whole;</i>
	<i>ūnus, one, alone.</i>

They are declined as follows: —

#### SINGULAR.

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i> <b>alius</b>	<b>alia</b>	<b>aliud</b>	<b>alter</b>	<b>altera</b>	<b>alterum</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <b>alterius</b>	<b>alterius</b>	<b>alterius<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>alterius</b>	<b>alterius</b>	<b>alterius</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>aliī</b>	<b>aliī</b>	<b>aliī</b>	<b>alterī</b>	<b>alterī<sup>2</sup></b>	<b>alterī</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <b>aliūm</b>	<b>aliām</b>	<b>aliud</b>	<b>alterūm</b>	<b>alterām</b>	<b>alterum</b>
<i>Voc.</i> —	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i> <b>aliō</b>	<b>aliā</b>	<b>aliō</b>	<b>alterō</b>	<b>alterā</b>	<b>alterō</b>
<i>Nom.</i> <b>uter</b>	<b>utra</b>	<b>utrum</b>	<b>tōtus</b>	<b>tōta</b>	<b>tōtum</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <b>utriūs</b>	<b>utriūs</b>	<b>utriūs</b>	<b>tōtīus</b>	<b>tōtīus</b>	<b>tōtīus</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>utriī</b>	<b>utriī</b>	<b>utriī</b>	<b>tōtī</b>	<b>tōtī</b>	<b>tōtī</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <b>utrum</b>	<b>utram</b>	<b>utrum</b>	<b>tōtūm</b>	<b>tōtam</b>	<b>tōtūm</b>
<i>Voc.</i> —	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i> <b>utrō</b>	<b>utrā</b>	<b>utrō</b>	<b>tōtō</b>	<b>tōtā</b>	<b>tōtō</b>

1. All these words lack the Vocative. The Plural is regular.

2. **Neuter** is declined like *uter*.

### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

67. These fall into three classes, —

1. Adjectives of three terminations in the Nominative Singular, — one for each gender.
2. Adjectives of two terminations.
3. Adjectives of one termination.

<sup>1</sup> This is almost always used instead of *alius* in the Genitive.

<sup>2</sup> A Dative Singular Feminine *alterae* also occurs.

a. With the exception of Comparatives, and a few other words mentioned below in § 70. 1, all Adjectives of the Third Declension follow the inflection of 1-stems; *i.e.* they have the Ablative Singular in -**I**, the Genitive Plural in -**ium**, the Accusative Plural in -**is** (as well as -**es**) in the Masculine and Feminine, and the Nominative and Accusative Plural in -**ia** in Neuters.

**Adjectives of Three Terminations.**

68. These are declined as follows:—

**Ācer, sharp.**

SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
<i>Voc.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrēs, -is	ācrēs, -is	ācria
<i>Voc.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

1. Like *ācer* are declined *alacer*, *lively*; *campester*, *level*; *celeber*, *famous*; *equester*, *equestrian*; *palūster*, *marshy*; *pedester*, *pedestrian*; *puter*, *rotten*; *salūber*, *wholesome*; *silvester*, *woody*; *terrester*, *terrestrial*; *volucer*, *winged*; also names of months in -*ber*, as *September*.

2. *Celer*, *celeris*, *celere*, *swift*, retains the *e* before *r*, but lacks the Genitive Plural.

3. In the Nominative Singular of Adjectives of this class the Feminine form is sometimes used for the Masculine. This is regularly true of *salūbris*, *silvestris*, and *terrestris*. In case of the other words in the list, the use of the Feminine for the Masculine is confined chiefly to early and late Latin, and to poetry.

## Adjectives of Two Terminations.

69. These are declined as follows:—

## Fortis, strong.

## Fortior, stronger.

## SINGULAR.

	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	fortis	forte	fortior	fortius
<i>Gen.</i>	fortis	fortis	fortiōris	fortiōris
<i>Dat.</i>	forti	forti	fortiōri	fortiōri
<i>Acc.</i>	fortem	forte	fortiōrem	fortius
<i>Voc.</i>	fortis	forte	fortior	fortius
<i>Abl.</i>	forti	forti	fortiōre, -I	fortiōre, -I

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	fortēs	fortia	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
<i>Gen.</i>	fortium	fortium	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	fortibus	fortibus	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortēs, -Is	fortia	fortiōrēs, -Is	fortiōra
<i>Voc.</i>	fortēs	fortia	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
<i>Abl.</i>	fortibus	fortibus	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

i. Fortior is the Comparative of fortis. All Comparatives are regularly declined in the same way. The Acc. Plu. in -Is is rare.

## Adjectives of One Termination.

70. Félix, happy.

Prudēns, prudent.

## SINGULAR.

	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	fēlix	fēlix	prūdēns	prūdēns
<i>Gen.</i>	fēlicis	fēlicis	prūdentis	prūdentis
<i>Dat.</i>	fēlici	fēlici	prūdentī	prūdentī
<i>Acc.</i>	fēlicem	fēlix	prūdentem	prūdēns
<i>Voc.</i>	fēlix	fēlix	prūdēns	prūdēns
<i>Abl.</i>	fēlici	fēlici	prūdentī	prūdentī

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	fēlicēs	fēlicia	prūdentēs	prūdentia
<i>Gen.</i>	fēlicium	fēlicium	prūdentium	prūdentium
<i>Dat.</i>	fēlicibus	fēlicibus	prūdentibus	prūdentibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fēlicēs, -Is	fēlicia	prūdentēs, -Is	prūdentia
<i>Voc.</i>	fēlicēs	fēlicia	prūdentēs	prūdentia
<i>Abl.</i>	fēlicibus	fēlicibus	prūdentibus	prūdentibus

Vetus, old.		Plüs, more.	
SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> <b>vetus</b>	<b>vetus</b>	—	<b>plüs</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <b>veteris</b>	<b>veteris</b>	—	<b>plüris</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>veteri</b>	<b>veteri</b>	—	—
<i>Acc.</i> <b>veterem</b>	<b>vetus</b>	—	<b>plüs</b>
<i>Voc.</i> <b>vetus</b>	<b>vetus</b>	—	—
<i>Abl.</i> <b>veterē</b>	<b>veterē</b>	—	<b>plüre</b>
<i>Nom.</i> <b>veterēs</b>	<b>vetera</b>	<b>plürēs</b>	<b>plüra</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <b>veterum</b>	<b>veterum</b>	<b>plüriūm</b>	<b>plüriūm</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>veteribus</b>	<b>veteribus</b>	<b>plüribus</b>	<b>plüribus</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <b>veterēs</b>	<b>vetera</b>	<b>plürēs, -is</b>	<b>plüra</b>
<i>Voc.</i> <b>veterēs</b>	<b>vetera</b>	—	—
<i>Abl.</i> <b>veteribus</b>	<b>veteribus</b>	<b>plüribus</b>	<b>plüribus</b>

1. It will be observed that **vetus** is declined as a pure Consonant-Stem; *i.e.* Ablative Singular in -e, Genitive Plural in -um, Nominative Plural Neuter in -a, and Accusative Plural Masculine and Feminine in -ēs only. In the same way are declined **compos, controlling**; **dīves, rich**; **particeps, sharing**; **pauper, poor**; **princeps, chief**; **sōspes, safe**; **superstes, surviving**. Yet **dīves** always has Neut. Plu. **dītia**.

2. **Inops, needy**, and **memor, mindful**, have Ablative Singular **inopī, memorī**, but Genitive Plural **inopum, memorum**.

3. Participles in -āns and -ēns follow the declension of 1-stems. But they do not have -I in the Ablative, except when employed as adjectives; when used as participles or as substantives, they have -e; as,—

ā **sapiēnti** **virō**, *by a wise man*; but  
ā **sapiēnte**, *by a philosopher*;  
Tarquiniō **rēgnante**, *under the reign of Tarquin*.

4. **Plüs**, in the Singular, is always a noun.

5. In the Ablative Singular, adjectives, when used as substantives,—  
a) usually retain the adjective declension; as,—

**aequālis, contemporary**, Abl. **aequāli**.  
**cōsulāris, ex-consul**, Abl. **cōsulāri**.

So names of Months; as, **Aprilli, April**; **Decembri, December**.

b) But adjectives used as proper names have -e in the Ablative Singular; as, **Celere, Celer**; **Juvenāle, Juvenal**.

c) Patrials in **-ās**, **-ātis** and **-is**, **-Itis**, when designating places, regularly have **-I**; as, in **ArpInātI**, on the estate at *Arpinum*; yet **-e**, when used of persons; as, **ab ArpInātē**, by an *Arpinian*.

6. A very few indeclinable adjectives occur, the chief of which are **frūglI**, *frugal*; **nēquam**, *worthless*.

7. In poetry, adjectives and participles in **-ns** sometimes form the Gen. Plu. in **-um** instead of **-lum**; as, **venientum**, *of those coming*.

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

71. 1. There are three degrees of Comparison, — the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

2. The Comparative is regularly formed by adding **-iōr** (Neut. **-ius**), and the Superlative by adding **-issimus** (**-a**, **-um**), to the Stem of the Positive deprived of its final vowel; as, —

<b>altus</b> , <i>high</i> ,	<b>altior</b> , <i>higher</i> ,	<b>altissimus</b> , <span style="float: right;"><i>{ highest, very high.</i></span>
<b>fortis</b> , <i>brave</i> ,	<b>fortior</b> ,	<b>fortissimus</b> .
<b>fēlix</b> , <i>fortunate</i> ,	<b>fēlicior</b> ,	<b>fēlicissimus</b> .

So also Participles, when used as Adjectives; as, —

<b>doctus</b> , <i>learned</i> ,	<b>doctior</b> ,	<b>doctissimus</b> .
<b>egēns</b> , <i>needy</i> ,	<b>egentior</b> ,	<b>egentissimus</b> .

3. Adjectives in **-er** form the Superlative by appending **-rimus** to the Nominative of the Positive. The Comparative is regular. Thus: —

<b>asper</b> , <i>rough</i> ,	<b>asperior</b> ,	<b>asperrimus</b> .
<b>pulcher</b> , <i>beautiful</i> ,	<b>pulchrior</b> ,	<b>pulcherrimus</b> .
<b>ācer</b> , <i>sharp</i> ,	<b>ācior</b> ,	<b>ācerrimus</b> .
<b>celer</b> , <i>swift</i> ,	<b>celerior</b> ,	<b>celerrimus</b> .

a. Notice **mātūrus**, **mātūrīor**, **mātūrīssimus** or **mātūrīmmus**.

4. Five Adjectives in **-llis** form the Superlative by adding **-limus** to the Stem of the Positive deprived of its final vowel. The Comparative is regular. Thus: —

<b>facilis</b> , <i>easy</i> ,	<b>faciliōr</b> ,	<b>facillimus</b> .
<b>difficilis</b> , <i>difficult</i> ,	<b>difficiliōr</b> ,	<b>difficillimus</b> .
<b>similis</b> , <i>like</i> ,	<b>similiōr</b> ,	<b>simillimus</b> .
<b>dissimilis</b> , <i>unlike</i> ,	<b>dissimiliōr</b> ,	<b>dissimillimus</b> .
<b>humilis</b> , <i>low</i> ,	<b>humiliōr</b> ,	<b>humillimus</b> .

5. Adjectives in **-dicus**, **-ficus**, and **-volus** form the Comparative and Superlative as though from forms in **-dīcēns**, **-fīcēns**, **-volēns**. Thus:—

maledicus, <i>slanderous</i> ,	maledicentior,	maledicentissimus.
magnificus, <i>magnificent</i> ,	magnificentior,	magnificentissimus.
benevolus, <i>kindly</i> ,	benevolentior,	benevolentissimus.

a. Positives in **-dīcēns** and **-volēns** occur in early Latin; as, **maledīcēns**, **benevolēns**.

6. **Dives** has the Comparative **dīvitior** or **dītior**; Superlative **dīvitissimus** or **dītissimus**.

#### Irregular Comparison.

72. Several Adjectives vary the Stem in Comparison; *viz.* —

bonus, <i>good</i> ,	melior,	optimus.
malus, <i>bad</i> ,	pejor,	pessimus.
parvus, <i>small</i> ,	minor,	minimus.
magnus, <i>large</i> ,	major,	maximus.
multus, <i>much</i> ,	plūs,	plūrimus.
frūgī, <i>thrifty</i> ,	frūgālior,	frūgāliissimus.
nēquam, <i>worthless</i> ,	nēquior,	nēquissimus.

#### Defective Comparison.

73. 1. Positive lacking entirely, —

(Cf. <i>prae</i> , <i>in front of</i> .)	prior, <i>former</i> ,	primus, <i>first</i> .
(Cf. <i>citrā</i> , <i>this side of</i> .)	citerior, <i>on this side</i> ,	citimus, <i>near</i> .
(Cf. <i>ultrā</i> , <i>beyond</i> .)	ulterior, <i>farther</i> ,	ultimus, <i>farthest</i> .
(Cf. <i>intrā</i> , <i>within</i> .)	interior, <i>inner</i> ,	intimus, <i>inmost</i> .
(Cf. <i>prope</i> , <i>near</i> .)	propior, <i>nearer</i> ,	proximus, <i>nearest</i> .
(Cf. <i>dē</i> , <i>down</i> .)	dēterior, <i>inferior</i> ,	dēterrimus, <i>worst</i> .
(Cf. archaic <i>potis</i> , <i>possible</i> .)	potior, <i>preferable</i> ,	potissimus, <i>chiefest</i> .

2. Positive occurring only in special cases, —

posterō diē, annō, etc.,	posterior, <i>later</i> ,	postrēmus, { <i>latest</i> , last.
the following day, etc.,		
posteri, <i>descendants</i> ,	exterior, <i>outer</i> ,	postumus, { <i>late-born</i> , <i>posthumous</i> .
exterī, <i>foreigners</i> ,		
nātiōnēs exteræ, for- eign nations,	extrēmus, { <i>outermost</i> , extimus,	extrēmus, { <i>outermost</i> , extimus,

<i>inferi, gods of the lower world,</i>	<i>Inferum, Mediterranean Sea,</i>	<i>inferior, lower,</i>	<i>infimus, imus,</i>	<i>lowest.</i>
<i>superi, gods above,</i>		<i>superior, higher,</i>		
	<i>Superum, Adriatic Sea,</i>		<i>supremus, last.</i>	<i>summus, highest.</i>

## 3. Comparative lacking.

<i>vetus, old,</i>	— <sup>1</sup>	<i>veterrimus.</i>
<i>fidus, faithful,</i>	—	<i>fidissimus.</i>
<i>novus, new,</i>	— <sup>2</sup>	<i>novissimus,<sup>3</sup> last.</i>
<i>sacer, sacred,</i>	—	<i>sacerrimus,</i>
<i>falsus, false,</i>	—	<i>falsissimus.</i>

Also in some other words less frequently used.

## 4. Superlative lacking.

<i>alacer, lively,</i>	<i>alacrior,</i>	—
<i>ingēns, great,</i>	<i>ingentior,</i>	—
<i>salūtāris, wholesome,</i>	<i>salūtārior,</i>	—
<i>juvenis, young,</i>	<i>jūnior,</i>	— <sup>4</sup>
<i>senex, old,</i>	<i>senior.</i>	— <sup>5</sup>

a. The Superlative is lacking also in many adjectives in *-alis*, *-Ilis*, *-Ilis*, *-bilis*, and in a few others.

Comparison by *Magis* and *Maximē*.

74. Many adjectives do not admit terminational comparison, but form the Comparative and Superlative degrees by prefixing *magis* (*more*) and *maximē* (*most*). Here belong —

1. Many adjectives ending in *-alis*, *-aris*, *-idus*, *-Ilis*, *-icus*, *imus*, *Inus*, *-brus*.

2. Adjectives in *-us*, preceded by a vowel; as, *idōneus*, *adapted*; *arduuus*, *steep*; *necessārius*, *necessary*.

a. Adjectives in *-quus*, of course, do not come under this rule. The first *u* in such cases is not a vowel, but a consonant.

<sup>1</sup> Supplied by *vetustior*, from *vetustus*.

<sup>2</sup> Supplied by *recentior*.

<sup>3</sup> For *newest*, *recentissimus* is used.

<sup>4</sup> Supplied by *minimus nātū*.

<sup>5</sup> Supplied by *maximus nātū*.

## Adjectives not admitting Comparison.

## 75. Here belong—

1. Many adjectives which, from the nature of their signification, do not admit of comparison ; as, *hodiernus*, *of to-day* ; *annuus*, *annual* ; *mortalis*, *mortal*.
2. Some special words ; as, *mirus*, *gnarus*, *merus* ; and a few others.

## FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

## 76. Adverbs are for the most part derived from adjectives, and depend upon them for their comparison.

1. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the First and Second Declensions form the Positive by changing *-i* of the Genitive Singular to *-e* ; those derived from adjectives of the Third Declension, by changing *-is* of the Genitive Singular to *-iter* ; as, —

cārus,	cārē, <i>dearly</i> ;
pulcher,	pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i> ;
ācer,	ācriter, <i>fiercely</i> ;
levis,	leviter, <i>lightly</i> .

- a. But Adjectives in *-ns*, and a few others, add *-ter* (instead of *-iter*), to form the Adverb ; as, —

sapiēns,	sapienter, <i>wisely</i> ;
audāx,	audācter, <i>boldly</i> ;
sollers,	sollerter, <i>skillfully</i> .

2. The Comparative of all Adverbs regularly consists of the Accusative Singular Neuter of the Comparative of the Adjective ; while the Superlative of the Adverb is formed by changing the *-i* of the Genitive Singular of the Superlative of the Adjective to *-e*. Thus —

(cārus)	cārē, <i>dearly</i> ,	cārius,	cārissimē.
(pulcher)	pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i> ,	pulchrius,	pulcherrimē.
(ācer)	ācriter, <i>fiercely</i> ,	ācrius,	ācerrimē.
(levis)	leviter, <i>lightly</i> ,	levius,	levissimē.
(sapiēns)	sapienter, <i>wisely</i> ,	sapientius,	sapientissimē.
(audāx)	audācter, <i>boldly</i> ,	audāctius,	audāctissimē,

## Adverbs Peculiar in Comparison and Formation.

## 77. I.

benē, <i>well</i> ,	melius,	optimē.
malē, <i>ill</i> ,	pejus,	pessimē.
magnopere, <i>greatly</i> ,	magis,	maximē.
multum, <i>much</i> ,	plūs,	plūrimum.
nōn multum, } <i>little</i> ,	minus,	minimē.
parum,		
diū, <i>long</i> ,	diūtius,	diūtissimē.
nēquiter, <i>worthlessly</i> ,	nēquius,	nēquissimē.
saepe, <i>often</i> ,	saepius,	saepissimē.
mātūrē, <i>betimes</i> ,	mātūrius,	{ mātūrrimē. mātūriassimē.
prope, <i>near</i> ,	propius,	proximē.
nūper, <i>recently</i> ,	—	nūperrimē.
—	potius, <i>rather</i> ,	potissimum, <i>especially</i> .
—	prius, { <i>previously</i> , <i>before</i> ,	prīnum, <i>first</i> .
secus, <i>otherwise</i> ,	sētius, <i>less</i> .	

2. A number of adjectives of the First and Second Declensions form an Adverb in -ō, instead of -ē; as,—

crēbrō, *frequently*; falsō, *falsely*;  
continuō, *immediately*; subitō, *suddenly*;  
rārō, *rarely*; and a few others.

a. cito, *quickly*, has -ō.

3. A few adjectives employ the Accusative Singular Neuter as the Positive of the Adverb; as,—

multum, *much*; paulum, *little*; facile, *easily*.

4. A few adjectives of the First and Second Declensions form the Positive in -iter; as,—

fīrmus, fīrmīter, *firmly*; hūmānus, hūmānīter, *humanly*;  
largus, largīter, *copiously*; aliūs, alīter, *otherwise*.

a. violentus has violenter.

5. Various other adverbial suffixes occur, the most important of which are -tus and -tim; as, antiquitus, *anciently*; paulātim, *gradually*.

## NUMERALS.

78. Numerals may be divided into —

I. Numeral Adjectives, comprising —

- a. *Cardinals*; as, *ūnus, one*; *duo, two*; etc.
- b. *Ordinals*; as, *prīmus, first*; *secundus, second*; etc.
- c. *Distributives*; as, *singulī, one by one*; *bīnī, two by two*; etc.

II. Numeral Adverbs; as, *semel, once*; *bis, twice*; etc.

79. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.	ADVERBS.
1. <i>ūnus, ūna, ūnum</i>	<i>prīmus, first</i>	<i>singulī, one by one</i>	<i>semel, once</i> .
2. <i>duo, duae, duo</i>	<i>secundus, second</i>	<i>bīnī, two by two</i>	<i>bis</i>
3. <i>trēs, tria</i>	<i>tertius, third</i>	<i>ternī (trīnī)</i>	<i>ter</i>
4. <i>quattuor</i>	<i>quārtus, fourth</i>	<i>quaternī</i>	<i>quater</i>
5. <i>quīnque</i>	<i>quīntus, fifth</i>	<i>quīnī</i>	<i>quīnquiēs</i>
6. <i>sex</i>	<i>sextus</i>	<i>sēnī</i>	<i>sexiēs</i>
7. <i>septem</i>	<i>septimus</i>	<i>septēnī</i>	<i>septiēs</i>
8. <i>octō</i>	<i>octāvus</i>	<i>octōnī</i>	<i>octiēs</i>
9. <i>nōvem</i>	<i>nōnus</i>	<i>nōvēnī</i>	<i>nōviēs</i>
10. <i>decem</i>	<i>decimus</i>	<i>dēnī</i>	<i>deciēs</i>
11. <i>ūndēcim</i>	<i>ūndēcimus</i>	<i>ūndēnī</i>	<i>ūndeciēs</i>
12. <i>duodecim</i>	<i>duodecimus</i>	<i>duodēnī</i>	<i>duodeciēs</i>
13. <i>tredecim</i>	<i>tertius decimus</i>	<i>ternī dēnī</i>	<i>terdeciēs</i>
14. <i>quattuordecim</i>	<i>quārtus decimus</i>	<i>quaternī dēnī</i>	<i>quaterdeciēs</i>
15. <i>quīndēcim</i>	<i>quīntus decimus</i>	<i>quīnī dēnī</i>	<i>quīnquiēs deciēs</i>
16. { <i>sēdēcim</i> { <i>sexdecim</i>	<i>sex̄tus decimus</i>	<i>sēnī dēnī</i>	<i>sexiēs deciēs</i>
17. <i>septēdecim</i>	<i>septimus decimus</i>	<i>septēnī dēnī</i>	<i>septiēs deciēs</i>
18. <i>duodēvīgintī</i>	<i>duodēvīcēsimus</i>	<i>duodēvīcēnī</i>	<i>octiēs deciēs</i>
19. <i>ūndēvīgintī</i>	<i>ūndēvīcēsimus</i>	<i>ūndēvīcēnī</i>	<i>nōviēs deciēs</i>
20. <i>vīgintī</i>	<i>vīcēsimus</i>	<i>vīcēnī</i>	<i>vīciēs</i>
21. { <i>vīgintī ūnus</i> { <i>ūnus et vīgintī</i>	<i>vīcēsimus prīmus</i> <i>ūnus et vīcēsimus</i>	<i>vīcēnī singulī</i> <i>singulī et vīcēnī</i>	{ <i>vīciēs semel</i>
22. { <i>vīgintī duo</i> { <i>duo et vīgintī</i>	<i>vīcēsimus secundus</i> <i>alter et vīcēsimus</i>	<i>vīcēnī bīnī</i> <i>bīnī et vīcēnī</i>	{ <i>vīciēs bis</i>
30. <i>trīgintā</i>	<i>trīcēsimus</i>	<i>trīcēnī</i>	<i>trīciēs</i>
40. <i>quadrāgintā</i>	<i>quadrāgēsimus</i>	<i>quadrāgēnī</i>	<i>quadrāgiēs</i>
50. <i>quīnquāgintā</i>	<i>quīnquāgēsimus</i>	<i>quīnquāgēnī</i>	<i>quīnquāgiēs</i>
60. <i>sexāgintā</i>	<i>sexāgēsimus</i>	<i>sexāgēnī</i>	<i>sexāgiēs</i>
70. <i>septuāgintā</i>	<i>septuāgēsimus</i>	<i>septuāgēnī</i>	<i>septuāgiēs</i>
80. <i>octōgintā</i>	<i>octōgēsimus</i>	<i>octōgēnī</i>	<i>octōgiēs</i>
90. <i>nōnāgintā</i>	<i>nōnāgēsimus</i>	<i>nōnāgēnī</i>	<i>nōnāgiēs</i>
100. <i>centum</i>	<i>centēsimus</i>	<i>centēnī</i>	<i>centiēs</i>

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.	ADVERBS.
100. { centum <i>ūnus</i>	centēsimus pīmus	centēni singulī	{ centiēs semel
centum et <i>ūnus</i>	centēsimus et pīmus	centēni et singulī	
200. ducentū, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus	ducēni	ducentiēs
300. trecentū	trecentēsimus	trecentēni	trecentiēs
400. quadringentū	quadringentēsimus	quadringēni	quadringentiēs
500. quīngentū	quīngentēsimus	quīngēni	quīngentiēs
600. sescentū	sescentēsimus	sescentēni	sescentiēs
700. septingentū	septingentēsimus	septingēni	septingentiēs
800. octingentū	octingentēsimus	octingēni	octingentiēs
900. nōngentū	nōngentēsimus	nōngēni	nōngentiēs
1,000. mīle	mīlēsimus	singula mīlia	mīliēs
2,000. duo mīlia	bīs mīlēsimus	bīna mīlia	bīs mīliēs
100,000. centum mīlia	centiēs mīlēsimus	centēna mīlia	centiēs mīliēs
1,000,000. deciēs centēna mīlia	deciēs centiēs mīlē- simus	deciēs centēna mīlia	deciēs centiēs mīliēs

NOTE. — *-ēsimus* and *-īns* are often written in the numerals instead of *-ēsimus* and *-īs*.

#### Declension of the Cardinals.

80. 1. The declension of *ūnus* has already been given under § 66.  
2. *Duo* is declined as follows: —

<i>Nom.</i> duo	duae	duo
<i>Gen.</i> duōrum	duārum	duōrum
<i>Dat.</i> duōbus	duābus	duōbus
<i>Acc.</i> duōs, duo	duās	duo
<i>Abl.</i> duōbus	duābus	duōbus

a. So *ambō*, *both*, except that its final *o* is long.

3. *Trēs* is declined, —

<i>Nom.</i> trēs	tria
<i>Gen.</i> triūm	trium
<i>Dat.</i> tribus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i> trēs (trīs)	tria
<i>Abl.</i> tribus	tribus

4. The hundreds (except *centum*) are declined like the Plural of *bonus*.

5. *Mīle* is regularly an adjective in the Singular, and indeclinable. In the Plural it is a substantive (followed by the Genitive of the objects enumerated; § 201. 1), and is declined, —

<i>Nom.</i> mīlia	<i>Acc.</i> mīlia
<i>Gen.</i> mīlium	<i>Voc.</i> mīlia
<i>Dat.</i> mīlibus	<i>Abl.</i> mīlibus

Thus **mille hominēs**, *a thousand men*; but **duo mīlia hominū**, *two thousand men*, literally *two thousands of men*.

a. Occasionally the Singular admits the Genitive construction; as, **mīle hominū**.

6. Other Cardinals are indeclinable. Ordinals and Distributives are declined like Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

#### Peculiarities in the Use of Numerals.

81. 1. The compounds from 21 to 99 may be expressed either with the larger or the smaller numeral first. In the latter case, **et** is used. Thus: — **trīgintā sex** or **sex et trīgintā**, *thirty-six*.

2. The numerals under 90, ending in 8 and 9, are often expressed by subtraction; as, —

**duo dēvīgintī**, *eighteen* (but also **octōdecim**);  
**ūndēquadrāgintā**, *thirty-nine* (but also **trīgintā novem** or **novem et trīgintā**).

3. Compounds over 100 regularly have the largest number first; the others follow without **et**; as, —

**centum vīgintī septem**, *one hundred and twenty-seven*.

**annō octīgētēsīmō octōgēsīmō secundō**, *in the year 882*.

Yet **et** may be inserted where the smaller number is either a digit or one of the tens; as, —

**centum et septem**, *one hundred and seven*;

**centum et quadrāgintā**, *one hundred and forty*.

4. The Distributives are used —

a) To denote *so many each*, *so many apiece*; as, —

**bīna talenta eīs dedit**, *he gave them two talents each*.

b) When those nouns that are ordinarily Plural in form, but

Singular in meaning, are employed in a Plural sense; as, —

**bīnae litterae**, *two epistles*.

But in such cases, **ūni** (not **singulī**) is regularly employed for *one*, and **trīni** (not **ternī**) for *three*; as, —

**ūnae litterae**, *one epistle*; **trīnae litterae**, *three epistles*.

c) In multiplication; as, —

**bīs bīna sunt quattuor**, *twice two are four*.

d) Often in poetry, instead of the cardinals; as, —

**bīna hastīlia**, *two spears*.

## C. PRONOUNS.

82. A Pronoun is a word that indicates something without naming it.

83. There are the following classes of pronouns :—

I. Personal.	V. Intensive.
II. Reflexive.	VI. Relative.
III. Possessive.	VII. Interrogative.
IV. Demonstrative.	VIII. Indefinite.

## I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

84. These correspond to the English *I, you, he, she, it, etc.*, and are declined as follows :—

<i>First Person.</i>	<i>Second Person.</i>	<i>Third Person.</i>
SINGULAR.		
<i>Nom.</i> ego, <i>I</i>	tū, <i>thou</i>	is, <i>he</i> ; ea, <i>she</i> ; id, <i>it</i>
<i>Gen.</i> mei	tūi	(For declension see § 87.)
<i>Dat.</i> mihi <sup>1</sup>	tibi <sup>1</sup>	
<i>Acc.</i> mē	tē	
<i>Voc.</i> —	tū	
<i>Abl.</i> mē	tē	
PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i> nōs, <i>we</i>	vōs, <i>you</i>	
<i>Gen.</i> { nostrum	{ vestrūm	
nostrī	vestrī	
<i>Dat.</i> nōbīs	vōbīs	
<i>Acc.</i> nōs	vōs	
<i>Voc.</i> —	vōs	
<i>Abl.</i> nōbīs	vōbīs	

1. A Dative Singular *mī* occurs in poetry.
2. Emphatic forms in -met are occasionally found ; as, *egomet*, *I myself*; *tibimet*, *to you yourself*; *tū* has *tūte* and *tūtemet* (written also *tūtimet*).

<sup>1</sup> The final i is sometimes long in poetry.

3. In early Latin, *mēd* and *tēd* occur as Accusative and Ablative forms.

## II. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

85. These refer to the subject of the sentence or clause in which they stand; like *myself*, *yourself*, in 'I see myself,' etc. They are declined as follows:—

	<i>First Person.</i>	<i>Second Person.</i>	<i>Third Person.</i>
	Supplied by oblique cases of <i>ego</i> .	Supplied by oblique cases of <i>tū</i> .	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>meī, of myself</i>	<i>tuī, of thyself</i>	<i>sui</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mihi, to myself</i>	<i>tibi, to thyself</i>	<i>sibi</i> <sup>1</sup>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mē, myself</i>	<i>tē, thyself</i>	<i>sē or sēsē</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mē, with myself, etc.</i>	<i>tē, with thyself, etc.</i>	<i>sē or sēsē</i>

1. The Reflexive of the Third Person serves for *all genders* and for *both numbers*. Thus *sui* may mean, *of himself*, *herself*, *itself*, or *of themselves*; and so with the other forms.

2. All of the Reflexive Pronouns have at times a *reciprocal* force; as,—

*inter sē pugnant, they fight with each other.*

3. In early Latin, *sēd* occurs as Accusative and Ablative.

## III. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

86. These are strictly adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, and are inflected as such. They are—

<i>First Person.</i>	<i>Second Person.</i>
<i>meus, -a, -um, my ;</i>	<i>tuus, -a, -um, thy ;</i>
<i>noster, nostra, nostrum, our ;</i>	<i>vester, vestra, vestrum, your ;</i>

<i>Third Person.</i>
<i>suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their.</i>

1. **Suus** is exclusively Reflexive; as,—

*pater liberōs suōs amat, the father loves his children.*

Otherwise, *his*, *her*, *its* are regularly expressed by the Genitive Singular of *is*, *viz.* *ejus*; and *their*, by the Genitive Plural, *eōrum*, *eārum*.

<sup>1</sup> The final *i* is sometimes long in poetry.

2. The Vocative Singular Masculine of **meus** is **mi**.  
 3. The enclitic **-pte** may be joined to the Ablative Singular of the Possessive Pronouns for the purpose of emphasis. This is particularly common in case of **suō**, **suā**; as, **suōpte**, **suāpte**.

#### IV. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

87. These point out an object as **here** or **there**, or as **previously mentioned**. They are—

**hic**, *this* (where I am);  
**iste**, *that* (where you are);  
**ille**, *that* (something distinct from the speaker);  
**is**, *that* (weaker than **ille**);  
**Idem**, *the same*.

**Hic**, **iste**, and **ille** are accordingly the Demonstratives of the First, Second, and Third Persons respectively.

##### **Hic**, *this*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i> <b>hīc</b>	haec	hōc	<b>hī</b>	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i> <b>hūjus</b> <sup>1</sup>	hūjus	hūjus	<b>hōrum</b>	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i> <b>huic</b>	huic	huic	<b>hīs</b>	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i> <b>hunc</b>	hanc	hōc	<b>hōs</b>	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i> <b>hōc</b>	hāc	hōc	<b>hīs</b>	hīs	hīs

##### **Iste**, *that, that of yours.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i> <b>iste</b>	ista	istud <sup>2</sup>	<b>istī</b>	istae	ista <sup>2</sup>
<i>Gen.</i> <b>istīus</b>	istīus	istīus	<b>istōrum</b>	istārum	istōrum
<i>Dat.</i> <b>istī</b>	istī	istī	<b>istīs</b>	istīs	istīs
<i>Acc.</i> <b>istum</b>	istam	istud	<b>istōs</b>	istās	ista <sup>2</sup>
<i>Abl.</i> <b>istō</b>	istā	istō	<b>istīs</b>	istīs	istīs

**Ille** (archaic **olle**), *that, that one, he*, is declined like **iste**.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Forms of **hic** ending in **-s** sometimes append **-ce** for emphasis; as, **hūjusce**, **this . . . here**; **hōsce**, **hisce**. When **-ne** is added, **-c** and **-ce** become **-ci**; as, **huncine**, **hōscine**.

<sup>2</sup> For **istud**, **istūc** sometimes occurs; for **ista**, **istaec**.

<sup>3</sup> For **illud**, **illūc** sometimes occurs.

*Is, he, this, that.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i> is	ea	id	eī, iī, (ī)	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i> ejus	ejus	ejus	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i> eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
<i>Acc.</i> eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i> eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

*Idem, the same.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i> idem	eadem	idem	{ eidem iīdem }	eaedem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i> ejusdem	ejusdem	ejusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i> eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
<i>Acc.</i> eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Abl.</i> eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

The Nom. Plu. Masc. also has *Idem*, and the Dat. Abl. Plu. *Isdem* or *iīsdem*.

## V. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN.

88. The Intensive Pronoun in Latin is *ipse*. It corresponds to the English *myself, etc.*, in '*I myself, he himself*'.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i> ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i> ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i> ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>Acc.</i> ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i> ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

## VI. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

89. The Relative Pronoun is *qui*, *who*. It is declined:—

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i> qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i> cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i> cui	cui	cui	quibus <sup>2</sup>	quibus <sup>2</sup>	quibus <sup>2</sup>
<i>Acc.</i> quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i> quō <sup>1</sup>	quā <sup>1</sup>	quō <sup>1</sup>	quibus <sup>2</sup>	quibus <sup>2</sup>	quibus <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> An ablative *qui* occurs in *quiccum*.

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes *quis*.

## VII. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

90. The Interrogative Pronouns are *quis*, *who?* (substantive) and *qui*, *what?* *what kind of?* (adjective).

1. *Quis, who?*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
MASC. AND FEM.	NOM.	NEUTER.	
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid	The rare Plural
<i>Gen.</i>	cūjus	cūjus	follows the de-
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	clension of the
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid	Relative Pronoun.
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō	

2. *qui*, *what?* *what kind of?* is declined precisely like the Relative Pronoun; *viz.* *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, *etc.*

- a. An old Ablative *qui* occurs, in the sense of *how?*
- b. *Qui* is sometimes used for *quis* in Indirect Questions.
- c. *Quis*, when limiting words denoting persons, is sometimes an adjective. But in such cases *quis homō* = *what man?* whereas *qui homō* = *what sort of a man?*
- d. *Quis* and *qui* may be strengthened by adding *-nam*. Thus:—  
Substantive. *quisnam*, *who, pray?* *quidnam*, *what, pray?*  
Adjective. *qui<sup>n</sup>nam*, *quaenam*, *quodnam*, *of what kind, pray?*

## VIII. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

91. These have the general force of *some one*, *any one*.

M. AND F.	SUBSTANTIVES.	ADJECTIVES.
	NEUT.	MASC. FEM. NEUT.
quis,	quid, { <i>any one</i> , anything.	qui, quae or qua, quod, any.
aliquis,	aliquid, { <i>some one</i> , something.	aliqui, aliqua, aliquod, any.
quisquam,	quidquam, { <i>any one</i> , anything.	quisquam, quidquam, { <i>any</i> (rare)
quispiam,	quidpiam, { <i>any one</i> , anything.	quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam, any.
quisque,	quidque, <i>each</i> .	quisque, quaeque, quodque, <i>each</i> .
quīvis, quaevis,	quidvis, { <i>any one</i> , (anything)	quīvis, quaevis, quodvis, { <i>any</i>
quilibet, quaelibet,	quidlibet, { <i>anything</i> , you wish.	quilibet, quaelibet, quodlibet, { <i>you</i> wish.
quīdam, quaedam,	quiddam, { <i>a certain</i> person, or thing.	quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, { <i>a cer-</i> <i>tain</i> .

1. In the Indefinite Pronouns, only the pronominal part is declined. Thus: Genitive Singular *aliofūs*, *cūjuslibet*, etc.
2. Note that *aliqui* has *aliqua* in the Nominative Singular Feminine, also in the Nominative and Accusative Plural Neuter. *Qui* has both *qua* and *quae* in these same cases.
3. *Quidam* forms Accusative Singular *quendam*, *quandam*; Genitive Plural *quōrundam*, *quārundam*; the *m* being assimilated to *n* before *d*.
4. *Aliquis* may be used adjectively, and (occasionally) *aliqui* substantively.
5. In combination with *nē*, *si*, *nisi*, *num*, either *quis* or *qui* may stand as a Substantive. Thus: *si quis* or *si qui*.
6. *Eoquis*, *any one*, though strictly an Indefinite, generally has interrogative force. It has both substantive and adjective forms,— substantive, *ecquis*, *ecquid*; adjective, *ecqui*, *ecquae* and *ecqua*, *ecquod*.
7. *Quisquam* is not used in the Plural.
8. There are two Indefinite Relatives,— *quicunque* and *quisquis*, *whoever*. *Quicunque* declines only the first part; *quisquis* declines both, but has only *quisquis*, *quidquid*, *quōquō* in common use.

#### PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

92. The following adjectives, also, frequently have pronominal force:—

1. *alius, another*; *alter, the other*;  
*uter, which of two?* (interr.); *neuter, neither*;  
*whichever of two* (rel.);  
*tinus, one*; *nūllus, no one* (in oblique cases).
2. The compounds,—  
*uterque, utraque, utrumque, each of two*;  
*utercumque, utracumque, utrumcumque, whoever of two*;  
*uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet, either one you please*;  
*utervis, utravis, utrumvis, either one you please*;  
*alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum, the one or the other*.

In these, *uter* alone is declined. The rest of the word remains unchanged, except in case of *alteruter*, which may decline both parts; as,—

<i>Nom.</i> <i>alteruter</i>	<i>altera utra</i>	<i>alterum utrum</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>alterius utrius</i>	<i>etc.</i>	

CHAPTER II. — *Conjugation.*

93. A Verb is a word which asserts something ; as, *est*, *he is*; *amat*, *he loves*. The Inflection of Verbs is called Conjugation.

94. Verbs have Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person :—

1. Two Voices,— Active and Passive.
2. Three Moods,— Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative.
3. Six Tenses,—

Present,	Perfect,
Imperfect,	Pluperfect,
Future,	Future Perfect.

But the Subjunctive lacks the Future and Future Perfect; while the Imperative employs only the Present and Future.

4. Two Numbers,— Singular and Plural.
5. Three Persons,— First, Second, and Third.

95. These make up the so-called *Finite Verb*. Besides this, we have the following Noun and Adjective Forms :—

1. Noun Forms,— Infinitive, Gerund, and Supine.
2. Adjective Forms,— Participles (including the Gerundive).

96. The Personal Endings of the Verb are,—

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
<i>Sing.</i>	1. - <b>ɔ</b> ; - <b>m</b> ; - <b>I</b> (Perf. Ind.); 2. - <b>s</b> ; - <b>stI</b> (Perf. Ind.); - <b>tɔ</b> or wanting (Impv.); 3. - <b>t</b> ; - <b>tɔ</b> (Impv.);	- <b>r</b> . - <b>ris</b> , - <b>re</b> ; - <b>re</b> , - <b>tor</b> (Impv.). - <b>tur</b> ; - <b>tor</b> (Impv.).
<i>Plu.</i>	1. - <b>mus</b> ; 2. - <b>tis</b> ; - <b>stis</b> (Perf. Ind.); - <b>te</b> , - <b>tɔte</b> (Impv.); 3. - <b>nt</b> ; - <b>ɛrunt</b> (Perf. Ind.); - <b>ntɔ</b> (Impv.);	- <b>mur</b> . - <b>minf</b> . - <b>ntur</b> ; - <b>ntor</b> (Impv.).

## VERB-STEMS.

97. Conjugation consists in appending certain endings to the Stem. We distinguish three different stems in a fully inflected verb,—

I. **Present Stem**, from which are formed —

1. Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative,
2. Present and Imperfect Subjunctive,
3. The Imperative,
4. The Present Infinitive,
5. The Present Active Participle, the Gerund, and Gerundive.

Active and Passive.

II. **Perfect Stem**, from which are formed —

1. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative,
2. Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive,
3. Perfect Infinitive,

Active.

III. **Participial Stem**, from which are formed —

1. Perfect Participle,
2. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative,
3. Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive,
4. Perfect Infinitive,

Passive.

Apparently from the same stem, though really of different origin, are the Supine, the Future Active Participle, the Future Infinitive Active and Passive.

## THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

98. There are in Latin four regular Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the vowel of the termination of the Present Infinitive Active, as follows:—

CONJUGATION.	INFINITIVE TERMINATION.	DISTINGUISHING VOWEL.
I. /	-āre	ā
II. ɔ	-ēre	ē
III. ɔ	-ēre	ē
IV. ɪ	-Ire	ī

99. **PRINCIPAL PARTS.** The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and the Perfect Participle<sup>1</sup> constitute the **Principal Parts** of a Latin verb, — so called because they contain the different stems, from which the full conjugation of the verb may be derived.

<sup>1</sup> Where the Perfect Participle is not in use, the Future Active Participle, if it occurs, is given as one of the Principal Parts.

CONJUGATION OF **SUM.**

100. The irregular verb **sum** is so important for the conjugation of all other verbs that its inflection is given at the outset.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	FUT. PARTIC. <sup>1</sup>
sum	esse	fui	futurus

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## SINGULAR.

sum, *I am,*  
es, *thou art,*  
est, *he is;*

## PLURAL.

sumus, *we are,*  
estis, *you are,*  
sunt, *they are.*

## IMPERFECT.

eram, *I was,*  
eras, *thou wast,*  
erat, *he was;*

eramus, *we were,*  
eratis, *you were,*  
erant, *they were.*

## FUTURE.

erō, *I shall be,*  
eris, *thou wilt be,*  
erit, *he will be;*

erimus, *we shall be,*  
eritis, *you will be,*  
erunt, *they will be.*

## PERFECT.

fui, *I have been, I was,*  
fuisti, *thou hast been, thou wast,*  
fuit, *he has been, he was;*

fuimus, *we have been, we were,*  
fuistis, *you have been, you were,*  
fuērunt, } *they have been, they were.*  
fuēre,

## PLUPERFECT.

fueram, *I had been,*  
fueras, *thou hadst been,*  
fuerat, *he had been;*

fuerāmus, *we had been,*  
fuerātis, *you had been,*  
fuerant, *they had been.*

## FUTURE PERFECT.

fuerō, *I shall have been,*  
fueris, *thou wilt have been,*  
fuerit, *he will have been;*

fuerimus, *we shall have been,*  
fueritis, *you will have been,*  
fuerint, *they will have been.*

<sup>1</sup> The Perfect Participle is wanting in **sum.**

SUBJUNCTIVE.<sup>1</sup>

## PRESENT.

## SINGULAR.

*sim, may I be,*  
*sīs, mayst thou be,*  
*sit, let him be, may he be;*

## PLURAL.

*sīmus, let us be,*  
*sītis, be ye, may you be,*  
*sint, let them be.*

## IMPERFECT.

*essem,<sup>2</sup> I should be,*  
*essēs,<sup>2</sup> thou wouldest be,*  
*esset,<sup>2</sup> he would be;*

*essēmus, we should be,*  
*essētis, you would be,*  
*essent,<sup>2</sup> they would be.*

## PERFECT.

*fuerim, I may have been,*  
*fueris, thou mayst have been,*  
*fuerit, he may have been;*

*fuerimus, we may have been,*  
*fueritis, you may have been,*  
*fuerint, they may have been.*

## PLUPERFECT.

*fuissem, I should have been,*  
*fuisssēs, thou wouldest have been,*  
*fuisset, he would have been;*

*fuisssēmus, we should have been,*  
*fuisssētis, you would have been,*  
*fuisssent, they would have been.*

## IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. es, be thou,*  
*Fut. estō, thou shalt be,*  
*estō, he shall be;*

*este, be ye.*  
*estōte, ye shall be,*  
*suntō, they shall be.*

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres. esse, to be.*  
*Perf. fuisse, to have been.*  
*Fut. futūrus esse,<sup>3</sup> to be about to be.   Fut. futūrus,<sup>4</sup> about to be.*

## PARTICIPLE.

<sup>1</sup> The meanings of the different tenses of the Subjunctive are so many and so varied, particularly in subordinate clauses, that no attempt can be made to give them here. For fuller information the pupil is referred to the Syntax.

<sup>2</sup> For *essem*, *essēs*, *esset*, *essent*, the forms *forem*, *forēs*, *foret*, *forent* are sometimes used.

<sup>3</sup> For *futūrus esse* the form *fore* is often used.

<sup>4</sup> Declined like *bonus*, -a, -um.

## FIRST (OR Ā-) CONJUGATION.

101.

Active Voice.—*Amō, I love.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PASS. PARTIC.
amō	amāre	amāvī	amātus

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## SINGULAR.

amō, *I love,*  
 amās, *you love,*  
 amat, *he loves;*

## PLURAL.

amāmus, *we love,*  
 amātis, *you love,*  
 amant, *they love.*

## IMPERFECT.

amābam, *I was loving,*  
 amābās, *you were loving,*  
 amābat, *he was loving;*

amābāmus, *we were loving,*  
 amābātis, *you were loving,*  
 amābānt, *they were loving.*

## FUTURE.

amābō, *I shall love,*  
 amābis, *you will love,*  
 amābit, *he will love;*

amābīmus, *we shall love,*  
 amābītis, *you will love,*  
 amābīnt, *they will love.*

## PERFECT.

amāvī, *I have loved, I loved,*  
 amāvistī, *you have loved, you loved,*  
 amāvit, *he has loved, he loved;*

amāvīmus, *we have loved, we loved,*  
 amāvistis, *you have loved, you loved,*  
 amāvērunt, -ēre, *they have loved, they loved.*

## PLUPERFECT.

amāveram, *I had loved,*  
 amāverās, *you had loved,*  
 amāverat, *he had loved;*

amāverāmus, *we had loved,*  
 amāverātis, *you had loved,*  
 amāverant, *they had loved.*

## FUTURE PERFECT.

amāverō, *I shall have loved,*  
 amāveris, *you will have loved,*  
 amāverit, *he will have loved;*

amāverīmus, *we shall have loved,*  
 amāverītis, *you will have loved,*  
 amāverīnt, *they will have loved.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

## SINGULAR.

amem, *may I love,*amēs, *may you love,*amet, *let him love;*

## PLURAL.

amēmus, *let us love,*amētis, *may you love,*ament, *let them love.*

## IMPERFECT.

amārem, *I should love,*amārēs, *you would love,*amāret, *he would love;*amārēmus, *we should love,*amārētis, *you would love,*amārent, *they would love.*

## PERFECT.

amāverim, *I may have loved,*amāveris, *you may have loved,*amāverit, *he may have loved;*amāverimus, *we may have loved,*amāveritis, *you may have loved,*amāverint, *they may have loved.*

## PLUPERFECT.

amāvissem, *I should have loved,*amāvissēs, *you would have loved,*amāvisset, *he would have loved;*amāvissēmus, *we should have loved,*amāvissētis, *you would have loved,*amāvissēnt, *they would have loved.*

## IMPERATIVE.

Pres. amā, *love thou;*amāte, *love ye.*Fut. amātō, *thou shalt love,*amātōte, *ye shall love,*amātō, *he shall love;*amantō, *they shall love.*

## INFINITIVE.

Pres. amāre, *to love.*

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. amāns,<sup>1</sup> *loving.*Perf. amāuisse, *to have loved.*

(Gen. amantis.)

Fut. amātūrus esse, *to be about  
to love.*Fut. amātūrus, *about to love.*

## GERUND.

Gen. amandī, *of loving,*

## SUPINE.

Dat. amandō, *for loving,*Acc. amandum, *loving,*Acc. amātū, *to love,*Abl. amandō, *by loving.*Abl. amātū, *to love, be loved.*<sup>1</sup> For declension of amāns, see § 70. 3.

## FIRST (OR Ā-) CONJUGATION.

102. Passive Voice.—Amor, *I am loved.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.

amor

PRES. INF.

amārī

PERF. IND.

amātus sum

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## SINGULAR.

amor

amāris

amātūr

*I am loved.*

## PLURAL.

amāmūr

amāmīnī

amāntūr

## IMPERFECT.

*I was loved.*

amābar

amābāris, or -re

amābātūr

amābāmūr

amābāmīnī

amābāntūr

## FUTURE.

*I shall be loved.*

amābor

amāberis, or -re

amābitūr

amābīmūr

amābīmīnī

amābūntūr

## PERFECT.

*I have been loved or I was loved.*amātus (-a, -um) sum<sup>1</sup>

amātī (-ae, -a) sumus

amātus es

amātī estis

amātus est

amātī sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been loved.*amātus erām<sup>1</sup>

amātī erāmus

amātus erās

amātī erātis

amātus erat

amātī erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have been loved.*amātus erō<sup>1</sup>

amātī erimus

amātus eris

amātī eritis

amātus erit

amātī erunt

<sup>1</sup> Ful, fuistī, etc., are sometimes used for sum, es, etc. So fueram, fuerās, etc., for eram, etc.; fuerō, etc., for erō, etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*May I be loved, let him be loved.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amer	amēmur
amēris, or -re	amēminī
amētur	amentur

## IMPERFECT.

*I should be loved, he would be loved.*

amārer	amārēmur
amārēris, or -re	amārēminī
amārētur	amārentur

## PERFECT.

*I may have been loved.*

amātus sim <sup>1</sup>	amātī simus
amātus sis	amātī sītis
amātus sit	amātī sint

## PLUPERFECT.

*I should have been loved, he would have been loved.*

amātus esse <sup>1</sup>	amātī essēmus
amātus essēs	amātī essētis
amātus esset	amātī essent

## IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. amāre, be thou loved;*      *amāminī, be ye loved.**Fut. amātor, thou shalt be loved,*      *amantor, they shall be loved.*  
*amātor, he shall be loved;*

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres. amārī, to be loved.**Perf. amātus esse, to have been loved.**Fut. amātum irī, to be about to be loved.*

## PARTICIPLE.

*Perfect. amātus, loved, having been loved.**Gerundive. amandus, to be loved, deserving to be loved.*<sup>1</sup> *Fuerim, etc.*, are sometimes used for *sim*; so *fuissem, etc.*, for *esse*.

SECOND (OR E-) CONJUGATION.103. Active Voice. — *Moneō, I advise.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PASS. PARTIC.
<i>moneō</i>	<i>monēre</i>	<i>monuī</i>	<i>monitus</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	<i>I advise.</i>	PLURAL.
<i>moneō</i>		<i>monēmus</i>
<i>monēs</i>		<i>monētis</i>
<i>monet</i>		<i>monent</i>

## IMPERFECT.

*I was advising, or I advised.*

<i>monēbam</i>	<i>monēbāmus</i>
<i>monēbās</i>	<i>monēbātis</i>
<i>monēbat</i>	<i>monēbant</i>

## FUTURE.

*I shall advise.*

<i>monēbō</i>	<i>monēbimus</i>
<i>monēbis</i>	<i>monēbitis</i>
<i>monēbit</i>	<i>monēbunt</i>

## PERFECT.

*I have advised, or I advised.*

<i>monuī</i>	<i>monuimus</i>
<i>monuistī</i>	<i>monuistis</i>
<i>monuit</i>	<i>monuērunt, or -sre</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had advised.*

<i>monueram</i>	<i>monuerāmus</i>
<i>monuerās</i>	<i>monuerātis</i>
<i>monuerat</i>	<i>monuerant</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have advised.*

<i>monuerō</i>	<i>monuerimus</i>
<i>monueris</i>	<i>monueritis</i>
<i>monuerit</i>	<i>monuerint</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*May I advise, let him advise.*

## SINGULAR.

moneam

moneās

moneat

## PLURAL.

moneāmus

moneātis

moneant

## IMPERFECT.

*I should advise, he would advise.*

monērem

monērēs

monēret

monērēmus

monērētis

monērent

## PERFECT.

*I may have advised.*

monuerim

monueris

monuerit

monuerimus

monueritis

monuerint

## PLUPERFECT.

*I should have advised, he would have advised.*

monuissēm

monuissēs

monuissēt

monuissēmus

monuissētis

monuissent

## IMPERATIVE.

Pres. monē, *advise thou* ;monēte, *advise ye.*Fut. monētō, *thou shalt advise,*monētō, *ye shall advise,*monētō, *he shall advise;*monētō, *they shall advise.*

## INFINITIVE.

Pres. monēre, *to advise.*

## PARTICIPLE.

Pres. monēns, *advising.*Perf. monuissē, *to have advised.*

(Gen. monentis.)

Fut. monitūrus esse, *to be about*  
*to advise.*Fut. monitūrus, *about to advise.*

## GERUND.

Gen. monēndī, *of advising,*

## SUPINE.

Dat. monēndō, *for advising,*Acc. monitū, *to advise.*Acc. monendum, *advising,*Abl. monēndō, *by advising.*Abl. monitū, *to advise, be advised.*

SECOND (OR ~~E~~-) CONJUGATION.104. Passive Voice.—Moneor, *I am advised.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.  
moneorPRES. INF.  
monēriPERF. IND.  
monitus sum

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.  
moneor  
monēris  
monētur*I am advised.*PLURAL.  
monēmur  
monēminī  
monentur

## IMPERFECT.

monēbar  
monēbāris, or -re  
monēbātur*I was advised.*monēbāmur  
monēbāminī  
monēbāntur

## FUTURE.

monēbor  
monēberis, or -re  
monēbitur*I shall be advised.*monēbimur  
monēbiminī  
monēbuntur

## PERFECT.

monitus sum  
monitus es  
monitus est*I have been advised, I was advised.*moniti sumus  
moniti estis  
moniti sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

monitus eram  
monitus erās  
monitus erat*I had been advised.*moniti eramus  
moniti erātis  
moniti erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have been advised.*monitus erō  
monitus eris  
monitus eritmoniti erimus  
moniti eritis  
moniti erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*May I be advised, let him be advised.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
monēar	monēāmur
monēāris, or -re	monēāminī
monēātur	monēantur

## IMPERFECT.

*I should be advised, he would be advised.*

monērēr	monērēmur
monērēris, or -re	monērēminī
monērētur	monērentur

## PERFECT.

*I may have been advised.*

monitus sim	monitī simus
monitus sis	monitī sītis
monitus sit	monitī sint

## PLUPERFECT.

*I should have been advised, he would have been advised.*

monitus essem	monitī essēmus
monitus essēs	monitī essētis
monitus esset	monitī essent

## IMPERATIVE.

Pres. monēre, be thou advised;	monēminī, be ye advised.
Fut. monētor, thou shalt be advised,	
monētor, he shall be advised.	monentor, they shall be advised.

## INFINITIVE.

Pres. monēri, to be advised.
Perf. monitus esse, to have been advised.
Fut. monitum iri, to be about to be advised.

## PARTICIPLE.

Perfect. monitus, advised,
having been advised.
Gerundive. monendus, to be advised, deserving to be advised.

## THIRD (OR CONSONANT-) CONJUGATION.

105. Active Voice. — *Regō, I rule.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PASS. PARTIC.
regō	regere	rēxi	rēctus

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	<i>I rule.</i>	PLURAL.
regō		regimus
regis		regitis
regit		regunt

## IMPERFECT.

*I was ruling, or I ruled.*

regēbam	regēbāmus
regēbās	regēbātis
regēbat	regēbant

## FUTURE.

*I shall rule.*

regam	regēmus
regēs	regētis
regēt	regent

## PERFECT.

*I have ruled, or I ruled.*

rēxi	rēximus
rēxistī	rēxistis
rēxit	rēxērunt or -ere

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had ruled.*

rēxeram	rēxerāmus
rēxerās	rēxerātis
rēxerat	rēxerant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have ruled.*

rēxerō	rēxerimus
rēxeris	rēxeritis
rēxerit	rēxerint

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*May I rule, let him rule.*

SINGULAR.

regam  
regas  
regat

PLURAL.

regāmus  
regātis  
regant

## IMPERFECT.

*I should rule, he would rule.*regerem  
regerēs  
regeretregerēmus  
regerētis  
regerent

## PERFECT.

*I may have ruled.*rēxerim  
rēxeq̄is  
rēxeritrēxerīmus  
rēxerītis  
rēxerint

## PLUPERFECT.

*I should have ruled, he would have ruled.*rēxissem  
rēxisēs  
rēxissetrēxisssēmus  
rēxisssētis  
rēxisssent

## IMPERATIVE.

Pres. *rege*, *rule thou*;  
Fut. *regitō*, *thou shalt rule*,  
*regitō*, *he shall rule*;*regite*, *rule ye*.  
*regitōte*, *ye shall rule*,  
*reguntō*, *they shall rule*.

## INFINITIVE.

Pres. *regere*, *to rule*.  
Perf. *rēxisse*, *to have ruled*.  
Fut. *rēctūrus esse*, *to be about to rule*.Pres. *regēns*, *ruling*.  
(Gen. *regentis*).  
Fut. *rēctūrus*, *about to rule*.

## GERUND.

Gen. *regendī*, *of ruling*,  
Dat. *regendō*, *for ruling*,  
Acc. *regendum*, *ruling*,  
Abl. *regendō*, *by ruling*.

## SUPINE.

Acc. *rēctūm*, *to rule*,  
Abl. *rēctū*, *to rule, be ruled*.

## THIRD (OR CONSONANT-) CONJUGATION.

106. Passive Voice.—Regor, *I am ruled.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.

regor

PRES. INF.

regI

PERF. IND.

rēctus sum

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

regor

*I am ruled.*

PLURAL.

regimur

regeris

regiminī

regeritur

reguntur

## IMPERFECT.

*I was ruled.*

regēbar

regēbāmur

regēbāris, or -re

regēbāminī

regēbātur

regēbāntur

## FUTURE.

*I shall be ruled.*

regar

regēmur

regēris, or -re

regēminī

regētur

regēntur

## PERFECT.

*I have been ruled, or I was ruled.*

rēctus sum

rēcti sumus

rēctus es

rēcti esatis

rēctus est

rēcti sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been ruled.*

rēctus eram

rēcti erāmus

rēctus erās

rēcti erātis

rēctus erat

rēcti erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have been ruled.*

rēctus erō

rēcti erimus

rēctus eris

rēcti eritis

rēctus erit

rēcti erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*May I be ruled, let him be ruled.*

## SINGULAR.

regar  
regāris, or -re  
regātur

PLURAL.  
regāmur  
regāminī  
regantur

## IMPERFECT.

*I should be ruled, he would be ruled.*

regerer  
regerēris, or -re  
regerētur

regerēmur  
regerēminī  
regerentur

## PERFECT.

*I may have been ruled.*

rēctus sim  
rēctus sis  
rēctus sit

rēcti simus  
rēcti sitis  
rēcti sint

## PLUPERFECT.

*I should have been ruled, he would have been ruled.*

rēctus esse  
rēctus essēs  
rēctus esset

recti essēmus  
recti essētis  
recti essent

## IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. regere, be thou ruled;**regimini, be ye ruled.**Fut. regitor, thou shalt be ruled,**regitor, he shall be ruled;**reguntor, they shall be ruled.*

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres. regi, to be ruled.**Perf. rēctus esse, to have been  
ruled.**Fut. rēctum iri, to be about to  
be ruled.*

## PARTICIPLE.

*Perfect. rēctus, ruled, having  
been ruled.**Gerundive. regendus, to be ruled,  
deserving to be  
ruled.*

FOURTH (OR **I-**) CONJUGATION.

107.

Active Voice. — Audiō, *I hear.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PASS. PARTIC.
audiō	audire	audiūi	audiūtus

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	<i>I hear.</i>	PLURAL.
audiō		audiūmus
audiōs		audiūtis
audit		audiūtunt

## IMPERFECT.

*I was hearing, or I heard.*

audiēbam	audiēbāmus
audiēbās	audiēbātis
audiēbat	audiēbānt

## FUTURE.

*I shall hear.*

audiam	audiēmus
audiēs	audiētis
audiet	audiēnt

## PERFECT.

*I have heard, or I heard.*

audiūi	audiūmus
audiūsistī	audiūsistis
audiūvit	audiūvērunt, or -ēre

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had heard.*

audiōveram	audiōverāmus
audiōverās	audiōverātis
audiōverat	audiōverant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have heard.*

audiōverō	audiōverimus
audiōveris	audiōveritis
audiōverit	audiōverint

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*May I hear, let him hear.*

## SINGULAR.

audiām

audiās

audiat

## PLURAL.

audiāmūs

audiātis

audiānt

## IMPERFECT.

*I should hear, he would hear.*

audīrem

audīrēs

audīret

audīrēmūs

audīrētis

audīrent

## PERFECT.

*I may have heard.*

audīverim

audīveris

audīverit

audīverīmūs

audīverītis

audīverint

## PLUPERFECT.

*I should have heard, he would have heard.*

audīvissēm

audīvissēs

audīvissēt

audīvissēmūs

audīvissētis

audīvissēnt

## IMPERATIVE.

Pres. audi, *hear thou* ;audite, *hear ye.*Fut. audītō, *thou shalt hear,*  
audītō, *he shall hear ;*auditō, *ye shall hear,*  
audiuntō, *they shall hear.*

## INFINITIVE.

Pres. audīrē, *to hear.*

## PARTICIPLE.

Pres. audiēns, *hearing.*Perf. audīvissē, *to have heard.*

(Gen. audiēntis.)

Fut. audītūrūs esse, *to be about*  
*to hear.*Fut. audītūrūs, *about to hear.*

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

Gen. audiēndī, *of hearing,*Dat. audiēndō, *for hearing,*Acc. audiēndūm, *hearing,*Abl. audiēndō, *by hearing.*Acc. audītūm, *to hear,*Abl. audītū, *to hear, be heard.*

FOURTH (OR *I-*) CONJUGATION.108. Passive Voice.—*Audior, I am heard.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.

audior

PRES. INF.

audIri

PERF. IND.

audItus sum

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

audior

audIris

audItur

*I am heard.*

PLURAL.

audImur

audImini

audiuntur

## IMPERFECT.

*I was heard.*

audiēbar

audiēbāris, or -re

audiēbātur

audiēbāmur

audiēbāmini

audiēbāntur

## FUTURE.

*I shall be heard.*

audiar

audiēris, or -re

audiētur

audiēmur

audiēmini

audientur

## PERFECT.

*I have been heard, or I was heard.*

audItus sum

audItus es

audItus est

audIti sumus

audIti estis

audIti sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been heard.*

audItus eram

audItus erās

audItus erat

audIti erāmus

audIti erātis

audIti erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have been heard.*

audItus erō

audItus eris

audItus erit

audIti erimus

audIti eritis

audIti erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*May I be heard, let him be heard.*

## SINGULAR.

audiar  
audiāris, or -re  
audiātur

## PLURAL.

audiāmur  
audiāminī  
audiāntur

## IMPERFECT.

*I should be heard, he would be heard.*

audīrer  
audiīrēris, or -re  
audiīrētur

audiīremur  
audiīremīnī  
audiīrentur

## PERFECT.

*I may have been heard.*

audītus sim  
audītus sīs  
audītus sit

auditī sīmus  
auditī sītis  
auditī sint

## PLUPERFECT.

*I should have been heard, he would have been heard.*

audītus essēm  
audītus essēs  
audītus esset

auditī essēmus  
auditī essētis  
auditī essent

## IMPERATIVE.

Pres. audīre, be thou heard;

auditīminī, be ye heard.

Fut. audītor, thou shalt be heard,

auditor, he shall be heard;

audiuntor, they shall be heard.

## INFINITIVE.

Pres. audīrī, to be heard.

Perf. audītus esse, to have been  
heard.

Fut. audītum irī, to be about to  
be heard.

## PARTICIPLE.

Perfect. audītus, heard,  
having been heard.

Gerundive. audiēndus, to be  
heard, deserving  
to be heard.

VERBS IN **-IÖ** OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

109. 1. Verbs in **-iö** of the Third Conjugation take the endings of the Fourth Conjugation wherever the latter endings have two successive vowels. This occurs only in the Present System.

2. Here belong—

- a) *capiö, to take; cupiö, to desire; faciö, to make; fodiö, to dig; fugiö, to flee; jaciö, to throw; pariö, to bear; quatö, to shake; rapiö, to seize; sapiö, to taste.*
- b) Compounds of *laciö* and *speciö* (both ante-classical); *as, alliciö, entice; cōnspeciö, behold.*
- c) The deponents *gradior, to go; morior, to die; patior, to suffer.*

110. **Active Voice.** — *Capiö, I take.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PASS. PARTIC.
capiö,	capere,	cēpī,	captus.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.	PRESENT TENSE.	PLURAL.
capiö, capis, capit;		capimus, capit, capiunt.

## IMPERFECT.

capiēbam, -iēbās, -iēbat;	capiēbāmus, -iēbātis, -iēbant.
---------------------------	--------------------------------

## FUTURE.

capiam, -iēs, -iet;	capiēmus, -iētis, -ient.
---------------------	--------------------------

## PERFECT.

cēpī, -istī, -it;	cēpimus, -istis, -ērunt or -ēre.
-------------------	----------------------------------

## PLUPERFECT.

cēperam, -erās, -erat;	cēperāmus, -erātis, -erant.
------------------------	-----------------------------

## FUTURE PERFECT.

cēperō, -eris, -erit;	cēperimus, -eritis, -erint.
-----------------------	-----------------------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.	PRESENT.	PLURAL.
capiam, -iās, -iat;		capiāmus, -iātis, -iant.
caperem, -erēs, -eret;	IMPERFECT.	caperēmus, -erētis, -erent.
cēperim, -erīs, -erit;	PERFECT.	cēperīmus, -erītis, -erint.
cēpissem, -issēs, -isset;	PLUPERFECT.	cēpissēmus, -issētis, -issent.

## IMPERATIVE.

Pres. cape;	capite.
Fut. capitō, capitō;	capitōte, capiuntō.

## INFINITIVE.

Pres. capere.	Pres. capiēns.
Perf. cēpisse.	
Fut. captūrus esse.	Fut. captūrus.

## GERUND.

Gen. capiendī,	
Dat. capiendō,	
Acc. capiendum,	Acc. captum,
Abl. capiendō.	Abl. captū.

## SUPINE.

111. Passive Voice. — Capior, *I am taken.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.
capior,	capiī,	captus sum.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.	PRESENT TENSE.	PLURAL.
capior, caperis, capitur;		capimur, capimini, capiuntur.
capiēbar, -iēbāris, -iēbātūr;	IMPERFECT.	capiēbāmur, -iēbāmī, -iēbāntūr.
capiar, -iēris, -iētūr;	FUTURE.	capiēmur, -iēmī, -iēntūr.

SINGULAR.	PERFECT.	PLURAL.
captus sum, es, est ;	capti sumus, estis, sunt.	
PLUPERFECT.		
captus eram, erās, erat ;	capti erāmus, erātis, erant.	
FUTURE PERFECT.		
captus erō, eris, erit ;	capti erimus, eritis, erunt.	
SUBJUNCTIVE.		
PRESENT.		
capiar, -iāris, -iātur ;	capiāmur, -iāminī, -iantur.	
IMPERFECT.		
caperer, -erēris, -erētur ;	caperēmur, -erēminī, -erentur.	
PERFECT.		
captus sim, sīs, sit ;	capti sīmus, sītis, sint.	
PLUPERFECT.		
captus essem, essēs, esset ;	capti essēmus, essētis, essent.	
IMPERATIVE.		
Pres. capere ;	capiminī.	
Fut. capitor, capitor ;	capiuntor.	
INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.
Pres. capi.		
Perf. captus esse.	Perfect. captus.	
Fut. captum īri.	Gerundive. capiendus.	

## DEPONENT VERBS.

112. Deponent Verbs have in the main Passive *forms* with Active or Neuter *meaning*. But—

- They have the following Active forms: Future Infinitive, Present and Future Participles, Gerund, and Supine.
- They have the following Passive meanings: always in the Gerundive, and sometimes in the Perfect Passive Participle; as,—  
*sequendus, to be followed; adeptus, attained.*

## 113. Paradigms of Deponent Verbs are —

- I. Conj. **mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum, admire.**
- II. Conj. **vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear.**
- III. Conj. **sequor, sequīl, secūtus sum, follow.**
- IV. Conj. **largior, largīrī, largītus sum, give.**
- III. (in -or) **patior, patīl, passus sum, suffer.**

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	III (in -or).
Pres.	mīror	vereor	sequor	largior	patior
	mīrāris	verēris	sequeris	largīris	pateris
	mīrātūr	verētūr	sequitur	largītūr	patitūr
	mīrāmūr	verēmūr	sequimur	largīmūr	patimūr
	mīrāmīnī	verēmīnī	sequimīnī	largīmīnī	patimīnī
	mīrāntūr	verēntūr	sequuntūr	largīntūr	patiuntūr
Impf.	mīrābar	verēbar	sequēbar	largīēbar	patiēbar
Fut.	mīrābor	verēbor	sequar	largiar	patiar
Perf.	mīrātūs sum	veritus sum	secūtūs sum	largītūs sum	passus sum
Plup.	mīrātūs erām	veritus erām	secūtūs erām	largītūs erām	passus erām
F. P.	mīrātūs erō	veritus erō	secūtūs erō	largītūs erō	passus erō

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	mīrer	verear	sequar	largiar	patiar
Impf.	mīrārer	verērer	sequerer	largīrer	paterer
Perf.	mīrātūs sim	veritus sim	secūtūs sim	largītūs sim	passus sim
Plup.	mīrātūs essem	veritus essem	secūtūs essem	largītūs essem	passus essem

## IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	mīrāre	verēre	sequere	largīre	patere
Fut.	mīrātor	verētor	sequitor	largītor	patitor

## INFINITIVE.

Pres.	mīrārī	verērī	sequīl	largīrī	patīl
Perf.	mīrātūs esse	veritus esse	secūtūs esse	largītūs esse	passus esse
Fut.	mīrātūrūs esse	veritūrūs esse	secūtūrūs esse	largītūrūs esse	passūrūs esse

## PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	mīrāns	verēns	sequēns	largiēns	patiēns
Fut.	mīrātūrūs	veritūrūs	secūtūrūs	largītūrūs	passūrūs
Perf.	mīrātūs	veritus	secūtūs	largītūs	passus
Ger.	mīrandūs	verendūs	sequendūs	largiendūs	patiendūs

## GERUND.

mīrandī, etc.	verendī	sequendī	largiendī	patiendī
mīrandō, etc.	verendō, etc.	sequendō, etc.	largiendō, etc.	patiendō, etc.

## SUPINE.

mīrātūm, -tū	veritūm, -tū	secūtūm, -tū	largītūm, -tū	passūtūm, -sū
--------------	--------------	--------------	---------------	---------------

## SEMI-DEONENTS.

114. 1. Semi-Deponents are verbs which have the Present System in the Active Voice, but the Perfect System in the Passive without change of meaning. Here belong —

*audeō, audēre, ausus sum, to dare.*

*gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, to rejoice.*

*soleō, solēre, solitus sum, to be wont.*

*fīdō, fidēre, fīsus sum, to trust.*

2. The following verbs have a Perfect Passive Participle with Active meaning: —

*adolēscō, grow up; adultus, having grown up.*

*cēnāre, dine; cēnātus, having dined.*

*placēre, please; placitus, having pleased, agreeable.*

*prandēre, lunch; prānsus, having lunched.*

*pōtāre, drink; pōtus, having drunk.*

*jūrāre, swear; jūrātus, having sworn.*

a. *Jūrātus* is used in a passive sense also.

3. *Revertor* and *dēvertor* both regularly form their Perfect in the Active Voice; *viz.* —

*revertor, revertī (Inf.), revertī (Perf.), to return.*

*dēvertor, dēvertī (Inf.), dēvertī (Perf.), to turn aside.*

## PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

115. There are two Periphrastic Conjugations, — the Active and the Passive. The Active is formed by combining the Future Active Participle with the auxiliary *sum*, the Passive by combining the Gerundive with the same auxiliary.

## Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Pres. amātūrus (-a, -um) sum, I am about to love.*

*Imp. amātūrus erām, I was about to love.*

*Fut. amātūrus erō, I shall be about to love.*

*Perf. amātūrus ful, I have been (was) about to love.*

*Plup. amātūrus fuerām, I had been about to love.*

*Fut. P. amātūrus fuerō, I shall have been about to love.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. amātūrus sim, *may I be about to love.*  
 Imp. amātūrus essem, *I might be about to love.*  
 Perf. amātūrus fuerim, *I may have been about to love.*  
 Plup. amātūrus fuisse, *I might have been about to love.*

## INFINITIVE.

Pres. amātūrus esse, *to be about to love.*  
 Perf. amātūrus fuisse, *to have been about to love.*

## Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.

## INDICATIVE.

Pres. amandus (-a, -um) sum, *I am to be loved, must be loved.*  
 Imp. amandus eram, *I was to be loved.*  
 Fut. amandus erō, *I shall deserve to be loved.*  
 Perf. amandus ful, *I was to be loved.*  
 Plup. amandus fueram, *I had deserved to be loved.*  
 Fut. P. amandus fuerō, *I shall have deserved to be loved.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. amandus sim, *may I deserve to be loved.*  
 Imp. amandus essem, *I might deserve to be loved.*  
 Perf. amandus fuerim, *I may have deserved to be loved.*  
 Plup. amandus fuisse, *I might have deserved to be loved.*

## INFINITIVE.

Pres. amandus esse, *to deserve to be loved.*  
 Perf. amandus fuisse, *to have deserved to be loved.*

## PECULIARITIES OF CONJUGATION.

116. I. Perfects in -āvī, -āvī, and -īvī, with the forms derived from them, often drop the *ve* or *vī* before endings beginning with *r* or *s*. So also nōvī (from nōscō) and the compounds of dēlēvī (from moveō). Thus: —

amāvistī	amāstī	dēlēvistī	dēlēstī
amāvisse	amāsse	dēlēvisse	dēlēsse
amāvērunt	amārunt	dēlēvērunt	dēlērunt
amāverim	amārim	dēlēverim	dēlērim
amāveram	amāram	dēlēveram	dēlēram
amāverō	amārō	dēlēverō	dēlērō
nōvistī	nōstī	nōverim	nōrim
nōvisse	nōsse	nōveram	nōram
audīvistī	audīstī	audīvisse	audisse

2. In the Gerund and Gerundive of the Third and Fourth Conjugations, the endings *-undus*, *-undi*, often occur instead of *-endus* and *-endi*, as *faciundus*, *faciundi*.

3. *Dico*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, form the Imperatives, *dīc*, *dūc*, *fac*. But compounds of *faciō* form the Imperative in *-fice*, as *cōfīce*. Compounds of *dīcō*, *dūcō*, accent the ultima; as, *ēdīc*, *ēdūc*.

4. Archaic and Poetic forms: —

- a. The ending *-ier* in the Present Infinitive Passive; as, *amārier*, *monērier*, *dīcier*, for *amārī*, *monērī*, *dīcī*.
- b. The ending *-ībam* for *-ībam* in Imperfects of the Fourth Conjugation, and *-ībō* for *-īam* in Futures; as, *sōlbam*, *scībō*, for *scīsbam*, *sciam*.
- c. Instead of the fuller forms, in such words as *dīxīstī*, *scrip-sīstīs*, *surrēxīs*, we sometimes find *dīxītī*, *scripstīs*, *surrēxē*, etc.
- d. The endings *-īm*, *-īs*, etc. (for *-am*, *-as*, etc.) occur in a few Subjunctive forms; as, *ēdīm* (*eat*), *dūntī*, *perdūntī*.

5. In the Future Active and Perfect Passive Infinitive, the auxiliary *esse* is often omitted; as, *āctūrum* for *āctūrum esse*; *ējectus* for *ējectus esse*.

### FORMATION OF THE VERB STEMS.

#### Formation of the Present Stem.

117. Many verbs employ the Verb Stem for the Present Stem;<sup>1</sup> as, *dīcere*, *dūcere*, *amāre*, *monēre*, *audīre*. Others form the Present Stem variously, as follows: —

1. By appending the vowels, *ā*, *ē*, *ī*; as, —

*juvāre*, Present Stem *juvā-* (Verb Stem *juv-*).

*augēre*, " " *augē-* ( " " *aug-*).

*vincīre*, " " *vincī-* ( " " *vino-*).

2. By adding *i*, as *cāpiō*, Present Stem *cāpi-* (Verb Stem *cāp-*).

3. By the insertion of *n* (m before labial-mutes) before the final consonant of the Verb Stem; as, *fundō* (Stem *fud-*), *rumpō* (Stem *rup-*).

4. By appending *-n* to the Verb Stem; as, —

*cern-ō* *pell-ō* (for *pel-nō*).

<sup>1</sup> Strictly speaking, the Present Stem always ends in a Thematic Vowel (*ā* or *ō*); as, *dīc-ā*, *dīc-ō*; *amā-ā*, *amā-ō*. But the multitude of phonetic changes involved prevents a scientific treatment of the subject here. See the Author's *Latin Language*.

### Formation of the Perfect Stem.

118. The Perfect Stem is formed from the Verb Stem—

1. By adding **v** (in case of Vowel Stems); as,—  
**amāv-I**,      **dēlēv-I**,      **audīv-I**.
2. By adding **u** (in case of some Consonant Stems); as,—  
**strepū-I**,      **genu-I**,      **alu-I**.
3. By adding **s** (in case of most Consonant Stems); as,—  
**carp-δ**, Perfect **carps-I**.  
**scrib-δ**,      "      **scrips-I** (for **scrib-sI**).  
**rīd-eδ**,      "      **rīs-I**      (for **rīd-sI**).  
**sent-iδ**,      "      **sēns-I**      (for **sent-sI**).  
**dīo-δ**,      "      **dīx-I**      (i.e. **dīo-sI**).
- a. Note that before the ending **-sI** a Dental Mute (**t**, **d**) is lost; a Guttural Mute (**c**, **g**) unites with **s** to form **x**; while the Labial **b** is changed to **p**.
4. Without addition. Of this formation there are three types:—
  - a) The Verb Stem is reduplicated by prefixing the initial consonant with the following vowel or **e**; as,—  
**currδ**, Perfect **cu-currI**.  
**poscδ**,      "      **po-poscI**.  
**pellδ**,      "      **pe-pullI**.

NOTE 1. — Compounds, with the exception of *dō*, *stō*, *sistō*, *discō*, *poscō*, omit the reduplication. Thus: *com-pull*, but *re-poposci*.

NOTE 2.—Verbs beginning with **sp** or **st** retain both consonants in the reduplication, but drop **s** from the stem; as, **spondeō**, **spo-pondi**; **stō**, **steti**.

b) The short vowel of the Verb Stem is lengthened; as, **legð**, **lægɪ**; **agð**, **ægɪ**. Note that **æ** by this process becomes **ɛ**.

c) The vowel of the Verb Stem is unchanged; as, **vertð**, **vertɪ**; **minuð**, **minuɪ**.

## Formation of the Participial Stem.

119. The Perfect Passive Participle, from which the Participial Stem is derived by dropping **-us**, is formed : —

1. By adding **-tus** (sometimes to the Present Stem, sometimes to the Verb Stem) ; as, —

amā-re,	Participle	amā-tus.
dēlē-re,	"	dēlē-tus.
audi-re,	"	audi-tus.
leg-ere,	"	lēc-tus.
scrib-ere,	"	scrip-tus.
sentI-re,	"	sēn-sus (for sent-tus).
caed-ere,	"	cae-sus (for caed-tus).

a. Note that **g**, before **t**, becomes **c** (see § 8, 5) ; **b** becomes **p** ; while **dt** or **tt** becomes **ss**, which is then often simplified to **s** (§ 8, 2).

2. After the analogy of Participles like **sēnsus** and **caesus**, where **-sus** arises by phonetic change, **-sus** for **-tus** is added to other Verb Stems ; as, —

lāb-I,	Participle	lāp-sus.
fig-ere,	"	fi-xus.

a. The same consonant changes occur in appending this ending **-sus** to the stem as in the case of the Perfect ending **-sI** (see § 118, 3, a).

3. A few Verbs form the Participle in **-Itus** ; as, —

domā-re,	dom-Itus.
monē-re,	mon-Itus.

4. The Future Active Participle is usually identical in its stem with the Perfect Passive Participle ; as, **amā-tūs**, **amātūrus** ; **moni-tūs**, **monitūrus**. But —

juvā-re, Perf. Partic.	jūtūs,	has	Fut. Act. Partic.	juvātūrus. <sup>1</sup>
lavā-re, " "	lautus,	" "	" "	lavātūrus.
par-ere, " "	partus,	" "	" "	paritūrus.
ru-ere, " "	-rūtūs,	" "	" "	ruitūrus.
secā-re, " "	sectus,	" "	" "	secātūrus.
fru-I,	-frūctūs,	" "	" "	fruitūrus.
mor-I,	-mortūs,	" "	" "	moritūrus.
orī-rl,	-ortūs,	" "	" "	oritūrus.

<sup>1</sup> But the compounds of **juvā** sometimes have **-jūtūrus** ; as, **adjūtūrus**.

## LIST OF THE MOST IMPORTANT VERBS, WITH PRINCIPAL PARTS.

## First (Ā-) Conjugation.

## 120. I. PERFECT IN -VĪ.

amō	amāre	amāvī	amātus	love
-----	-------	-------	--------	------

All regular verbs of the First Conjugation follow this model.  
 pōtō pōtāre pōtāvī pōtus (§ 114, 2) drink

## II. PERFECT IN -UĪ.

crepō	crepāre	crepuī	crepitūrus	rattle
cubō	cubāre	cubuī	cubitūrus	lie down
domō	domāre	domuī	domitus	tame
fricō	fricāre	fricuī	frictus and fricātus	rub
micō	micāre	micuī	—	glitter
dīmicō	dīmicāre	dīmicāvī	dīmicātum (est) <sup>1</sup>	fight
ex-plicō	explicāre	explicāvī (-ui)	explicātus (-itus)	unfold
im-plicō	implicāre	implicāvī (-ui)	implicātus (-itus)	entwine
secō	secāre	secuī	sectus	cut
sonō	sonāre	sonuī	sonātūrus	sound
tonō	tonāre	tonuī	—	thunder
vetō	vetāre	vetuī	vetitus	forbid

## III. PERFECT IN -Ī WITH LENGTHENING OF THE STEM VOWEL.

juvō	juvāre	jūvī	jūtus	help
lavō	lavāre	lāvī	lautus	wash

## IV. PERFECT REDUPLICATED.

stō	stāre	stetī	stātūrus
-----	-------	-------	----------

## V. DEPONENTS.

These are all regular, and follow *miror*, *mīrārī*, *mīrātus sum*.

## Second (Ē-) Conjugation.

## 121. I. PERFECT IN -VĪ.

dēleō	dēlēre	dēlēvī	dēlētus	destroy
fleō	flēre	flēvī	flētus	weep, lament
com-pleō <sup>2</sup>	complēre	complēvī	complētus	fill up
aboleō	abolēre	abolēvī	abolitus	destroy
cieō <sup>3</sup>	ciēre	cīvī	citius	set in motion

<sup>1</sup> Used only impersonally.

<sup>2</sup> So *impleō*, *explēō*.

<sup>3</sup> Compounds follow the Fourth Conjugation: *accīō*, *accīre*, etc.

## II. PERFECT IN -UĪ.

## a. Type -eō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

arceō	arcēre	arcuī		keep off
coerceō	coercēre	coercuī	coercitus	hold in check
exerceō	exercēre	exercuī	exercitus	practise
caleō	calēre	caluī	calitūrus	be warm
careō	carēre	caruī	caritūrus	be without
doleō	dolēre	doluī	dolitūrus	grieve
habeō	habēre	habuī	habitus	have
dēbeō	dēbēre	dēbuī	dēbitus	owe
praebeō	praebēre	praebuī	praebitus	offer
jaceō	jacēre	jacuī	jacitūrus	lie
mereō	merēre	meruī	meritus	earn, deserve
moneō	monēre	monuī	monitus	advise
noceō	nocēre	nocuī	nocitum (est)	injure
pāreō	pārēre	pāruī	pāritūrus	obey
placeō	placēre	placuī	placitūrus	please
taceō	tacēre	tacuī	tacitūrus	be silent
terreō	terrēre	terrūi	territus	frighten
valeō	valēre	valuī	valitūrus	be strong

NOTE 1.—The following lack the Participial Stem:—

ägeō	egēre	eguī	—	want
ēmineō	ēminēre	ēminuī	—	stand forth
flōreō	flōrēre	flōruī	—	bloom
horreō	horrēre	horruī	—	bristle
lateō	latēre	latuī	—	lurk
niteō	nitēre	nituī	—	gleam
oleō	olēre	olui	—	smell
palleō	pallēre	palluī	—	be pale
pateō	patēre	patuī	—	lie open
rubeō	rubēre	rubuī	—	be red
sileō	silēre	siluī	—	be silent
splendeō	splendēre	splenduī	—	gleam
studeō	studēre	studuī	—	study
stupeō	stupēre	stupuī	—	be amazed
timeō	timēre	timuī	—	fear
torpeō	torpēre	torpuī	—	be dull
vigeō	vigēre	viguī	—	flourish
vireō	virēre	viruī	—	be green

and others.

NOTE 2. — The following are used only in the Present System: —

aveō	avēre	—	—	wish
frigeō	frigēre	—	—	be cold
immineō	imminēre	—	—	overhang
maereō	maerēre	—	—	mourn
polleō	pollēre	—	—	be strong

and others.

b. Type -eō, -ēre, -uī, -tus (-sus).

cēnseō	cēnsēre	cēnsuī	cēnsus	estimate
doceō	doçēre	docuī	doctus	teach
misceō	misçēre	miscuī	mixtus	mix
teneō	tenēre	tenuī	—	hold

So *contineō* and *sustineō*; but —

retineō	retinēre	retinuī	retentus	retain
obtineō	obtinēre	obtinuī	obtentus	maintain
torreō	torrēre	torruī	tostus	bake

### III. PERFECT IN -SĪ.

augeō	augēre	auxī	auctus	increase
torqueō	torquēre	torsī	tortus	twist
indulgeō	indulgēre	indulſī	—	indulge
lūceō	lūcēre	lūxī	—	be light
lūgeō	lūgēre	lūxī	—	mourn
jubeō	jubēre	jussī	jussus	order
per-mulceō	permulcēre	permulsī	permulsus	soothe
rīdeō	rīdēre	rīsī	rīsum (est)	laugh
suādeō	suādēre	suāsī	suāsum (est)	advise
abs-tergeō	abstergēre	abstersī	abstersus	wipe off
ärdeō	ärđēre	ärſī	ärſūrus	burn
haereō	haerēre	haesī	haesūrus	stick
maneō	manēre	mānsī	mānsūrus	stay
algeō	algēre	alsī	—	be cold
fulgeō	fulgēre	fulsī	—	gleam
urgeō	urgēre	ursī	—	press

### IV. PERFECT IN -I WITH REDUPLICATION.

mordeō	mordēre	momordī	morsus	bite
spondeō	spondēre	spōpondī	spōnsus	promise
tondeō	tondēre	totondī	tōnsus	shear
pendeō	pendēre	pependī	—	hang

## V. PERFECT IN -Ē WITH LENGTHENING OF STEM VOWEL.

caveō	cavēre	cāvī	cautūrus	take care
faveō	favēre	fāvī	fautūrus	favor
foveō	fo. ēre	fōvī	fōtus	cherish
moveō	movēre	mōvī	mōtus	move
paveō	pavēre	pāvī	—	fear
sedeō	sedēre	sēdī	sessūrus	sit
videō	vidēre	vīdī	vīsus	see
voveō	vovēre	vōvī	vōtus	vow

## VI. PERFECT IN -Ē WITHOUT EITHER REDUPLICATION OR LENGTHENING OF STEM VOWEL.

ferveō	fervēre	(fervī ferbuī)	—	boil
prandeō	prandēre	prandī	prānsus (§ 114, 2)	lunch
strīdeō	strīdēre	strīdī	—	creak

## VII. DEPONENTS.

liceor	licērī	licitus sum	bid
polliceor	pollicērī	pollicitus sum	promise
mereor	merērī	meritus sum	earn
misereor	miserērī	miseritus sum	pity
vereor	verērī	veritus sum	fear
fateor	fatērī	fassus sum	confess
cōnfiteor	cōnfiterī	cōnfessus sum	confess
reor	rērī	ratus sum	think
medeor	medērī	—	heal
tueor	tuērī	—	protect

## Third (Consonant) Conjugation.

## 122. I. VERBS WITH PRESENT STEM ENDING IN A CONSONANT.

## 1. Perfect in -sī.

## a. Type -ō, -ērē, -sī, -tus.

carpō	carpere	carpsī	carptus	pluck
sculpō	sculpere	sculpsī	sculptus	chisel
rēpō	rēpere	rēpsī	—	creep
serpō	serpere	serpsī	—	crawl
scribō	scribere	scripsī	scriptus	write
nūbō	nūbere	nūpsī	nūpta (woman only)	marry
regō	regere	rēxī	rēctus	govern

tegō	tegere	tēxī	tēctus	cover
af-fligō	affligere	afflīxi	afflīctus	shatter
dīcō	dīcere	dīxī	dictus	say
dūcō	dūcere	dūxī	ductus	lead
coquō	coquere	coxī	coctus	cook
trahō	trahere	trāxī	trāctus	draw
vehō	vehere	vexī	vectus	carry
cingō	cingere	cīnxī	cīnctus	gird
tingō	tingere	tīnxī	tīnctus	dip
jungō	jungere	jūnxī	jūnctus	join
fungō	fungere	fīnxī	fīctus	mould
pingō	pingere	pīnxī	pīctus	paint
stringō	stringere	strīnxī	strictus	bind
-stinguō <sup>1</sup>	-stinguere	-stīnxī	-stīnctus	blot out
unguō	unguere	ūnxī	ūnctus	anoint
vīvō	vivere	vīxī	vīctum (est)	live
gerō	gerere	gessī	gestus	carry
ūrō	ūrere	ussī	ūstus	burn
temnō	temnere	con-tempsi	con-temptus	despise

## b. Type -ō, -ēre, -ēī, -sus.

figō	figere	fīxī	fixus	fasten
mergō	mergere	mersī	mersus	sink
spargō	spargere	sparsī	sparsus	scatter
flectō	flectere	flexī	flexus	bend
nectō	nectere	nexū (nexī)	nexus	twine
mittō	mittere	mīsī	missus	send
rādō	rādere	rāsī	rāsus	shave
rōdō	rōdere	rōsī	rōsus	gnaw
vādō	vādere	-vāsī <sup>2</sup>	-vāsum (est) <sup>2</sup>	march, walk
lūdō	lūdere	lūsī	lūsum (est)	play
trūdō	trūdere	trūsī	trūsus	push
laedō	laedere	laesī	laesus	injure, hurt
claudō	claudere	clausī	clausus	close
plaudō	plaudere	plausī	plausum (est)	clap
explōdō	explōdere	explōsī	explōsus	hoot off
cēdō	cēdere	cessī	cessum (est)	withdraw
dīvidō	dīvidere	dīvīsī	dīvīsus	divide
premō	premere	pressī	pressus	press

<sup>1</sup> Fully conjugated only in the compounds: *extinguō*, *restinguō*, *distinguō*.<sup>2</sup> Only in the compounds: *ēvādō*, *invādō*, *pervādō*.

## 2. Perfect in -I with Reduplication.

ab-dō	abdere	abdidī	abditus	conceal
red-dō	red-dere	reddidi	redditus	return
So <i>addō, condō, dēdō, perdō, prōdō, trādō, etc.</i>				
cōn-sistō	cōsistere	cōnstitī	—	take one's stand
resistō	resistere	restiti	—	resist
circumsistō	circumsistere	circumstetī	—	surround
cadō	cadere	cecidi	cāsūrus	fall
caedō	caedere	cecidi	caesus	kill
pendō	pendere	pependī	pēnsus	weigh, pay
tendō	tendere	tetendī	tentus	stretch
tundō	tundere	tutudi	tūsus, tūnsus	beat
fallō	fallere	fesellī	(falsus, as Adj.)	deceive
pellō	pellere	pepulī	pulsus	drive out
currō	currere	cucurrī	cursum (est)	run
parcō	parcere	pepercī	parsūrus	spare
canō	canere	cecinī	—	sing
tangō	tangere	tetigī	tāctus	touch
pungō	pungere	pupugī	pūnctus	prick

NOTE.—In the following verbs the perfects were originally reduplicated, but have lost the reduplicating syllable:—

per-cellō	percellere	perculī	perculsus	strike down
findō	findere	fidi	fissus	split
scindō	scindere	scidī	scissus	tear apart
tollō	tollere	sus-tuli	sublātus	remove

## 3. Perfect in -I with Lengthening of Stem-Vowel.

agō	agere	ēgī	āctus	drive, do
peragō	peragere	perēgī	perāctus	finish
subigō	subigere	subēgī	subāctus	subdue
cōgō	cōgere	coēgī	coāctus	force, gather
frangō	frangere	frēgī	frāctus	break
perfringō	perfringere	perfrēgī	perfrāctus	break down
legō	legere	lēgī	lēctus	gather, read
perlegō	perlegere	perlēgī	perlēctus	read through
colligō	colligere	collēgī	collēctus	collect
dēligō	dēligere	dēlēgī	dēlēctus	choose
dīligō	dīligere	dīlēxī	dīlēctus	love
intellegō	intellegere	intellēxī	intellēctus	understand
neglegō	neglegere	neglēxī	neglēctus	neglect

emō	emere	ēmī	ēmptus	buy
coēmō	coēmere	coēmī	coēmptus	buy up
redimō	redimere	redēmī	redēmptus	buy back
dirimō	dirimere	dirēmī	dirēmptus	destroy
dēmō	dēmere	dēmpsī	dēmptus	take away
sūmō	sūmere	sūmpsī	sūmptus	take
prōmō	prōmere	prōmpsī	(prōmptus, as Adj.)	take out
vincō	vincere	vīcī	victus	conquer
re-linquō	relinquere	relīquī	relīctus	leave
rumpō	rumpere	rūpī	ruptus	break
edō	ēsse	ēdī	ēsus	eat
fundō	fundere	fūdī	fūsus	pour

4. Perfect in -I without either Reduplication or Lengthening of Stem-Vowel.

excūdō	excūdere	excūdī	excūsus	hammer
cōnsīdō	cōnsīdere	cōnsēdī	—	{ take one's seat
possīdō	possīdere	possēdī	possessus	{ take posses- sion
accendō	accendere	accēndī	accēnsus	kindle
a-scendō	ascendere	ascēndī	ascēnsum (est)	climb
dē-fendō	dēfendere	dēfēndī	dēfēnsus	defend
prehēdō	prehendere	prehēndī	prehēnsus	seize
īcō	īcere	īcī	īctus	strike
vellō	vellere	vellī	vulsus	pluck
vertō	vertere	vertī	versus	turn
pandō	pandere	pāndī	passus	spread
solvō	solvere	solvī	solūtus	loose
visō	visere	vīsī	vīsus	visit
volvō	volvere	volvī	volūtus	roll
verrō	verrere	verrī	versus	sweep

5. Perfect in -ui.

in-cumbō	incumbere	incubuī	incubitūrus	lean on
gignō	gignere	genuī	genitus	bring forth
molō	molere	moluī	molitus	grind
vomō	vomere	vomuī	vomitus	vomit
fremō	fremere	fremuī	—	snort
gemō	gemere	gemuī	—	sigh
metō	metere	messuī	messus	reap

tremō	tremere	tremuī	—	tremble
strepō	strepere	strepūī	—	rattle
alō	alere	alūī	altus (alitus)	nourish
colō	colere	colūī	cultus	cultivate
incolō	incolere	incoluī	—	inhabit
excolō	excolere	excoluī	excultus	perfect
cōnsulō	cōnsulere	cōnsulūī	cōnsultus	consult
cōnserō	cōnserere	cōnseruī	cōnsertus	join
dēserō	dēserere	dēseruī	dēsertus	desert
disserō	disserere	disseruī	—	discourse
texō	texere	texuī	textus	weave

## 6. Perfect in -vī.

sinō	sinere	sīvī	situs	allow
dēsinō	dēsinere	dēsīī	dēsitus	cease
pōnō	pōnere	posuī	positus	place
ob-linō	oblinere	oblēvī	oblitus	smear
serō	serere	sēvī	satus	sow
cōnserō	cōnserere	cōnsēvī	cōnsitus	plant
cernō	cernere	—	—	separate
discernō	discernere	discrēvī	discrētus	distinguish
dēcernō	dēcernere	dēcrēvī	dēcrētus	decide
spernō	spernere	sprēvī	sprētus	scorn
sternō	sternere	strāvī	strātus	spread
prō-sternō	prōsternere	prōstrāvī	prōstrātus	overthrow
petō	petere	petīvī (petīī)	petītus	seek
appetō	appetere	appetīvī	appetītus	long for
terō	terere	trīvī	trītus	rub
quaerō	quaerere	quaesīvī	quaesītus	seek
acquirō	acquirere	acquisīvī	acquisītus	acquire
arcessō	arcessere	arcessīvī	arcessītus	summon
capessō	capessere	capessīvī	capessītus	seize
laceſſō	laceſſere	laceſſīvī	laceſſītus	provoke

## 7. Used only in Present System.

angō	angere	—	—	choke
lambō	lambere	—	—	lick
claudō	claudere	—	—	be lame
furō	furere	—	—	rave
vergō	vergere	—	—	bend

and a few others.

II. VERBS WITH PRESENT STEM ENDING IN -U.

induō	induere	induī	indūtus	put on
imbuō	imbuere	imbuī	imbūtus	moisten
luō	luere	luī	—	wash
polluō	polluere	polluī	pollūtus	defile
minuō	minuere	minuī	minūtus	lessen
statuō	statuere	statuī	statūtus	set up
cōnstituō	cōnstituere	cōnstituī	cōnstitūtus	determine
suō	suere	suī	sūtus	sew
tribuō	tribuere	tribuī	tribūtus	allot
ruō	ruere	ruī	ruitūrus	fall
dīruō	dīruere	dīruī	dīrutus	destroy
obruō	obruere	obruī	obrūtus	overwhelm
acuō	acuere	acuī	—	sharpen
arguō	arguere	arguī	—	accuse
congruō	congruere	congruī	—	agree
metuō	metuere	metuī	—	fear
ab-nuō	abnuere	abnuī	—	decline
re-spuō	respuere	respuī	—	reject
struō	struere	strūxī	strūctus	build
fluō	fluere	flūxī	(flūxus, as Adj.)	flow

III. VERBS WITH PRESENT STEM ENDING IN -I.

cupiō	cupere	cupīvī	cupītus	wish
sapiō	sapere	sapīvī	—	taste
rapiō	rapere	rapuī	raptus	snatch
diripiō	diripere	diripuī	direptus	plunder
cōspiciō	cōspicere	cōnspectī	cōnspectus	gaze at
aspiciō	aspicere	aspexī	aspectus	behold
illiciō	illicere	illexī	illectus	allure
pelliciō	pellicere	pellexī	pellectus	allure
ēliciō	ēlicere	ēlicuī	ēlicitus	elicit
quatiō	quatere	—	quassus	shake
concutiō	concutere	concussī	concussus	shake
pariō	parete	peperi	partus	bring forth
capiō	capere	cēpī	captus	take
acciō	accipere	accēpī	acceptus	accept
incipiō	incipere	incēpī	inceptus	begin
faciō	facere	fēcī	factus	make
afficiō	afficere	affēcī	affectus	affect

*Passive, afficior, afficī, affectus sum.*

So other prepositional compounds, *perficiō*, *perficior*; *interficiō*, *interficior*; etc. But—

assuēfaciō	assuēfacere	assuēfēcī	assuēfactus	accustom
<i>Passive</i> , assuēfiō, assuēfieri, assuēfactus sum.				

So also *patefaciō*, *patefiō*; *calefaciō*, *calefiō*; and all non-prepositional compounds.

jaciō	jacere	jēcī	jactus	<i>hurl</i>
abiciō	abicere	abjēcī	abjectus	<i>throw away</i>
fodiō	fodere	fōdī	fossus	<i>dig</i>
fugiō	fugere	fūgī	fugitūrus	<i>flee</i>
effugiō	effugere	effūgī	—	<i>escape</i>

#### IV. VERBS IN -SCŌ.

##### 1. Verbs in -scō from Simple Roots.

poscō	poscere	poposcī	—	<i>demand</i>
discō	discere	didicī	—	<i>learn</i>
pāscō	pāscere	pāvī	pāstus	<i>feed</i>
pāscor	pāscī	pāstus sum	—	<i>graze</i>
crēscō	crēscere	crēvī	crētus	<i>grow</i>
cōnsuēscō	cōnsuēscere	cōnsuēvī	cōnsuētus	<i>accustom one's self</i>
quiēscō	quiēscere	quiēvī	quiētūrus	<i>be still</i>
adolēscō	adolēscere	adolēvī	adultus	<i>grow up</i>
obsolēscō	obsolēscerē	obsolēvī	—	<i>grow old</i>
nōscō	nōscere	nōvī	—	{ <i>become acquainted with</i>
ignōscō	ignōscere	ignōvī	ignōtūrus	<i>par<sup>on</sup></i>
agnōscō	agnōscere	agnōvī	agnitus	<i>recognize</i>
cognōscō	cognōscere	cognōvī	cognitus	{ <i>get acquainted with</i>

##### 2. Verbs in -scō formed from other Verbs.

These usually have Inchoative or Inceptive meaning (see § 155, 1). When they have the Perfect, it is the same as that of the Verbs from which they are derived.

flōrēscō	flōrēscere	flōruī	<i>begin to bloom</i> (flōreō)
scīscō	scīscere	scīvī	<i>enact</i> (sciō)
ārēscō	ārēscere	āruī	<i>become dry</i> (āreō)
calescō	calescere	caluī	<i>become hot</i> (caleō)
cōsenēscō	cōsenēscere	cōsenuī	<i>grow old</i> (seneō)
extimēscō	extimēscere	extimūī	<i>fear greatly</i> (timeō)
ingemīscō	ingemīscere	ingemuī	<i>sigh</i> (gemō)
adhaerēscō	adhaerēscere	adhaesī	<i>stick</i> (haereō)

3. Verbs in *-scō* derived from Adjectives, usually with Inchoative meaning.

obdūrēscō	obdūrēscere	obdūruī	grow hard	(dūrus)
ēvānēscō	ēvānēscere	ēvānuī	disappear	(vānus)
percrēbrēscō	percrēbrēscere	percrēbruī	grow fresh	(crēber)
mātūrēscō	mātūrēscere	mātūruī	grow ripe	(mātūrus)
obmūtēscō	obmūtēscere	obmūtuī	grow dumb	(mūtus)

## V. DEPONENTS.

fungor	fungī	fūnctus sum	perform
queror	querī	questus sum	complain
loquor	loquī	locūtus sum	speak
sequor	sequī	secūtus sum	follow
fruor	fruī	fruitūrus	enjoy
perfruor	perfruī	perfrūctus sum	thoroughly enjoy
lābor	lābī	lāpsus sum	glide
amplector	amplectī	amplexus sum	embrace
nītor	nītī	nīsus sum, nīxus sum	strive
gradior	gradī	gressus sum	walk
patior	patī	passus sum	suffer
perpetiōr	perpetī	perpessus sum	endure
ūtor	ūtī	ūsus sum	use
morior	morī	mortuus sum	die
adipīscor	adipīscī	adeptus sum	acquire
commīscor	commīscī	commentus sum	invent
remīscor	remīscī	—	remember
nancīscor	nancīscī	nanctus (nactus) sum	acquire
nāscor	nāscī	nātus sum	be born
oblīviscor	oblīviscī	oblitus sum	forget
pacīscor	pacīscī	pactus sum	covenant
proficīscor	proficīscī	profectus sum	set out
ulcīscor	ulcīscī	ultus sum	avenge
īrāscor	īrāscī	(īrātus, as Adj.)	be angry
vescor	vescī	—	eat

## Fourth Conjugation.

123. I. PERFECT ENDS IN *-VI-*

audiō	audire	audīvī	audītus	hear
-------	--------	--------	---------	------

So all regular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

sepeliō	sepelīre	sepelīvī	sepultus	bury
---------	----------	----------	----------	------

II. PERFECT ENDS IN **-UĪ**.

aperiō	aperire	aperuī	apertus	open
operiō	operire	operuī	opertus	cover
saliō	salire	saluī	—	leap

III. PERFECT ENDS IN **-SĪ**.

saepiō	saepire	saepsi	saeptus	hedge in
sanciō	sancire	sānxī	sānctus	ratify
vinciō	vincire	vinxī	vinctus	bind
amiciō	amicire	—	amictus	envelop
fulciō	fulcire	fulsi	fultus	prop up
referciō	refercire	refersi	refertus	fill
sarciō	sarcire	sarsi	sartus	patch
hauriō	haurire	hausi	haustus	draw
sentiō	sentire	sēnsi	sēnsus	feel

IV. PERFECT IN **-I** WITH LENGTHENING OF STEM VOWEL.

veniō	venire	vēnī	ventum (est)	come
adveniō	advenire	advēnī	adventum (est)	arrive
inveniō	invenire	invēnī	inventus	find

## V. PERFECT WITH LOSS OF REDUPLICATION.

reperiō	reperiē	repperī	repertus	find
comperiō	comperiē	comperī	compertus	learn

## VI. USED ONLY IN THE PRESENT.

feriō	ferīre	—	—	strike
ēsuriō	ēsūrīre	—	—	be hungry

## VII. DEPONENTS.

largior	largīrī	largītus sum	bestow
So many others.			
experior	experīrī	expertus sum	try
opperior	opperīrī	oppertus sum	await
ōrdior	ōrdīrī	ōrsus sum	begin
orior	orīrī	ortus sum	arise

*Orior* usually follows the Third Conjugation in its inflection; as, *oreris, oritur, orīmūr*; *orerer* (Imp. Subj.); *orere* (Imper.).

mētior	mētīrī	mēnsus sum	measure
assentior	assentīrī	assēnsus sum	assent

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

124. A number of Verbs are called Irregular. The most important are **sum**, **dō**, **edō**, **ferō**, **volō**, **nōlō**, **mālō**, **eō**, **fiō**. The peculiarity of these Verbs is that they append the personal endings in many forms directly to the stem, instead of employing a connecting vowel, as **fer-s** (2d Sing. of **fer-ō**, instead of **fer-is**. They are but the relics of what was once in Latin a large class of Verbs.

125. The Inflection of **sum** has already been given. Its various compounds are inflected in the same way. They are—

absum	abesse	āfūi	<i>am absent</i>
<i>Pres. Partic. absēns (absentis), absent.</i>			
adsum	adesse	adfūi	<i>am present</i>
dēsum	deesse	dēfūi	<i>am lacking</i>
īsum	inesse	īfūi	<i>am in</i>
intersum	interesse	interfūi	<i>am among</i>
praesum	praeesse	prafūi	<i>am in charge of</i>
<i>Pres. Partic. praesēns (praesentis), present.</i>			
obsum	obesse	obfūi	<i>hinder</i>
prōsum	prōdesse	prōfūi	<i>am of advantage</i>
subsum	subesse	subfūi	<i>am underneath</i>
supersum	superesse	superfūi	<i>am left</i>

NOTE.—**Prōsum** is compounded of **prōd** (earlier form of **prō**) and **sum**; the **d** disappears before consonants, as **prōsumus**; but **prōdestis**.

126. **Possum.** In its Present System **possum** is a compound of **pot-** (for **pote**, *able*) and **sum**; **potuī** is from an obsolete **potēre**.

		PRINCIPAL PARTS.	
	<b>possum,</b>	<b>posse,</b>	<b>potuī,</b>

*to be able.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i>	possum, potes, potest;	possimus, potestis, possunt.
<i>Imp.</i>	poteram;	poterāmus.
<i>Fut.</i>	poterō;	poterimus.
<i>Perf.</i>	potuī;	potuimus.
<i>Plup.</i>	potueram;	potuerāmus.
<i>Fut. P.</i>	potuerō;	potuerimus.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

<i>Pres.</i>	possim, possis, possit;	possimus, possitis, possint.
<i>Imp.</i>	possem;	possēmus.
<i>Perf.</i>	potuerim;	potuerīmus.
<i>Plup.</i>	potuissem;	potuissēmus.

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	posse.
<i>Perf.</i>	potuisse.

## PARTICIPLE.

*Pres.* potēns (*as an adjective*).

## 127.

Dō, *I give.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

dō,	dāre,	dēdī,	dātus.
-----	-------	-------	--------

## Active Voice.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

<i>Pres.</i>	dō, dās, dat;	dāmus, dātis, dant.
<i>Imp.</i>	dābam, <i>etc.</i> ;	dābāmus.
<i>Fut.</i>	dābō, <i>etc.</i> ;	dābimus.
<i>Perf.</i>	dēdī;	dēdimus.
<i>Plup.</i>	dēderam;	dēderāmus.
<i>Fut. P.</i>	dēderō;	dēderimus.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	dem;	dēmus.
<i>Imp.</i>	dārem;	dārēmus.
<i>Perf.</i>	dēderim;	dēderīmus.
<i>Plup.</i>	dēdissem;	dēdissēmus.

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	dā;	dāte.
<i>Fut.</i>	dātō;	dātōte.
	dātō;	dantō.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i>	dāre.	dāns.
<i>Perf.</i>	dēdisse.	
<i>Fut.</i>	dātūrus esse.	dātūrus.

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

dāndi, *etc.*

dātūm, dātū.

1. The Passive is inflected regularly with the short vowel. Thus: *dārī, dātūr, dābātūr, dārētūr, etc.*

2. The archaic and poetic Present Subjunctive forms *duim, duint, interduō, perduint, etc.*, are not from the root *da-*, but from *du-*, a collateral root of similar meaning.

## 128.

*Edō, I eat.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>edō,</i>	<i>ēsse,</i>	<i>ēdī,</i>	<i>ēsus.</i>
-------------	--------------	-------------	--------------

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>edō</i>	<i>edimus</i>
	<i>ēs</i>	<i>ēstis</i>
	<i>ēst</i>	<i>edunt</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Imp.</i>	<i>ēssem</i>	<i>ēssēmus</i>
	<i>ēssēs</i>	<i>ēssētis</i>
	<i>ēsset</i>	<i>ēssent</i>

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ēs</i>	<i>ēste</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>ēstō</i>	<i>ēstōte</i>
	<i>ēstō</i>	<i>eduntō</i>

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ēsse</i>
--------------	-------------

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Pres. 3d Sing. ēstur*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Imp. 3d Sing. ēssētūr*

1. Observe the long vowel of the forms in *ēs-*, which alone distinguishes them from the corresponding forms of *esse, to be*.

2. Note *comēdō, comēsse, comēdī, comēsus* or *comēstus, consume.*

3. The Present Subjunctive has *ēdim, -īs, -it, etc.*, less often *ēdam, -ās, etc.*

## 129.

*Ferō, I bear.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

ferō,      ferre,      tuli,      latus.

## Active Voice.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres.	ferō, fers, fert;	ferimus, fertis, ferunt. <sup>1</sup>
Imp.	ferēbam;	ferēbāmus.
Fut.	feram;	ferēmus.
Perf.	tuli;	tulimus.
Plup.	tuleram;	tulerāmus.
Fut. P.	tulerō;	tulerimus.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	feram;	ferāmus.
Imp.	ferrem;	ferrēmus.
Perf.	tulerim;	tulerīmus.
Plup.	tulissem;	tulissēmus.

## IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	fer;	ferte.
Fut.	fertō;	fertōte.
	fertō;	feruntō.

## INFINITIVE.

Pres.	ferre.
Perf.	tulisse.
Fut.	lātūrus esse.

## PARTICIPLE.

Pres.	ferēns.
Fut.	lātūrus.

## GERUND.

Gen.	ferendī.
Dat.	ferendō.
Acc.	ferendum.
Abl.	ferendō.

## SUPINE.

Acc.	lātum.
Abl.	lātū.

<sup>1</sup> It will be observed that not all the forms of *ferō* lack the connecting vowel. Some of them, as *ferimus*, *ferunt*, follow the regular inflection of verbs of the Third Conjugation.

## Passive Voice.

feror,      ferrī,      lātus sum,      to be borne.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Pres.	feror, ferris, fertur ;	ferimur, feriminī, feruntur.
Imp.	ferēbar ;	ferēbāmur.
Fut.	ferar ;	ferēmur.
Perf.	lātus sum ;	lātī sumus.
Plup.	lātus eram ;	lātī erāmus.
Fut. P.	lātus erō ;	lātī erimus.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	ferar ;	ferāmur.
Imp.	ferrer ;	ferrēmur.
Perf.	lātus sim ;	lātī sīmus.
Plup.	lātus essem ;	lātī essēmus.

## IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	ferre ;	feriminī.
Fut.	fertor ;	—
	fertor ;	feruntor.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

Pres.	ferrī.	
Perf.	lātus esse.	Perf. lātus.
Fut.	lātum īrī.	Ger. ferendus.

So also the Compounds—

afferō	afferre	attulī	allātus	bring toward
auferō	auferre	abstulī	ablātus	take away
cōnferō	cōnferre	contulī	collātus	compare
differō	differre	distulī	dilātus	put off
efferō	efferre	extulī	ēlātus	carry out
īferō	īferre	intulī	illātus	bring against
offerō	offerre	obtulī	oblātus	present
referō	referre	rettulī	relātus	bring back

NOTE.—The forms **sustullī** and **sublātus** belong to **tollō**.

## 130.

## Volō, nōlō, mālō.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

volō,	velle,	voluī,	<i>to wish.</i>
nōlō,	nōlle,	nōluī,	<i>to be unwilling.</i>
mālō,	mālle,	māluī,	<i>to prefer.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	volō,	nōlō,	mālō,
	vīs,	nōn vīs,	māvīs,
	vult;	nōn vult;	māvult;
	volumus,	nōlumus,	mālumus,
	vultis,	nōn vultis,	māvultis,
	volunt.	nōlunt.	mālunt.
Imp.	volēbam.	nōlēbam.	mālēbam.
Fut.	volam.	nōlam.	mālam.
Perf.	voluī.	nōluī.	māluī.
Plup.	volueram.	nōlueram.	mālueram.
Fut. P.	voluerō.	nōluerō.	māluerō.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	velim, -īs, -it, etc.	nōlim.	mālim.
Imp.	vellem, -ēs, -et, etc.	nōllem.	māllem.
Perf.	voluerim.	nōluerim.	māluerim.
Plup.	voluissem.	nōluissem.	māluissem.

## IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	nōli,	nolite.
Fut.	nōlītō,	nolitōte,

nōlītō; nōluntō.

## INFINITIVE.

Pres.	velle.	nōlle.	mālle.
Perf.	voluisse.	nōluisse.	māluisse.

## PARTICIPLE.

Pres.	volēns.	nōlēns.
		—

## 131.

FACTUS OCCURSUS.

**PRINCIPAL PARTS.**

**fACTUS,**      **fierI,**      **factus sum,**      *to become, be made.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>fiō, fis, fit;</i>	<i>fitus, fitis, fiunt.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>fiēbam;</i>	<i>fiēbāmus.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>fiam;</i>	<i>fiēmus.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>factus sum;</i>	<i>factū sumus.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>factus eram;</i>	<i>factū erāmus.</i>
<i>Fut. P.</i>	<i>factus erō;</i>	<i>factū erimus.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>fiam;</i>	<i>fiāmus.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>fierem;</i>	<i>fierēmus.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>factus sim;</i>	<i>factū simus.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>factus essem;</i>	<i>factū essēmus.</i>

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>fi;</i>	<i>fite.</i>
--------------	------------	--------------

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>fieri.</i>	<b>PARTICIPLE.</b>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>factus esse.</i>	<i>Perf. factus.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>factum īrī.</i>	<i>Ger. faciendus.</i>

NOTE.—A few isolated forms of compounds of *fiō* occur; as, *defit*, *lacks*; *infit*, *begins*.

## 132.

ESCHE OCCURSUS.

**PRINCIPAL PARTS.**

**eSCHE,**      **Ire,**      **īvI,**      **itum (est),**      *to go.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>eō, īs, it;</i>	<i>īmus, ītis, eunt.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>ībam;</i>	<i>ībāmus.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>ībō;</i>	<i>ībimus.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>īvī (īi);</i>	<i>īvimus (īimus).</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>īveram (ieram);</i>	<i>īverāmus (ierāmus).</i>
<i>Fut. P.</i>	<i>īverō (ierō);</i>	<i>īverimus (ierimus).</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i>	eam ;	eāmus.
<i>Imp.</i>	īrem ;	īrēmus.
<i>Perf.</i>	īverim (ierim) ;	īverīmus (ierīmus).
<i>Plup.</i>	īvissem (iissem, īsem) ;	īvissēmus (iissemus, īssēmus).

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	ī ;	īte.
<i>Fut.</i>	ītō ;	ītōte,
	ītō ;	euntō.

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	īre.	<i>Pres.</i> iēns.
<i>Perf.</i>	īvisse (īsse).	( <i>Gen.</i> euntis.)
<i>Fut.</i>	ītūrus esse.	<i>Fut.</i> ītūrus. <i>Gerundive</i> , eundum.

## GERUND.

eundi, etc.

## SUPINE.

itum, itū.

I. Transitive compounds of **eō** admit the full Passive inflection; as, **adeor**, **adīris**, **adītur**, etc.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs lack certain forms. The following are the most important:—

## 133. USED MAINLY IN THE PERFECT SYSTEM.

**Coepi**, *I have begun.*      **Memini**, *I remember.*      **Ödi**, *I hate.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Perf.</i>	coepī.	memini.	ödi.
<i>Plup.</i>	cooperam.	memineram.	öderam.
<i>Fut.</i>	P. cooperō.	meminerō.	öderō.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Perf.</i>	coepērim.	meminerim.	öderim.
<i>Plup.</i>	coepissem.	meminissem.	ödissem.

## IMPERATIVE.

*Sing.* mementō ; *Plur.* mementōtē,

## INFINITIVE.

*Perf.* coepisse.  
*Fut.* coeptūrus esse.

meminisse.

ōdisse.  
ōsūrus esse.

## PARTICIPLE.

*Perf.* coeptus, *begun.*  
*Fut.* coeptūrus.

ōsus.  
ōsūrus.

1. When *coepI* governs a Passive Infinitive it usually takes the form *coeptus est*; as, *amārī coeptus est*, *he began to be loved.*
2. Note that *memini* and *ōdī*, though Perfect in form, are Present in sense. Similarly the Pluperfect and Future Perfect have the force of the Imperfect and Future; as, *memineram*, *I remembered*; *ōderō*, *I shall hate.*

134. *Inquam*, *I say* (inserted between words of a direct quotation).

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

<i>Pres.</i>	inquam, inquis, inquit;	— — inquiunt.
<i>Fut.</i>	— inquiēs, inquiet.	— — —

*Perf. 3d Sing.* inquit.

135.

**Ajō**, *I say.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

<i>Pres.</i>	ajō, aīs, aīt;	— — ajunt.
<i>Imp.</i>	ajēbam, ajēbās, ajēbat;	ajēbāmus, ajēbātis, ajēbant.

*Perf. 3d Sing.* aīt.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Pres. 3d Sing.* ajat.

NOTE. — For *aisne*, *do you mean?* *ain* is common

## 136.

## Fārl, to speak.

This is inflected regularly in the perfect tenses. In the Present System it has—

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
	—	—
	fātūr.	—
Fut.	fābor,	—
	—	—
	fābitur.	—
Imp.	fāre.	—
Inf.	fārī.	—
Pres. Partic.	fantis, fanti, etc.	—
Gerund, G.,	fandī;	D. and Abl., fandō.
Gerundive,	fandus.	—

NOTE.—Forms of fārl are rare. More frequent are its compounds; as,—  
affātūr, *he addresses*; praeſāmūr, *we say in advance*.

## 137. OTHER DEFECTIVE FORMS.

1. Queō, quīre, quīvī, *to be able*, and nequeō, nequīre, nequīvī, *to be unable*, are inflected like eō, but occur chiefly in the Present Tense, and there only in special forms.
2. Quaesō, *I entreat*; quaesumus, *we entreat*.
3. Cedo (2d sing.), cette (2d plu.); *give me, tell me*.
4. Salvē, salvēte, *hail*. Also Infinitive, salvēre.
5. Havē (avē), havēte, *hail*. Also Infinitive, havēre.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

138. Impersonal Verbs correspond to the English, *it snows, it seems, etc.* They have no personal subject, but may take an Infinitive, a Clause, or a Neuter Pronoun; as, mē pudet hōc fēcisse, lit. *it shames me to have done this*; hōc decet, *this is fitting*. Here belong—

- I. Verbs denoting operations of the weather; as,—

fulget	fulsít	it lightens
tonat	tonuit	it thunders

grandinat	—	it hails
ningit	ninxit	it snows
pluit	pluit	it rains

## II. Special Verbs.

paenitet	paenitēre	paenituit	it repents
piget	pigēre	piguit	it grieves
pudet	pudēre	puduit	it causes shame
taedet	taedēre	taeduit	it disgusts
miseret	miserēre	miseruit	it causes pity
libet	libēre	libuit	it pleases
licet	licēre	licuit	it is lawful
oportet	oportēre	oportuit	it is fitting
decet	decēre	decuit	it is becoming
dēdecet	dēdecēre	dēdecuit	it is unbecoming
rēfert	rēferre	rētulit	it concerns

## III. Verbs Impersonal only in Special Senses.

cōnstat	cōnstāre	cōnstituit	it is evident
praestat	praestāre	praestitit	it is better
juvat	juvāre	jūvit	it delights
appāret	appārēre	appāruit	it appears
placet	placēre	placuit (placitum est)	it pleases
accēdit	accēdere	accessit	it is added
accidit	accidere	accidit	it happens
contingit	contingere	contigit	it happens
ēvenit	ēvenīre	ēvēnit	it turns out
interest	interesse	interfuit	it concerns

## IV. The Passive of Intransitive Verbs; as,—

itur	lit. it is gone	i.e. some one goes
curritur	lit. it is run	i.e. some one runs
ventum est	lit. it has been come	i.e. some one has come
veniendum est	lit. it must be come	i.e. somebody must come
pugnārī potest	lit. it can be fought	i.e. somebody can fight

## PART III.

### PARTICLES.

**139.** Particles are the four Parts of Speech that do not admit of inflection ; *viz.* Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, Interjections.

#### ADVERBS.

**140.** Adverbs denote manner, place, time, or degree. Most adverbs are in origin case-forms which have become stereotyped by usage. The common adverbial terminations have already been given above (§ 76). The following TABLE OF CORRELATIVES is important :—

RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE.	DEMONSTRATIVE.	INDEFINITE.
<i>ubi, where ; where ?</i>	<i>hic, here.</i> <i>ibi, illi, isti, there.</i>	<i>alicubi, usquam, us- piam, somewhere.</i>
<i>quōd, whither ; whither ?</i>	<i>huc, hither.</i> <i>ēd, istuc, illuc, thither.</i>	<i>aliquōd, to some place.</i>
<i>unde, whence ; whence ?</i>	<i>hinc, hence.</i> <i>inde, istinc, illinc, thence.</i>	<i>alicunde, from some- where.</i>
<i>quā, where ; where ?</i>	<i>hāc, by this way.</i> <i>ēā, istāc, illāc, by that way.</i>	<i>aliquā, by some way.</i>
<i>cum, when.</i>	<i>nunc, now.</i>	<i>aliquandō, umquam,</i>
<i>quandō, when ?</i>	<i>tum, tunc, then.</i>	<i>sometime, ever.</i>
<i>quotiēns, as often as ; how often ?</i>	<i>totiēns, so often.</i>	<i>aliquotiēns, some number of times.</i>
<i>quam, as much as ; how much ?</i>	<i>tam, so much.</i>	<i>aliquantum, somewhat.</i>

## PREPOSITIONS.

141. Prepositions show relations of words. The following Prepositions govern the Accusative:—

<i>ad, to.</i>	<i>contrā, against.</i>	<i>post, after.</i>
<i>adversus, against.</i>	<i>ergā, toward.</i>	<i>praeter, past.</i>
<i>adversum, toward,</i> <i>against.</i>	<i>extrā, outside.</i>	<i>prope, near.</i>
<i>ante, before.</i>	<i>Infrā, below.</i>	<i>propter, on account of.</i>
<i>apud, with, near.</i>	<i>inter, between.</i>	<i>secundum, after.</i>
<i>circā, around.</i>	<i>intrā, within.</i>	<i>subter, beneath.</i>
<i>circiter, about.</i>	<i>jūxtā, near.</i>	<i>super, over.</i>
<i>circum, around.</i>	<i>ob, on account of.</i>	<i>suprā, above.</i>
<i>cis, this side of.</i>	<i>penes, in the hands of.</i>	<i>trāns, across.</i>
<i>citrā, this side of.</i>	<i>per, through.</i>	<i>ultrā, beyond.</i>
	<i>pōne, behind.</i>	<i>versus, toward.</i>

1. **Usque** is often prefixed to *ad*, in the sense of *even* ; as,—  
*usque ad urbem, even to the city.*

2. **Versus** always follows its case ; as,—

*Rōmam versus, toward Rome.*

It may be combined with a preceding Preposition ; as,—  
*ad urbem versus, toward the city.*

3. Like *prope*, the Comparatives *propior*, *propius*, and the Superlatives *proximus*, *proximē*, sometimes govern the Accusative ; as,—

*Ubiſ proximē Rhēnum incolunt, the Ubii dwell next to the Rhine;*  
*propius castra hostium, nearer the camp of the enemy.*

142. The following Prepositions govern the Ablative:—

<i>ā, ab, abs, from, by.</i>	<i>cum, with.</i>	<i>prō, in front of,</i>
<i>absque, without.</i>	<i>dē, from, concerning.</i>	<i>for.</i>
<i>cōram, in the presence</i> <i>of.</i>	<i>ē, ex, from, out of.</i>	<i>sine, without.</i>
	<i>prae, before.</i>	<i>tenus, up to.</i>

1. **Ā, ab, abs.** Before vowels or *h*, *ab* must be used ; before consonants we find sometimes *ā*, sometimes *ab* (the latter usually not before the labials *b, p, f, v, m* ; nor before *c, g, q, or t*) ; *abs* occurs only before *tē*, and *ā* is admissible even there.

2. **Ē, ex.** Before vowels or *h*, *ex* must be used ; before consonants, we find sometimes *ē*, sometimes *ex*.

3. **Tenus** regularly follows its case, as **pectoribus tenuis**, *up to the breast*. It sometimes governs the Genitive, as **labrōrum tenuis**, *as far as the lips*.

4. **Cum** is appended to the Pronouns of the First and Second Persons, and to the Reflexive Pronoun; usually also to the Relative and Interrogative. Thus:—

mēcum	nōbīscum	quōcum or cum quō
tēcum	vōbīscum	quācum or cum quā
sēcum		quibuscum or cum quibus

On *quicum*, see § 89, Footnote 1.

143. Two Prepositions, **in**, *in*, *into*, and **sub**, *under*, govern both the Accusative and the Ablative. With the Accusative they denote **motion**; with the Ablative, **rest**; as,—

*in urbem, into the city;      in urbe, in the city.*

1. **Subter** and **super** are also occasionally construed with the Ablative.

#### 144. RELATION OF ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS.

1. Prepositions were originally Adverbs, and many of them still retain their adverbial meaning; as, **post**, *afterwards*; **ante**, *previously*; **contra**, *on the other hand, etc.*

2. Conversely several words, usually adverbs, are occasionally employed as prepositions; as,—

**clam**, *pridiē*, with the Accusative.

**procul**, *simul*, *palam*, with the Ablative.

3. **Anástrophe**. A Preposition sometimes follows its case. This is called **Anástrophe**; as,—

**ei**, *quōs inter erat*, *those among whom he was*.

Anastrophe occurs chiefly with dissyllabic prepositions.

#### CONJUNCTIONS AND INTERJECTIONS.

145. 1. Conjunctions are used to connect ideas. For Coördinate Conjunctions, see §§ 341 ff. Subordinate Conjunctions are treated in connection with Subordinate Clauses.

2. Interjections express emotion. Thus:—

1. Surprise; as, **ēn**, **ecce**, **ō**.

2. Joy; as, **iō**, **euōe**.

3. Sorrow and Pain; as, **heu**, **ēheu**, **vae**, **prō**.

4. Calling; as, **heus**, **eho**.

## PART IV.

### WORD-FORMATION.

#### I. DERIVATIVES.

146. Derivatives are formed by appending certain terminations called Suffixes to stems of verbs, nouns, or adjectives.

##### A. NOUNS.

###### 1. Nouns derived from Verbs.

147. 1. The suffix **-tor** (-*sor*), Fem. **-trix**, denotes *the agent*; as, —  
**victor, victrix, victor;**      **dēfēnsor, defender.**

NOTE. — The suffix **-tor** is occasionally appended to noun stems; as, —  
**gladiātor, gladiator** (from **gladius**).

2. The suffix **-or** (originally **-ōs**) denotes *an activity or a condition*; as, —

**amor, love;**      **timor, fear;**      **dolor, pain.**

3. The suffixes **-tiō** (-*siō*), Gen. **-ōnis**, and **-tus** (-*sus*), Gen. **-tis**, denote *an action as in process*; as, —  
**vēnātiō, hunting;** **obsessiō, blockade;** **gemitus, sighing;** **cursus, running.**

NOTE. — Rarer endings with the same force are: —

a) **-tūra, -sūra;** as, —  
**sepultūra, burial;** **mēnsūra, measuring.**

b) **-iūm;** as, —  
**gaudium, rejoicing.**

c) **-īdō, -īs, -ī-**  
**cupīdō, desire.**

4. The suffixes **-men**, **-mentum**, **-orūm**, **-trūm**, **-bulūm**, **-culūm**, denote the means or place of an action; as,—

lūmen (lūc-s-men),	light;	vocabulūm, word;
ornāmentum,	ornament;	documentūm, proof;
sepulcrum,	grave;	arātrūm, plough;
		vehiculūm, carriage.

## 2. Nouns derived from Nouns.

### 148. 1. Diminutives end in —

-ulus,	(-ula,	-ulūm)
-olus,	(-ola,	-olūm), after a vowel
-culus,	(-cula,	-culūm)
-ellus,	(-ella,	-ellūm)
-illus,	(-illa,	-illūm)

as,—

nīdulus,	little nest	(nīdus);
virgula,	wand	(virga);
oppidūlum,	little town	(oppidūm);
filīolūs,	little son	(filīus);
opusculūm,	little work	(opus);
tabellā,	tablet	(tabula);
lapillūs,	pebble	(lapis).

NOTE 1.—It will be observed that in gender the Diminutives follow the gender of the words from which they are derived.

NOTE 2.—The endings **-ellus**, **-illus** contain the primitive form of the diminutive suffix, *vis.*, **-lo-**. Thus:—

agellūs,	field,	for ager-lus;
lapillūs,	pebble,	for lapid-lus.

2. The suffix **-iūm** appended to nouns denoting persons designates either a collection of such persons or their function; as,—

collēgiūm,	a corporation, body of colleagues (collēga);
sacerdōtiūm,	priestly function (sacerdōs).

3. The suffixes **-āriūm**, **-ētūm**, **-īle** designate a place where objects are kept or are found in abundance; as,—

columbāriūm,	dove-cote	(columba);
olivētūm,	olive-orchard	(oliva);
ovīle,	sheep-fold	(ovis).

4. The suffix **-ātus** denotes *official position or honor* ; as, — **cōsulātus**, *consulship* (**cōsul**).

5. The suffix **-Ina** appended to nouns denoting persons designates *a vocation or the place where it is carried on* ; as, — **doctrīna**, *teaching* (*doctor, teacher*) ; **medicīna**, *the art of healing* (*medicus, physician*) ; **sūtrīna**, *cobbler's shop* (**sūtor, cobbler**).

6. Patronymics are Greek proper names denoting *son of . . . , daughter of . . .*. They have the following suffixes : —

a) **Masculines** : **-idēs**, **-adēs**, **-Idēs** ; as, **Priamidēs**, *son of Priam* ; **Aeneadēs**, *son of Aeneas* ; **Pēlidēs**, *son of Peleus*.

b) **Feminines** : **-ēia**, **-īa**, **-ias** ; as, **Nērēia**, *daughter of Nereus* ; **Atlantis**, *daughter of Ailas* ; **Thaumantias**, *daughter of Thaumas*.

### 3. Nouns derived from Adjectives.

**149.** The suffixes **-tās** (**-itās**), **-tūdō** (**-itūdō**), **-ia**, **-itia** are used for the formation of abstract nouns *denoting qualities* ; as, — **bonitās**, *goodness* ; **celeritās**, *swiftness* ; **magnitūdō**, *greatness* ; **audācia**, *boldness* ; **amicitīa**, *friendship*.

## B. ADJECTIVES.

### 1. Adjectives derived from Verbs.

**150.** 1. The suffixes **-bundus** and **-cundus** give nearly the force of a present participle ; as, —

**tremebundus**, *trembling* ; **jucundus** (**juvō**), *pleasing*.

2. The suffixes **-āx** and **-ulus** denote *an inclination or tendency*, mostly a faulty one ; as, —

**loquāx**, *loquacious* ; **crēdulus**, *credulous*.

3. The suffix **-idus** denotes *a state* ; as, —

**calidus**, *hot* ; **timidus**, *timid* ; **cupidus**, *eager*.

4. The suffixes **-ilis** and **-bilis** denote *capacity or ability*, usually in a passive sense ; as, —

**fragilis**, *fragile* (*i.e. capable of being broken*) ; **docilis**, *docile*.

## 2. Adjectives derived from Nouns.

## a) From Common Nouns.

151. 1. The suffixes *-eus* and *-inus* are appended to names of substances or materials; as,—

*aureus*, *of gold*;      *ferreus*, *of iron*;      *faginus*, *of beech*.

2. The suffixes *-ius*, *-icus*, *-Ilis*, *-alis*, *-aris*, *-arius*, *-nus*, *-anus*, *-Inus*, *-Ivus*, *-ensis* signify *belonging to*, *connected with*; as,—

<i>öratōrius</i> , <i>oratorical</i> ;	<i>legiōnārius</i> , <i>legionary</i> ;
<i>belliōs</i> , <i>pertaining to war</i> ;	<i>paternus</i> , <i>paternal</i> ;
<i>cīvīlis</i> , <i>civil</i> ;	<i>urbānus</i> , <i>of the city</i> ;
<i>rēgālis</i> , <i>regal</i> ;	<i>marīnus</i> , <i>marine</i> ;
<i>cōnsulāris</i> , <i>consular</i> ;	<i>aestīvus</i> , <i>pertaining to summer</i> ;
<i>circēnās</i> , <i>belonging to the circus</i> .	

3. The suffixes *-ōsus* and *-lēntus* denote *fullness*; as,—

<i>periculōsus</i> , <i>full of danger</i> ,	<i>glōriōsus</i> , <i>glorious</i> ;
<i>dangerous</i> ;	<i>opulentus</i> , <i>wealthy</i> .

4. The suffix *-tus* has the force of *provided with*; as,—

<i>barbātus</i> , <i>bearded</i> ;	<i>stellātus</i> , <i>set with stars</i> .
------------------------------------	--

## b) From Proper Names.

152. 1. Names of *persons* take the suffixes: *-ānus*, *-iānus*, *-Inus*; as,—

*Catōniānus*, *belonging to Cato*; *Plautīnus*, *belonging to Plautus*.

2. Names of *nations* take the suffixes *-icus*, *-ius*; as,—

*Germānicus*, *German*;

*Thrācius*, *Thracian*.

3. Names of *places* take the suffixes *-ānus*, *-Inus*, *-ēnsis*, *-aeus*, *-ius*; as,—

*Rōmānus*, *Roman*;

*Athēniēnsis*, *Athenian*;

*Amerīnus*, *of Ameria*;

*Smyrnaeus*, *of Smyrna*;

*Corinthius*, *Corinthian*.

NOTE.—*-ānus* and *-ēnsis*, appended to names of countries, designate something *stationed in* the country or *connected with* it, but not indigenous; as,—

*bellum Āfricānum*, *a war (of Romans with Romans) in Africa*.

*bellum Hispāniēnse*, *a war carried on in Spain*.

*legiōnēs Gallicānæ* (*Roman*) *legions stationed in Gaul*.

## 3. Adjectives derived from Adjectives.

153. Diminutives in *-llus* sometimes occur; as,—

parvolus, *little*;  
 misellus (*passer*), *poor little (sparrow)*;  
 pauperculus, *needy*.

## 4. Adjectives derived from Adverbs.

154. These end in *-ernus*, *-ternus*, *-tinus*, *-tinus*; as,—

hodiernus,	<i>of to-day</i>	(hodiē);
hesternus,	<i>of yesterday</i>	(herī);
intestinus,	<i>internal</i>	(intus);
dīftinus,	<i>long-lasting</i>	(dīlī).

## C. VERBS.

## 1. Verbs derived from Verbs.

155. 1. INCEPTIVES OR INCHOATIVES. These end in *-scō*, and are formed from Present Stems. They denote *the beginning of an action*; as,—

labāscō,	<i>begin to totter</i>	(from labō);
horrēscō,	<i>grow rough</i>	(from horreō);
tremēscō,	<i>begin to tremble</i>	(from tremō);
obdormīscō,	<i>fall asleep</i>	(from dormiō).

2. FREQUENTATIVES OR INTENSIVES. These denote *a repeated or energetic action*. They are formed from the Participial Stem, and end in *-tō* or *-sō*. Those derived from verbs of the First Conjugation end in *-itō* (not *-atō*, as we should expect). Examples of Frequentatives are—

jactō,	<i>toss about, brandish</i>	(from jaciō, <i>hurl</i> );
cursō,	<i>run hither and thither</i>	(from currō, <i>run</i> );
volitō,	<i>fly about</i>	(from volō, <i>fly</i> ).

a. Some double Frequentatives occur; as,—

cantitō,	<i>sing over and over</i>	(cantō);
cursitō,	<i>keep running about</i>	(cursō);
ventitō,	<i>keep coming</i> .	

b. agitō, *set in motion*, is formed from the Present Stem.

3. DESIDERATIVES. These denote *a desire to do something*. They are formed from the Participial Stem, and end in -uriō; as,—

ēsuriō, *desire to eat, am hungry* (edō);  
parturiō, *want to bring forth, am in labor* (pariō).

**2. Verbs derived from Nouns and Adjectives (Denominatives).**

156. Denominatives of the First Conjugation are mostly transitive, those of the Second exclusively intransitive. Those of the Third and Fourth Conjugations are partly transitive, partly intransitive. Examples are—

a) From Nouns:—

fraudō, *defraud* (fraus);  
vestiō, *clothe* (vestis);  
flōreō, *bloom* (flōs).

b) From Adjectives:—

līberō, *free* (līber);  
saeviō, *be fierce* (saevus).

**D. ADVERBS.**

157. 1. Adverbs derived from verbs are formed from the Participial Stem by means of the suffix -im; as,—

certātim, *emulously* (certō);  
cursim, *in haste* (currō);  
statim, *immediately* (stō).

2. Adverbs derived from nouns and adjectives are formed:—

a) With the suffixes -tim (-sim), -ātim; as,—

gradātim, *step by step*;  
paulātim, *gradually*;  
virītim, *man by man*.

b) With the suffix -tus; as,—

antiquitus, *of old*;  
rādīcitus, *from the roots*.

c) With the suffix -ter; as,—

breviter, *briefly*.

## II. COMPOUNDS.

158. 1. Compounds are formed by the union of simple words. The second member usually contains the *essential meaning* of the compound; the first member *expresses some modification* of this.

2. Vowel changes often occur in the process of composition. Thus:—

- a. In the second member of compounds. (See § 7. 1.)
- b. The final vowel of the stem of the first member of the compound often appears as *ī* where we should expect *ō* or *ā*; sometimes it is dropped altogether, and in case of consonant stems *ī* is often inserted; as,—

*signifer, standard-bearer;*  
*tubicen, trumpeter;*  
*magnanimus, high-minded;*  
*mātricida, matricide.*

## 159. EXAMPLES OF COMPOUNDS.

## 1. Nouns:—

a) Preposition + Noun; as,—

*dē-decūs, disgrace;*  
*pro-avus, great-grandfather.*

b) Noun + Verb Stem; as,—

*agri-cola, farmer;*  
*frātri-cida, fratricide.*

## 2. Adjectives:—

a) Preposition + Adjective (or Noun); as,—

*per-magnus, very great;*  
*sub-obscūrus, rather obscure;*  
*ā-mēns, frantic.*

b) Adjective + Noun; as,—

*magn-anīmus, great-hearted;*  
*celeri-pēs, swift-footed.*

c) Noun + Verb Stem; as,—

*parti-ceps, sharing;*  
*morti-fer, death-dealing.*

## 3. Verbs : —

The second member is always a verb. The first may be —

a) A Noun ; as, —

*aedi-ficō, build.*

b) An Adjective ; as, —

*ampli-ficō, enlarge.*

c) An Adverb ; as, —

*male-dicō, rail at.*

d) Another Verb ; as, —

*cale-faciō, make warm.*

e) A Preposition ; as, —

*ab-jungō, detach ;*

*re-ferō, bring back ;*

*dis-cernō, distinguish ;*

*ex-spectō, await.*

NOTE. — Here belong the so-called INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS : —

*ambi- (amb-), around ;*

*dis- (dir-, dī-), apart, asunder ;*

*por-, forward ;*

*red- (re-), back ;*

*sēd- (sē-), apart from ;*

*vē-, without.*

## 4. Adverbs : —

These are of various types ; as, —

*anteā, before ;*

*Ilicō (in locō), on the spot ;*

*imprimis, especially ;*

*obviam in the way.*

## PART V.

### SYNTAX.

160. Syntax treats of the use of words in sentences.

#### CHAPTER I.—*Sentences.*

##### CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

161. Sentences may be classified as follows :—

1. DECLARATIVE, which state something ; as,—

*puer scribit, the boy is writing.*

2. INTERROGATIVE, which ask a question ; as,—

*quid puer scribit, what is the boy writing?*

3. EXCLAMATORY, which are in the form of an exclamation ; as,—

*quot librōs scribit, how many books he writes!*

4. IMPERATIVE, which express a command or an admonition ; as,—

*scribe, write!*

##### FORM OF INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

162. Questions may be either Word-Questions or Sentence-Questions.

I. Word-Questions. These are introduced by the various interrogative pronouns and adverbs ; such as—*quis, qui, quālis, quantus, quot, quotiēns, quō, quā, etc.* Thus :—

*quis venit, who comes?*

*quam diū mansbit, how long will he stay?*

## 2. Sentence-Questions. These are introduced —

- a) By **nōnne** implying the answer 'yes'; as, —  
**nōnne vidēs, do you not see?**
- b) By **num** implying the answer 'no'; as, —  
**num exspectās, do you expect?** (i.e. *you don't expect, do you?*)
- c) By the enclitic **-ne**, appended to the emphatic word (which usually stands first), and simply asking for information; as, —  
**vidēsne, do you see?**

A question introduced by **-ne** may receive a special implication from the context; as, —

**sēnsistīne, did you not perceive?**

- d) Sometimes by no special word, particularly in expressions of surprise or indignation; as, —  
**tū in jūdicum cōspectum venīre audēs, do you dare to come into the presence of the judges?**

3. Rhetorical Questions. These are questions merely in form, being employed to express an emphatic assertion; as, **quis dubitat, who doubts?** (= *no one doubts*).

4. Double Questions. Double Questions are introduced by the following particles: —

**utrum . . . an;**

**-ne . . . . an;**

**— . . . . an.**

If the second member is negative, **annōn** (less often **necne**) is used.

Examples: —

**utrum honestum est an turpe,**  
**honestumne est an turpe,**  
**honestum est an turpe,**  
**suntne dī annōn, are there gods or not?**

- a. By an ellipsis of the first member, **an** sometimes stands alone. Its force depends upon the context; as, —

**Ā rēbus gerendīs abstrahit senectūs. Quibus? An eīs quae juventūte geruntur et vīribus? Old age (it is alleged) withdraws men from active pursuits. From what pursuits? Is it not merely from those which are carried on by the strength of youth?**

## 5. Answers.

a. The answer YES is expressed by *ita*, *etiam*, *vērō*, *sānē*, or by repetition of the verb; as, —

‘*vīsne locum mūtēmus?*’ ‘*sānē.*’ ‘*Shall we change the place?*’ ‘*Certainly.*’  
 ‘*estisne vōs lēgātī?*’ ‘*sumus.*’ ‘*Are you envoys?*’ ‘*Yes.*’

b. The answer NO is expressed by *nōn*, *minimē*, *minimē vērō*, or by repeating the verb with a negative; as, —

‘*jam ea praeteriit?*’ ‘*nōn.*’ ‘*Has it passed?*’ ‘*No.*’  
 ‘*estne frāter intus?*’ ‘*nōn est.*’ ‘*Is your brother within?*’  
 ‘*No.*’

## SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

163. The two essential parts of a sentence are the SUBJECT and PREDICATE.

The SUBJECT is that *concerning which something is said, asked, etc.* The PREDICATE is that *which is said, asked, etc., concerning the SUBJECT.*

## SIMPLE AND COMPOUND SENTENCES.

164. Sentences containing but one Subject and one Predicate are called SIMPLE SENTENCES, those containing more are called COMPOUND SENTENCES. Thus *puer librōs legit*, *the boy reads books*, is a Simple Sentence; but *puer librōs legit et epistulās scribit*, *the boy reads books and writes letters*, is a Compound Sentence. The different members of a Compound Sentence are called CLAUSES.

165. COÖRDINATE AND SUBORDINATE CLAUSES. Clauses which stand upon an equality are called COÖRDINATE; a Clause dependent upon another is called SUBORDINATE. Thus in *puer librōs legit et epistulās scribit* the two clauses are Coördinate; but in *puer librōs legit quōs pater scribit*, *the boy reads the books which his father writes*, the second clause is Subordinate to the first.

## CHAPTER II.—*Syntax of Nouns.*

**SUBJECT.**

166. The Subject of a Finite Verb (*i.e.* any form of the Indicative, Subjunctive, or Imperative) is in the Nominative Case.

### i. The Subject may be —

**a) A Noun or Pronoun ; as, —**

**puer scribit, the boy writes;**  
**hic scribit, this man writes.**

*b) An Infinitive; as, —*

**decōrum est prō patriā mori, to die for one's country is a noble thing.**

c) A Clause; as, —

**opportunē accidit quod vēnistī, it happened opportunely  
that you arrived.**

2. A Personal Pronoun as Subject is usually implied in the Verb, and is not separately expressed; as, —

**scribō, I write;**

**videt, he sees.**

a. But for the purpose of emphasis or contrast the Pronoun is expressed; as,—

**ego scribō et tu legis, *I write, and you read.***

3. The verb is sometimes omitted when it can be easily supplied from the context, especially the auxiliary **sum**; as, —

**rēctē ille** (*sc. facit*), *he does rightly*; **cōsul profectus** (*sc. est*), *the consul set out*.

## PREDICATE NOUNS.

167. A PREDICATE NOUN is one connected with the Subject by some form of the verb **Sum** or a similar verb.

168. A Predicate Noun agrees with its Subject in Case; <sup>1</sup> as,—

<sup>1</sup> For the Predicate Genitive see §§ 198, 3; 203, 5.

**Cicerō ūrātor fuit**, *Cicero was an orator*;  
**Numa creātus est rēx**, *Numa was elected king*.

1. When possible the Predicate Noun usually agrees with its Subject in Gender also; as,—

**philosophia est vītae magistra**, *philosophy is the guide of life*.

2. Besides **sum** the verbs most frequently accompanied by a Predicate Noun are—

a) **fiō, ūvādō, exsistō**; **maneō**; **videor**; as,—

**Croesus nōn semper mānsit rēx**, *Croesus did not always remain king*.

b) Passive verbs of *making, calling, regarding, etc.*; as, **creor, appellor, habeor**; as,—

**Rōmulus rēx appellātus est**, *Romulus was called king*;  
**habitus est deus**, *he was regarded as a god*.

### APPPOSITIVES.

169. 1. An Appositive is a Noun explaining or defining another Noun denoting the same person or thing; as,—

**Cicerō cōnsul**, *Cicero, the Consul*;  
**urbs Rōma**, *the city Rome*.

2. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in Case; as,—  
**opera Cicerōnīs ūrātōris**, *the works of Cicero, the orator*;  
**apud Hērodotum, patrem historiæ**, *in the works of Herodotus, the father of history*.

3. When possible the Appositive agrees with its Subject in Gender also; as,—

**assentātiō adjūtrīx vitiōrum**, *flattery, the promoter of evils*.

4. A Locative may take in Apposition the Ablative of **urbs** or **oppidum**, with or without a preposition; as,—

**Corinthi, urbe praeclārā**, or **in urbe praeclārā**, *at Corinth, a famous city*.

5. PARTITIVE APPPOSITION. A Noun denoting a whole is frequently followed by an Appositive denoting a part; as,—

**militēs, fortissimus quisque, hostibus restitūrunt**, *the soldiers, all the bravest of them, resisted the enemy*.

## THE CASES.

## THE NOMINATIVE.

170. The Nominative is confined to its use as Subject, Appositive, or Predicate Noun, as already explained. See §§ 166-169.

## THE VOCATIVE.

171. The Vocative is the Case of direct address ; as, —  
*crēdite mihi, jūdīcēs, believe me, judges.*

1. By a species of attraction, the Nominative is occasionally used for the Vocative, especially in poetry and formal prose ; as, *audī tū, populus Albānus, hear ye, Alban people!*

2. Similarly the Appositive of a Vocative may, in poetry, stand in the Nominative ; as, *nātē, mea magna potentia sōlus, O son, alone the source of my great power.*

## THE ACCUSATIVE.

172. The Accusative is the Case of the Direct Object.

173. The Direct Object may express either of the two following relations : —

*A.* The PERSON OR THING AFFECTED by the action ; as, —

*cōnsulem interfēcīt, he slew the consul ;*  
*legō librum, I read the book.*

*B.* The RESULT PRODUCED by the action ; as, —

*librum scriptū, I wrote a book (i.e. produced one) ;*  
*templum strūt, he constructs a temple.*

174. Verbs that admit a Direct Object of either of these two types are TRANSITIVE VERBS.

*a.* Verbs that regularly take a Direct Object are sometimes used without it. They are then said to be employed *absolutely* ; as, —

*rūmor est meum gnātūm amāre, it is rumored that my son is in love.*

**Accusative of the Person or Thing Affected.**

175. 1. This is the most frequent use of the Accusative; as in —

*parentēs amāmus, we love our parents ;  
mare aspicit, he gazes at the sea.*

2. The following classes of Verbs taking an Accusative of this kind are worthy of note:—

a) Many Intransitive Verbs, when compounded with a Preposition, become Transitive. Thus:—

1) Compounds of *circum*, *praeter*, *trāns*; as, —  
*hostēs circumstāre*, *to surround the enemy* ;  
*urbēm praeterire*, *to pass by the city* ;  
*mūrōs trāscendere*, *to climb over the walls*.

2) Less frequently, compounds of *ad*, *per*, *in*, *sub*; as, —  
*adīre urbēm*, *to visit the city* ;  
*peragrāre Italiam*, *to travel through Italy* ;  
*inīre magistrātūm*, *to take office* ;  
*subīre periculūm*, *to undergo danger*.

b) Many Verbs expressing emotions, regularly Intransitive, have also a Transitive use; as, —

*queror fātūm*, *I lament my fate* ;  
*doleō ejus mortēm*, *I grieve at his death* ;  
*rīdeō tuām stultitiam*, *I laugh at your folly*.

So also *lūgeō*, *maereō*, *mourn* ; *gemō*, *bemoan* ; *horreō*, *shudder*, and others.

c) The impersonals *decet*, *it becomes* ; *dēdecet*, *it is unbecoming* ; *juvat*, *it pleases*, take the Accusative of the Person Affected; as, —

*mē decet haec dīcere*, *it becomes me to say this*.

d) In poetry many Passive Verbs, in imitation of Greek usage, are employed as Middles (§ 256, 1; 2), and take the Accusative as Object; as, —

*galeam induitur*, *he puts on his helmet* ;  
*cīnctus tempora hederā*, *having bound his temples with ivy* ;  
*nōdō sinūs collēota*, *having gathered her dress in a knot*.

## Accusative of the Result Produced.

176. 1. The ordinary type of this Accusative is seen in such expressions as —

**librum scribō, I write a book;**  
**domum aedificō, I build a house.**

2. Many Verbs usually Intransitive take a *Neuter Pronoun*, or *Adjective*, as an Accusative of Result. Thus:—

a) A Neuter Pronoun; as, —

**haec gemēbat, he made these moans;**  
**illud glōrior, I make this boast;**  
**eadem peccat, he makes the same mistakes.**

b) A Neuter Adjective,—particularly *Adjectives of number or amount*, — **multum, multa, pauca, etc.**; also **nihil**; as, —

**multa dubitō, I have many doubts;**  
**pauca studet, he has few interests;**  
**multum valet, he has great strength;**  
**nihil prōgreditur, he makes no progress.**

NOTE. — In poetry other Adjectives are freely used in this construction; as, —

**minitantem vāna, making vain threats;**  
**acerba tuēns, giving a fierce look;**  
**dulce loquentem, sweetly talking.**

3. The adverbial use of several Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives grows out of this Accusative; as, —

**multum sunt in vēnātiōne, they are much engaged in hunting.**

a. So also **plūrimū, very greatly; plērumque, generally; aliquid, somewhat; quid, why? nihil, not at all; etc.**

4. Sometimes an Intransitive Verb takes an Accusative of Result which is of kindred etymology with the Verb. This is called a COGNATE ACCUSATIVE, and is usually modified by an Adjective; as, —

**sempiternam servitūtem serviat, let him serve an everlasting slavery;**  
**vītam dūram vīxi, I have lived a hard life.**

a. Sometimes the Cognate Accusative is not of kindred etymology, but merely of kindred meaning; as, —

**stadium currit, he runs a race;**  
**Olympia vincit, he wins an Olympic victory.**

5. The Accusative of Result occurs also after Verbs of *tasting* and *smelling*; as,—

*piscis mare sapit, the fish tastes of the sea;*

*ōratiōnēs antiquitātem redolent, the speeches smack of the past.*

### Two Accusatives — Direct Object and Predicate Accusative.

177. 1. Many Verbs of *Making*, *Choosing*, *Calling*, *Showing*, and the like, take two Accusatives, one of the Person or Thing Affected, the other a Predicate Accusative; as,—

*mē hērēdem fēcit, he made me heir.*

Here *mē* is Direct Object, *hērēdem* Predicate Accusative.

So also —

*eum jūdicem cēpēre, they took him as judge;*

*urbem Rōmam vocāvit, he called the city Rome;*

*sē virum praestitit, he showed himself a man.*

2. The Predicate Accusative may be an Adjective as well as a Noun; as,—

*hominēs caecōs reddit cupiditās, covetousness renders men blind;*  
*Apollō Sōcratēm sapientissimum jūdicāvit, Apollo adjudged Socrates the wisest man.*

a. Some Verbs, as *reddō*, usually admit only an Adjective as the Predicate Accusative.

3. In the Passive the Direct Object becomes the Subject, and the Predicate Accusative becomes Predicate Nominative (§ 168. 2. b); as,—

*urbs Rōma vocāta est, the city was called Rome.*

a. Not all Verbs admit the Passive construction; *reddō* and *efficiō*, for example, never take it.

### Two Accusatives — Person and Thing.

178. 1. Some Verbs take two Accusatives, one of the Person Affected, the other of the Result Produced. Thus:—

a) Verbs of *requesting* and *demanding*, as,—

*ōtium dīvōs rogat, he asks the gods for rest;*

*mē duās ūratiōnēs postulās, you demand two speeches of me.*

So also **ōrō**, **poscō**, **reposcō**, **exposcō**, **flāgitō**, though some of these prefer the Ablative with **ab** to the Accusative of the Person ; as,—

**opem a tē poscō**, *I demand aid of you.*

- b)* Verbs of *teaching* (**doceō** and its compounds) ; as,—  
**tē litterās doceō**, *I teach you your letters.*
- c)* Verbs of *inquiring* ; as,—  
**tē haec rogō**, *I ask you this ;*  
**tē sententiam rogō**, *I ask you your opinion.*
- d)* Several Special Verbs ; *viz.* **moneō**, **admoneō**, **commoneō**, **cōgō**, **accūsō**, **arguō**, and a few others. These admit only a Neuter Pronoun or Adjective as Accusative of the Thing ; as,—  
**tē haec moneō**, *I give you this advice ;*  
**mē id accūsās**, *you bring this accusation against me ;*  
**id cōgit nōs nātūra**, *nature compels us (to) this.*
- e)* One Verb of *concealing*, **cēlō** ; as,—  
**nōn tē cēlāvī sermōnem**, *I have not concealed the conversation from you.*

2. In the Passive construction the Accusative of the Person becomes the Subject, and the Accusative of the Thing is retained ; as,—

**omnēs artēs ēdoctus est**, *he was taught all accomplishments ;*  
**rogātus sum sententiam**, *I was asked my opinion ;*  
**aliquid admonēmur**, *we are given some admonition.*

*a.* Only a few Verbs admit the Passive construction.

#### Two Accusatives with Compounds.

179. 1. Transitive compounds of **trāns** may take two Accusatives, one dependent upon the Verb, the other upon the Preposition ; as,—

**militēs flūmen trādūcit**, *he leads his soldiers across the river.*

2. With other compounds this construction is rare.

3. In the Passive the Accusative dependent upon the preposition is retained ; as,—

**militēs flūmen trādūcēbantur**, *the soldiers were led across the river.*

**Synecdochical (or Greek) Accusative.**

180. 1. The Synecdochical (or Greek) Accusative denotes the *part* to which an action or quality refers ; as, —

*tremit artūs*, literally, *he trembles as to his limbs*, i.e. his limbs tremble ;  
*nūda genū*, lit. *bare as to the knee*, i.e. with knee bare ;  
*manūs revinctus*, lit. *tied as to the hands*, i.e. with hands tied.

2. Note that this construction —

- a) Is borrowed from the Greek.
- b) Is chiefly confined to poetry.
- c) Usually refers to a part of the body.
- d) Is used with Adjectives as well as Verbs.

**Accusative of Time and Space.**

181. 1. *Duration of Time* and *Extent of Space* are denoted by the Accusative ; as, —

*quadrāgintā annōs vixit*, *he lived forty years* ;  
*hīc locus passūs sescentōs aberat*, *this place was six hundred paces away*.

*arborēs quīnquāgintā pedēs altae*, *trees fifty feet high*.  
*ab hīc septem annōs*, *seven years ago*.

2. Emphasis is sometimes added by using the Preposition *per* ; as,  
*per biennium labōrāvī*, *I toiled throughout two years*.

**Accusative of Limit of Motion.**

182. 1. The Accusative of Limit of Motion is used —

a) With names of *Towns*, *Small Islands*, and *Peninsulas* ; as, —

*Rōnam vēnī*, *I came to Rome* ;  
*Athēnās proficisci*tur, *he sets out for Athens* ;  
*Dēlum pervēnī*, *I arrived at Delos*.

b) With *domum*, *domōs*, *rūs* ; as, —

*domum revertitur*, *he returns home* ;  
*rūs Ibō*, *I shall go to the country*.

NOTE. — When *domus* means *house* (i.e. building), it takes a preposition ; as, —

*in domum veterem remigrāre*, *to move back to an old house*.

2. Other designations of place than those above mentioned require a Preposition to denote Limit of Motion ; as,—

*ad Italiam vēnit, he came to Italy.*

a. The Preposition is also customary with the Accusatives **urbem** or **oppidum** when they stand in apposition with the name of a town ; as,—

**Cirtam in urbem, to the city Cirta ;**

**Genavam ad oppidum, to the town Geneva.**

b. The name of a town denoting limit of motion may be combined with the name of a country or other word dependent upon a preposition ; as,—

**Thūriōs in Italiam pervectus, carried to Thurii in Italy ;**

**cum Aēn ad exercitum vēnisset, when he had come to the army at Ace.**

3. To denote *toward*, *to the vicinity of*, *in the vicinity of*, **ad** is used ; as,—

**ad Tarentum vēni, I came to the vicinity of Tarentum ;**

**ad Cannās pugna facta est, a battle was fought near Cannae.**

4. In poetry the Accusative of any noun denoting a place may be used without a preposition to express the limit of motion ; as,—

*Italianum vēnit, he came to Italy.*

5. The *goal* notion seems to represent the original function of the Accusative Case. Traces of this primitive force are recognizable in the phrase **Infītiās ire, to deny** (lit. *to go to a denial*), and a few other similar expressions.

#### Accusative in Exclamations.

183. The Accusative, generally modified by an Adjective, is used in Exclamations ; as,—

**mē miserum, ah, wretched me !**

**Ō fallācem spēm, oh, deceptive hope !**

#### Accusative as Subject of the Infinitive.

184. The Subject of the Infinitive is put in the Accusative ; as,—

**videō hominem abire, I see that the man is going away.**

**Other Uses of the Accusative.**

185. Here belong—

1. Some Accusatives which were originally Appositives; *viz.*—

*id genus, of that kind; as, hominēs id genus, men of that kind (originally hominēs, id genus hominum, men, that kind of men);*

*virile secus, muliebre secus, of the male sex, of the female sex; meam vicem, tuam vicem, etc., for my part, etc.; bonam partem, magnam partem, in large part; maximam partem, for the most part.*

2. Some phrases of doubtful origin; as,—

*id temporis, at that time; quod si, but if;*

*id aetatis, at that time; cetera, in other respects.*

**THE DATIVE.**

186. The Dative case in general expresses relations which are designated in English by the prepositions *to* and *for*.

**Dative of Indirect Object.**

187. The commonest use of the Dative is to denote the person *to whom* something is *given, said, or done*. Thus:—

I. With transitive verbs in connection with the Accusative; as,—

*hanc pecuniam mihi dat, he gives me this money;*  
*haec nobis dixit, he said this to us.*

a. Some verbs which take this construction (particularly *dōnō* and *circumdō*) admit also the Accusative of the person along with the Ablative of the thing. Thus:—

Either *Themistocli munera dōnāvit, he presented gifts to Themistocles, or*

*Themistoclem munieribus dōnāvit, he presented Themistocles with gifts;*

*urbī mūrōs circumdat, he builds walls around the city, or*  
*urbem mūris circumdat, he surrounds the city with walls.*

## II. With many intransitive verbs; as, —

**nūllI labōrI cōdit**, *he yields to no labor.*

a. Here belong many verbs signifying *favor*,<sup>1</sup> *help*, *injure*, *please*, *displease*, *trust*, *distrust*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *indulge*, *spare*, *pardon*, *envy*, *threaten*, *be angry*, *believe*, *persuade*, and the like; as, —

**Caesar populāribus favet**, *Caesar favors (i.e. is favorable to) the popular party;*

**amicis cōfidō**, *I trust (to) my friends;*

**Orgetorix Helvētiis persuāsit**, *Orgetorix persuaded (made it acceptable to) the Helvetians;*

**bonis nocet qui maliis parcit**, *he injures (does harm to) the good, who spares the bad.*

NOTE. — It is to be borne in mind that these verbs do not take the Dative by virtue of their apparent English equivalence, but simply because they are *intransitive*, and adapted to an indirect object. Some verbs of the same apparent English equivalence are *transitive* and govern the Accusative; as, *juvō*, *laedō*, *dēlectō*. Thus: **audentēs deus juvat**, *God helps the bold*; **nēminem laesit**, *he injured no one.*

b. Verbs of this class are used in the passive only impersonally; as, —

**tibi parcitur**, *you are spared;*

**mihi persuādētur**, *I am being persuaded;*

**eī invidētur**, *he is envied.*

c. Some of the foregoing verbs admit also a Direct Object in connection with the Dative; as, —

**mihi mortem minitātur**, *he threatens me with death (threatens death to me).*

III. With many verbs compounded with the prepositions: *ad*, *ante*, *circum*, *com-*,<sup>2</sup> *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, *super*.

These verbs fall into two main classes, —

i. Many simple verbs which cannot take a Dative of the indirect object become capable of doing so when compounded with a preposition; as, —

**afflictiſ succurrit**, *he helps the afflicted;*

**exercituſ praeſuit**, *he was in command of the army;*

**intersum cōſiliſ**, *I share in the deliberations.*

<sup>1</sup> Many such verbs were originally intransitive in English also, and once governed the Dative. <sup>2</sup> This was the original form of the preposition *cum*.

2. Many transitive verbs which take only a direct object become capable, when compounded, of taking a Dative also as indirect object; as, —

*pecūniae pudōrem antepōnit, he puts honor before money;*

*inīcere spēm amīcīs, to inspire hope in one's friends;*

*Labiēnum exercitū praeſēcit, he put Labienus in charge of the army.*

#### Dative of Reference.

188. 1. The Dative of Reference denotes the person *to whom a statement refers, of whom it is true, or to whom it is of interest*; as, —

*mihi ante oculōs versāris, you hover before my eyes* (lit. *hover before the eyes to me*);

*illi sevēritās amōrem nōn dēminuit, in his case severity did not diminish love* (lit. *to him severity did not diminish*);

*interclūdere hostibūs commeātūm, to cut off the supplies of the enemy.*

a. Note the phrase *alīcui interdīcere aquā et ignī, to interdict one from fire and water.*

NOTE.—The Dative of Reference, unlike the Dative of Indirect Object, does not modify the verb, but rather the sentence as a whole. It is often used where, according to the English idiom, we should expect a Genitive; so in the first and third of the above examples.

2. Special varieties of the Dative of Reference are —

a) **Dative of the Local Standpoint.** This is regularly a participle; as, —

*oppidum prīmū Thessalīae venientibūs ab Ēpīrō, the first town of Thessaly as you come from Epirus* (lit. *to those coming from Epirus*).

b) **Ethical Dative.** This name is given to those Dative constructions of the personal pronouns in which the connection of the Dative with the rest of the sentence is of the very slightest sort; as, —

*tū mihi iatīus audāciām dēfendis? tell me, do you defend that man's audacity?*

*quid mihi Celsus agit? what is my Celsus doing?*

*quid sibi vult? what does he mean? (lit. wish for himself?)*

## c) Dative of Person Judging ; as,—

erit ille mihi semper deus, *he will always be a god to me* (i.e. in my opinion) ;

quae ista servitus tam clārō homini, *how can that be slavery to so illustrious a man* (i.e. to his mind) !

d) Dative of Separation. Some verbs of *taking away*, especially compounds of *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, *ad*, govern a Dative of the person, less often of the thing ; as,—

honōrem dētrāxērunt homini, *they took away the honor from the man* ;

Caesar rēgī tetrarchiam ēripuit, *Caesar took the tetrarchy away from the king* ;

silicī scintillam exōudit, *he struck a spark from the flint*.

## Dative of Agency.

189. The Dative is used to denote *agency*—

## 1. Regularly with the Gerundive ; as, —

haec nōbīs agenda sunt, *these things must be done by us* ;  
mihi eundum est, *I must go* (lit. *it must be gone by me*).

a. To avoid ambiguity, & with the Ablative is sometimes used with the Gerundive ; as, —

hostibus & nōbīs parcendum est, *the enemy must be spared by us*.

2. Much less frequently with the compound tenses of the passive voice and the perfect passive participle ; as, —

disputatiō quae mihi nūper habita est, *the discussion which was recently conducted by me*.

3. Rarely with the uncompounded tenses of the passive ; as, —  
honesta bonīs virīs quaeruntur, *noble ends are sought by good men*.

## Dative of Possession.

190. The Dative of Possession occurs with the verb *esse* in such expressions as : —

mihi est liber, *I have a book* ;

mihi nōmen est Mārcus, *I have the name Marcus*.

1. But with *nōmen est* the name is more commonly attracted into the Dative ; as, *mihi Mārcō nōmen est*.

**Dative of Purpose or Tendency.**

191. The Dative of Purpose or Tendency designates *the end toward which an action is directed or the direction in which it tends.* It is used —

1. Unaccompanied by another Dative ; as, —

*castris locum diligere, to choose a place for a camp ;*  
*legionēs praesidiō relinquere, to leave the legions as a guard (lit.*  
*for a guard) ;*  
*receptū canere, to sound the signal for a retreat.*

2. Much more frequently in connection with another Dative of the person : —

a) Especially with some form of *esse* ; as, —

*fortūnae tuae mihi cūrāe sunt, your fortunes are a care to*  
*me (lit. for a care) ;*  
*nōbīs sunt odiō, they are an object of hatred to us ;*  
*cui bonō? to whom is it of advantage?*

b) With other verbs ; as, —

*hōs tibi mūnerī misit, he has sent these to you for a*  
*present ;*  
*Pausanīas Attīcīs vēnit auxiliō, Pausanias came to the*  
*aid of the Athenians (lit. to the Athenians for aid).*

3. In connection with the Gerundive ; as, —

*decemvīri lēgibus scribundīs, decemvirs for codifying the laws ;*  
*mē gerendō bellō ducem creāvēre, me they have made leader for*  
*carrying on the war.*

NOTE. — This construction with the gerundive is not common till Livy.

**Dative with Adjectives.**

192. The use of the Dative with Adjectives corresponds very closely to its use with verbs. Thus : —

1. Corresponding to the Dative of Indirect Object it occurs with adjectives signifying : *friendly, unfriendly, similar, dissimilar, equal, near, related to, etc.* ; as, —

*mihi inimīcōs, hostile to me ;*  
*sunt proximi Germānīs, they are next to the Germans ;*  
*noxiae poena pār estō, let the penalty be equal to the damage.*

a. For *propior* and *proximus* with the Accusative, see § 141, 3.

2. Corresponding to the Dative of Purpose, the Dative occurs with adjectives signifying: *suitable, adapted, fit*; as,—

*castris idōneus locus, a place fit for a camp;*  
*apta diēs sacrificiō, a day suitable for a sacrifice.*

NOTE.—Adjectives of this last class often take the Accusative with *ad*.

#### Dative of Direction.

193. In the poets the Dative is occasionally used to denote the *direction of motion*; as,—

*it clāmor caelō, the shout goes heavenward;*  
*cinerēs rivō fluenti jace, cast the ashes toward the flowing stream.*

1. By an extension of this construction the poets sometimes use the Dative to denote the *limit of motion*; as,—

*dum Latiō deōs Inferret, till he should bring his gods to Latium.*

#### THE GENITIVE.

194. The Genitive is used with Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs.

##### GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

195. With Nouns the Genitive is *the case which defines the meaning of the limited noun more closely*. This relation is generally indicated in English by the preposition *of*. There are the following varieties of the Genitive with Nouns:—

Genitive of Origin,  
 Genitive of Material,  
 Genitive of Possession,  
 Subjective Genitive,

Objective Genitive,  
 Genitive of the Whole,  
 Appositional Genitive,  
 Genitive of Quality.

196. Genitive of Origin; as,—

*Mārci filius, the son of Marcus.*

197. Genitive of Material; as,—

*talētūm aurī, a talent of gold;*  
*acervus frumentī, a pile of grain.*

**198. Genitive of Possession or Ownership** ; as, —  
*domus Ciceronis, Cicero's house.*

i. Here belongs the Genitive with *causā* and *gratiā*. The Genitive always precedes ; as, —

*hominum causā, for the sake of men ;*  
*meōrum amicōrum gratiā, for the sake of my friends.*

2. *Instar* (lit. *image*) also takes the Possessive Genitive ; as, —  
*equus instar montis, a horse as large as a mountain.*

3. The Possessive Genitive is often used predicatively, especially with *esse* and *fieri* ; as, —

*domus est rēgis, the house is the king's ;*  
*stulti est in errōre manēre, it is (the part) of a fool to remain in error ;*  
*dē bellō jūdīcium imperātōris est, nōn mīlitum, the decision concerning war belongs to the general, not to the soldiers.*

**199. Subjective Genitive.** This denotes *the person who makes or produces something or who has a feeling* ; as, —

*dicta Platōnis, the utterances of Plato ;*  
*timōrēs liberōrum, the fears of the children.*

**200. Objective Genitive.** This denotes *the object of an action or feeling* ; as, —

*metus deōrum, the fear of the gods ;*  
*amor libertatis, love of liberty ;*  
*cōsuētūdō bonōrum hominū, intercourse with good men.*

i. This relation is often expressed by means of prepositions ; as, —  
*amor ergā parentēs, love toward one's parents.*

**201. Genitive of the Whole.** This designates the *whole* of which a part is taken. It is used —

i. With Nouns, Pronouns, Comparatives, Superlatives, and Ordinal Numerals ; as, —

*magna pars hominū, a great part of mankind ;*  
*duo mīlia peditū, two thousand foot-soldiers ;*  
*quis mortālium, who of mortals ?*  
*major frātrum, the elder of the brothers ;*  
*gēns maxima Germānōrum, the largest tribe of the Germans ;*  
*prīmus omnium, the first of all.*

a. Yet instead of the Genitive of the Whole we often find **ex** or **dē** with the Ablative, regularly so with Cardinal numbers and **quidam**; as,—  
*fidēliſſim⁹ dē ſerviſ, the moſt truſty of the ſlaves;*  
*quidam ex amicis, certain of his friends;*  
*unus ex militibus, one of the ſoldiers.*

b. In English we often use *of* where there is no relation of whole to part. In such cases the Latin is more exact, and does not use the Genitive; as,—  
*quot vōſ eſtis, how many of you are there?*  
*trecenti conſūrāvimus, three hundred of us have conſpired (i.e. we, three hundred in number).*

2. The Genitive of the Whole is used also with the Nominative or Accusative Singular Neuter of Pronouns, or of Adjectives used substantively; also with the Adverbs **parum**, **satis**, and **partim** when used substantively; as,—

*quid cōſili, what purpoſe?*  
*tantum cib⁹, ſo much food;*  
*plūs auctōritātis, more authority;*  
*minus labōris, less labor;*  
*satis pecūniae, enough money;*  
*parum induſtriae, too little induſtry.*

a. An Adjective of the second declension used substantively may be employed as a Genitive of the Whole; as, **nihil boni**, *nothing good*.  
b. But Adjectives of the third declension agree directly with the noun they limit; as, **nihil dulcius**, *nothing ſweeter*.

3. Occasionally we find the Genitive of the Whole dependent upon Adverbs of place; as,—

*ubi terrārum? ubi gentium? where in the world?*

a. By an extension of this usage the Genitive sometimes occurs in dependence upon **pridiē** and **poſtridiē**, but only in the phrases **pridiē ejus diēi**, *on the day before that*; **poſtridiē ejus diēi**, *on the day after that*.

**202. Appositional Genitive.** The Genitive sometimes has the force of an appositive; as,—

*nōmen rēgis, the name of king;*  
*poena mortis, the penalty of death;*  
*ars ſcribendi, the art of writing.*

**203. Genitive of Quality:** The Genitive modified by an Adjective is used to denote quality. This construction presents several varieties. Thus it is used—

1. To denote some internal or permanent characteristic of a person or thing ; as, —

*vir magnae virtutis, a man of great virtue ;  
ratiōnēs ejus modi, considerations of that sort.*

a. Only a limited number of Adjectives occur in this construction, chiefly *magnus, maximus, summus, tantus*, along with *ejus*.

2. To denote measure (*breadth, length, etc.*) ; as, —

*fossa quīndecim pedum, a trench fifteen feet wide (or deep) ;  
exsiliūm decem annōrum, an exile of ten years.*

3. By omission of *pretī* (*price*), or some kindred word, *tantī*, *quantī*, *parvī*, *magnī*, *minōris*, *minimi*, *plūrīmī*, *maximī* are used predicatively to denote *indefinite value* ; as, —

*nūlla studia tantī sunt, no studies are of so much value ;  
magnī opera ejus exīstīmāta est, his assistance was highly esteemed.*

a. *Plūrīs* (not strictly an adjective) follows the same analogy.

4. By an extension of the notion of *value*, *quantī*, *tantī*, *plūrīs*, and *minōris* are also used with verbs of *buying* and *selling*, to denote *indefinite price* ; as, —

*quantī aedēs ēmīstī, at how high a price did you purchase the house ?*

5. Any of the above varieties of the Genitive of Quality may be used predicatively ; as, —

*tantae mōlis erat Rōmānam condere gentem, of so great difficulty  
was it to found the Roman race.*

#### GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

**204.** The Genitive is used with many Adjectives, *to limit the extent of their application*. Thus : —

1. With Adjectives signifying *desire, knowledge, familiarity, memory, participation, power, fulness*, and their opposites ; as, —

*studiōsus discendī, desirous of learning ;  
peritus bellī, skilled in war ;  
insuētus labōris, unused to toil ;  
immemor mandatī tui, unmindful of your commission ;  
plēna periculōrum est vīta, life is full of dangers.*

a. Some participles used adjectively also take the Genitive ; as, —

*diligēns vēritatīs, fond of truth ;  
amāns patriae, devoted to one's country.*

2. Sometimes with **proprius** and **communis** ; as, —  
*virū propria est fortitudō, bravery is characteristic of a man.*  
*memoria est communis omnium artium, memory is common to all professions.*

a. **proprius** and **communis** are also construed with the Dative.

3. With **similis** the Genitive is the commoner construction in Cicero, when the reference is to living objects ; as, —

*filius patris simillimus est, the son is exactly like his father.*  
*meī similis, like me ; vestrī similis, like you.*

When the reference is to things, both Genitive and Dative occur ; as, —  
*mors somnō (or somni) similis est, death is like sleep.*

4. In the poets and later prose writers the use of the Genitive with Adjectives is extended far beyond earlier limits ; as, *atrōx animi, fierce of temper* ; *incertus cōnsili, undecided in purpose*.

#### GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

205. The Genitive is used with the following classes of Verbs : —

*Memini, Reminiscor, Obliviscor.*

206. 1. WHEN REFERRING TO PERSONS —

a. **memini** always takes the Genitive of personal or reflexive pronouns ; as, —  
*meī memineris, remember me !*  
*nostrī meminit, he remembers us.*

With other words denoting persons **memini** takes the Accusative, rarely the Genitive ; as, —

*Sullam memini, I recall Sulla.*  
*vivōrum memini, I remember the living.*

b. **obliviscor** regularly takes the Genitive ; as, —  
*Epicūrī nōn licet oblivious, we mustn't forget Epicurus.*

2. WHEN REFERRING TO THINGS, **memini**, **reminiscor**, **obliviscor** take sometimes the Genitive, sometimes the Accusative, without difference of meaning ; as, —

*animus praeteritōrum meminit, the mind remembers the past ;*  
*meministīne nōmina, do you remember the names ?*  
*reminiscere veteris incommodi, remember the former disaster ;*  
*reminiscēns acerbitatēm, remembering the severity.*

a. But neuter pronouns, and adjectives used substantively, regularly stand in the Accusative; as,—

*haec memini, I remember this;*  
*multa reminiscor, I remember many things.*

3. The phrase *mihi* (*tibi, etc.*) in *mentem venit*, following the analogy of *memini*, takes the Genitive; as,—

*civium mihi in mentem venit, I remember the citizens.*

*Admoneō, Commoneō, Commonefaciō.*

207. These verbs, in addition to an Accusative of the person, occasionally take a Genitive of the thing; as,—

*tē admoneō amicitiae nostrae, I remind you of our friendship.*

a. But more frequently (in Cicero almost invariably) these verbs take *dē* with the Ablative; as,—

*dē pecūniā mē admonēs, you remind me of the money.*

b. A neuter pronoun or adjective used substantively regularly stands in the Accusative (178. 1. d); as,—

*tē hōc admoneō, I give you this warning.*

**Verbs of Judicial Action.**

208. 1. Verbs of *Accusing, Convicting, Acquitting* take the Genitive of the *charge*; as,—

*mē fūrtī accūsat, he accuses me of theft;*

*Verrem avāritiae coarguit, he convicts Verres of avarice;*  
*impietatis absolūtus est, he was acquitted of blasphemy.*

2. Verbs of *Condemning* take —

a. The Genitive of the *charge*; as,—

*pecūniae pūblicae damnātus, condemned (on the charge) of*  
*embazzlement (lit. public money);*

*capitis damnātus, condemned on a capital charge (lit. on a*  
*charge involving his head).*

b. The Ablative of the *penalty*; as,—

*capite damnātus est, he was condemned to death;*

*mīle nummīs damnātus est, he was condemned (to pay)*  
*a thousand sesterces (lit. by a thousand sesterces, Abl. of*  
*Means).*

## 3. Note the phrases : —

**vōtl** *damnātus, vōtl reus, having attained one's prayer* (lit. condemned on the score of one's vow) ;  
**dē vī,** (accused, convicted, etc.) of assault ;  
**inter sicāriōs,** (accused, convicted, etc.) of murder.

## Genitive with Impersonal Verbs.

209. 1. The Impersonals **pudet**, **paenitet**, **miseret**, **taedet**, **piget** take the Accusative of *the person affected*, along with the Genitive of *the person or thing toward whom the feeling is directed* ; as, —

**pudet mē tul**, *I am ashamed of you* (lit. it shames me of you) ;  
**paenitet mē hūjus facti**, *I repent of this act* ;  
**eum taedet vītae**, *he is weary of life* ;  
**pauperum tē miseret**, *you pity the poor*.

a. Instead of the Genitive of the thing we often find an Infinitive or Neuter Pronoun used as subject of the verb. Thus : —

**mē paenitet hōc fēcisse**, *I repent of having done this* ;  
**mē hōc pudet**, *I am ashamed of this*.

2. **Misereor** and **miserēscō** also govern the Genitive ; as, —

**miserēminī sociōrum**, *pity the allies*.

## Interest, Rēfert.

210. With **interest**, *it concerns*, three points enter into consideration ; *viz.* —

- the person concerned* ;
- the thing about which he is concerned* ;
- the extent of his concern*.

211. 1. The *person concerned* is regularly denoted by the Genitive ; as, —

**patris interest**, *it concerns the father*.

a. But instead of the Genitive of the personal pronouns, **meī**, **tuī**, etc., the Latin uses the Ablative Singular Feminine of the Possessive, *viz.* : **meā**, **tuā**, etc. ; as, —

**meā interest**, *it concerns me*.

2. The *thing about which a person is concerned* is denoted —

- a) by a Neuter Pronoun as subject ; as, —  
*hōc rēf pūblicae interest, this concerns the state.*
- b) by an Infinitive ; as, —  
*omnium interest valēre, it concerns all to keep well.*
- c) by an Indirect Question ; as, —  
*meā interest quandō veniās, I am concerned as to when you are coming.*

3. The *degree of concern* is denoted —

- a) by the Genitive (of Quality) : **magnI, parvI, etc.** ; as, —  
*meā magnI interest, it concerns me greatly.*
- b) by the Adverbs, **magnopere, magis, maximē, etc.** ; as, —  
*civium minimē interest, it concerns the citizens very little.*
- c) by the Neuters, **multum, plūs, minus, etc.** ; as, —  
*multum vestrā interest, it concerns you much.*

4. **Rēfert** follows *interest* in its construction, except that it rarely takes the Genitive of the person. Thus : —

*meā rēfert, it concerns me ;*

but rarely *illius rēfert, it concerns him.*

#### Genitive with Other Verbs.

212. 1. Verbs of *Plenty* and *Want* sometimes govern the Genitive ; as, —

*pecūniae indigēs, you need money.*

- a. These verbs more commonly take the Ablative (§ 214, 1) ; *indigēs* is the only verb which has a preference for the Genitive.
2. **Potior**, though usually followed by the Ablative, sometimes takes the Genitive, almost always so in Sallust ; and regularly in the phrase : *potiri rērum, to get control of affairs.*
3. In poetry some verbs take the Genitive in imitation of the Greek ; as, —  
*dēsine querellārum, cease your complaints ;*  
*operum solūtū, freed from their tasks.*

## THE ABLATIVE.

213. The Latin Ablative unites in itself three cases which were originally distinct both in form and in meaning; *viz.* —

The Ablative or **from**-case.

The Instrumental or **with**-case.

The Locative or **where**-case.

The uses of the Latin Ablative accordingly fall into Genuine Ablative uses, Instrumental uses, and Locative uses.

## GENUINE ABLATIVE USES.

**Ablative of Separation.**

214. The Ablative of Separation is construed sometimes with, sometimes without, a preposition.

i. The following words regularly take the Ablative without a preposition: —

- a) The Verbs of *freeing*: *līberō*, *solvō*, *levō*;
- b) The Verbs of *depriving*: *prīvō*, *spoliō*, *exuō*, *fraudō*, *nūdō*;
- c) The Verbs of *lacking*: *egeō*, *careō*, *vacō*;
- d) The corresponding Adjectives, *līber*, *inānis*, *vacuus*, *nūdus*, and some others of similar meaning.

Thus: —

*cūrīs līberātūs, freed from cares;*

*Caesar hostēs armīs exuit, Caesar stripped the enemy of their arms;*

*caret sēnsū commūnī, he lacks common sense;*

*auxiliō eget, he needs help;*

*bonōrum vīta vacua est metū, the life of the good is free from fear.*

NOTE 1. — Yet Adjectives and *līberō* may take the preposition *ab*, — regularly so with the Ablative of persons; as, —

*urbem & tyrannō liberārunt, they freed the city from the tyrant.*

NOTE 2. — *Indigeō* usually takes the Genitive. See § 212, i, a.

2. Of Verbs signifying *to keep from, to remove, to withdraw*, some take the preposition, others omit it. The same Verb often admits both constructions. Examples:—

*abstinēre cibō, to abstain from food;*

*hostēs finibus prohibuērunt, they kept the enemy from their borders;*  
*praedōnēs ab insulā prohibuit, he kept the pirates from the island.*

3. Other Verbs of separation usually take the Ablative with a Preposition, particularly compounds of *dis-* and *se-*; as,—

*dissentiō a tē, I dissent from you;*

*sēcernantur a nōbīs, let them be separated from us.*

4. The Preposition is freely omitted in poetry.

#### **Ablative of Source.**

215. The Ablative of Source is used with the participles *nātus* and *ortus* (in poetry also with *ēditus*, *satus*, and some others), to designate *parentage* or *station*; as,—

*Jove nātus, son of Jupiter;*

*summō locō nātus, high-born* (lit. *born from a very high place*);  
*nōbili genere ortus, born of a noble family.*

1. Pronouns regularly (nouns rarely) take *ex*; as,

*ex mē nātus, sprung from me.*

2. To denote remoter descent, *ortus ab*, or *oriundus* (with or without *ab*), is used; as,—

*ab Ulike oriundus, descended from Ulysses.*

#### **Ablative of Agent.**

216. The Ablative accompanied by *a* (*ab*) is used with passive verbs to denote the *personal agent*; as,—

*a Caesare accusātus est, he was arraigned by Caesar.*

1. Collective nouns referring to persons, and abstract nouns when personified, may be construed as the personal agent. Thus:—

*hostēs a fortinā dēserēbantur, the enemy were deserted by Fortune;*  
*a multitūdine hostium mōntēs tenēbantur, the mountains were held*  
*by a multitude of the enemy.*

2. Names of animals sometimes admit the same construction. Thus:—

*a canibus laniātus est, he was torn to pieces by dogs.*

## Ablative of Comparison.

217. 1. The Ablative is often used with Comparatives in the sense of *than*; as,—

*melle dulcior, sweeter than honey;*

*patria mihi vītā cārior est, my country is dearer to me than life.*

2. This construction, as a rule, occurs only as a substitute for **quam** (*than*) with the Nominative or Accusative. In other cases **quam** must be used; as,—

*tui studiōsior sum quam illius, I am fonder of you than of him.*

*Studiōsior illō would have meant, I am fonder of you than he is.*

3. **Plūs, minus, amplius, longius** are often employed as the equivalents of **plūs quam, minus quam, etc.** Thus:—

*amplius vīginti urbēs incenduntur, more than twenty cities are fired;*

*minus quīnque mīlia prōcessit, he advanced less than five miles.*

4. Note the use of **opiniōne** with Comparatives; as,—

*opiniōne celerius venit, he comes more quickly than expected (lit. than opinion).*

## INSTRUMENTAL USES OF THE ABLATIVE.

## Ablative of Means.

218. The Ablative is used to denote *means* or *instrument*; as,—

*Alexander sagittā vulnerātus est, Alexander was wounded by an arrow.*

There are the following special varieties of this Ablative:—

1. **Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor**, and their compounds take the Ablative; as,—

*dīvītīs ūtitur, he uses his wealth* (lit. *he benefits himself by his wealth*);

*vītā fruītur, he enjoys life* (lit. *he enjoys himself by life*);

*mūnēre fungor, I perform my duty* (lit. *I busy myself with duty*);

*carne vescuntur, they eat flesh* (lit. *feed themselves by means of*);

*urbe potitus est, he got possession of the city* (lit. *made himself powerful by the city*).

a. **Potior** sometimes governs the Genitive. See § 212, 2.

2. With **opus est** (rarely **ūsus est**), *there is need* ; as, —  
**duce nōbīs opus est**, *we need a leader*.

a. A Neuter Pronoun or Adjective often stands as subject with **opus** as predicate. Thus : —

**hōc mihi opus est**, *this is necessary for me*.

b. An ordinary substantive rarely stands as subject. Thus **dux nōbīs opus est** is a rare form of expression.

c. Note the occasional use of a perfect passive participle with **opus est** ; as, —

**opus est properatō**, *there is need of haste*.

3. With **nītor**, **innīxus**, and **frētus** ; as, —

**nītitur hastā**, *he rests on a spear* (lit. *supports himself by a spear*) ;  
**frētus virtūte**, *relying on virtue* (lit. *supported by virtue*).

4. With **continērī**, **cōsistere**, **cōstāre**, *consist of* ; as, —  
**nervīs et ossībus continentur**, *they consist of sinews and bones* (lit.  
*they are held together by sinews and bones*) ;  
**mortālī cōsistit corpore mundus**, *the world consists of mortal sub-  
stance* (lit. *holds together by means of, etc.*).

6. In expressions of the following type : —

**quid hōc homine faciās**, *what can you do with this man?*

**quid meā Tulliā flet**, *what will become of my dear Tullia?* (lit. *what  
will be done with my dear Tullia?*)

7. In the following special phrases at variance with the ordinary English idiom : —

**proeliō contendere**, *vincere*, *to contend, conquer in battle* ;  
**proeliō lacecessere**, *to provoke to battle* ;  
**currū vehī**, *to ride in a chariot* ;  
**pedibus ire**, *to go on foot* ;  
**castrīs sē tenēre**, *to keep in camp*.

8. With Verbs of *filling* and Adjectives of *plenty* ; as, —

**fossās virgultīs complērunt**, *they filled the trenches with brush*.

a. But **plēnus** more commonly takes the Genitive. See § 204, 1.

9. Under 'Means' belongs also the Ablative of the Way by which ; as, —

**vīnum Tiberī dēvectum**, *wine brought down (by) the Tiber*.

10. The means may be a person as well as a thing. Thus:—  
**millibus & lacū Lemannō ad montem Jūram mūrum perducit, with**  
*(i.e. by means of) his troops he runs a wall from Lake Geneva to Mt. Jura.*

#### Ablative of Cause.

219. The Ablative is used to denote *cause*; as, —  
**multa glōriae cupiditāte fēcit, he did many things on account of his**  
*love of glory.*

1. So especially with verbs denoting mental states; as, *dēlector*, *gaudeō*, *laetor*, *glōrior*, *fīdō*, *cōnfīdō*. Also with *contentus*; as, —

**fortūnā amicī gaudeō, I rejoice at the fortune of my friend (i.e. on**  
*account of it);*

**victōriā suā glōriantur, they exult over their victory;**

**nātūrā locī cōnfīdēbant, they trusted in the character of their country**  
*(lit. were confident on account of the character).*

a. *fīdō* and *cōnfīdō* always take the Dative of the person (§ 187. II. a); sometimes the Dative of the thing.

2. As Ablatives of Cause are to be reckoned also such Ablatives as *jussū*, *by order of*, *injussū*, *without the order*, *rogātū*, etc.

#### Ablative of Manner.

220. The Ablative with *cum* is used to denote *manner*; as, —  
**cum gravitāte loquitur, he speaks with dignity.**

1. The preposition may be omitted when the Ablative is modified by an adjective; as, —

**magnā gravitāte loquitur, he speaks with great dignity.**

2. The preposition is regularly omitted in the expressions *jūre*, *injūriā*, *jocō*, *vī*, *fraude*, *voluntāte*, *fūrtō*, *silentiō*.

3. A special variety of the Ablative of Manner denotes that *in accordance with which* or *in pursuance of which* anything is or is done. It is generally used without a preposition. Thus: —

**meā sententiā, according to my opinion;**

**suis mōribus, in accordance with their custom;**

**suā sponte, voluntarily, of his (their) own accord;**

**ēā condiciōne, on these terms.**

**Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.**

221. The Ablative is often used to denote an *attendant circumstance* of an action or an event; as, —

*bonis auspiciis, under good auspices;*  
*nulla est altercatio clamoribus umquam habita majoribus, no*  
*debate was ever held under circumstances of greater applause;*  
*extinguitur ingenti luctu provinciae, he dies under circumstances*  
*of great grief on the part of the province;*  
*longo intervalllo sequitur, he follows at a great distance.*

**Ablative of Accompaniment.**

222. The Ablative with *cum* is used with verbs of motion to denote *accompaniment*; as, —

*cum comitibus profectus est, he set out with his attendants;*  
*cum febri domum rediit, he returned home with a fever.*

1. In military expressions the Ablative may stand without *cum* when modified by any adjective except a numeral; as, —

*omnibus copiis, ingenti exercitu, magnâ manu;* but usually *cum exercitu, cum duabus legiōnibus.*

**Ablative of Association.**

222 A. The Ablative is often used with verbs of *joining, mixing, clinging, exchanging*; also with *assuēscō, cōsuēscō, assuēfaciō, and some others to denote association*; as, —

*improbitas scelere juncta, badness joined with crime;*  
*aer calore admixtus, air mixed with heat;*  
*assuētus labore, accustomed to (lit. familiarized with) toil;*  
*pācem bellō permūtant, they change peace for (lit. with) war.*

**Ablative of Degree of Difference.**

223. The Ablative is used with comparatives and words involving comparison (as *post, ante, infra, suprā*) to denote the *degree of difference*; as, —

*dimidiō minor, smaller by a half;*  
*tribus pedibus altior, three feet higher;*  
*paulo post, a little afterwards;*  
*quō plūra habēmus, eo cupimus ampliōra, the more we have, the more we want.*

## Ablative of Quality.

224. The Ablative, modified by an adjective, is used to denote *quality*; as, —

*puella eximia formā, a girl of exceptional beauty;*  
*vir singulārī industriā, a man of singular industry.*

1. The Ablative of Quality may also be used predicatively; as, —  
*est magnā prūdentiā, he is (a man) of great wisdom;*  
*bonō animō sunt, they are of good courage.*
2. In place of the Adjective we sometimes find a limiting Genitive; as, —  
*sunt speciē et colōre tauri, they are of the appearance and color of a bull.*
3. In poetry the Ablative of Quality sometimes denotes *material*; as, —  
*scopulis pendentibus antrum, a cave of arching rocks.*

## Ablative of Price.

225. With verbs of *buying* and *selling*, price is designated by the Ablative; as, —

*servum quInque minis ẽmit, he bought the slave for five minae.*

1. The Ablatives *magnō, plurimō, parvō, minimō* (by omission of *pretiō*) are used to denote *indefinite price*; as, —  
*aedēs magnō vēndidit, he sold the house for a high price.*
2. For the Genitive of Indefinite Price, see § 203. 4.

## Ablative of Specification.

226. The Ablative of Specification is used to denote that *in respect to which* something is or is done; as, —

*Helvētiī omnibus Gallis virtūte praestābant, the Helvetians surpassed all the Gauls in valor;*  
*pede claudus, lame in his foot.*

1. Note the phrases: —  
*major nātū, older* (lit. *greater as to age*);  
*minor nātū, younger.*
2. Here belongs the use of the Ablative with *dignus, worthy, indignus, unworthy*, and *dignor, deem worthy of*; as, —  
*digni honōre, worthy of honor* (i.e. *in point of honor*);  
*fidē indigni, unworthy of confidence.*  
*mē dignor honōre, I deem myself worthy of honor.*

**Ablative Absolute.**

227. The Ablative Absolute is grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence. In its commonest form it consists of a noun or pronoun limited by a participle; as, —

*urbe captā, Aenēas fūgit, when the city had been captured, Aeneas fled* (lit. *the city having been captured*).

1. Instead of a participle we often find an adjective or noun; as, —  
*vīvō Caesare rēs pūblica salva erat, while Caesar was alive the state was safe* (lit. *Caesar being alive*);

*Tarquiniō rēge, Pȳthagorās in Italiam vēnit, in the reign of Tarquin Pythagoras came into Italy* (lit. *Tarquin being king*).

**Cn. Pompejō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus, in the consulship of Gnaeus Pompey and Marcus Crassus** (lit. *P. and C. being consuls*).

2. The Ablative Absolute is generally used in Latin where in English we employ subordinate clauses. Thus the Ablative Absolute may correspond to a clause denoting —

a) Time, as in the foregoing examples.

b) Condition; as, —

*omnēs virtūtēs jacent, voluptāte dominante, all virtues lie prostrate, if pleasure is master.*

c) Opposition; as, —

*perditis omnibus rēbus, virtūs sē sustentāre potest, though everything else is lost, yet Virtue can maintain herself.*

d) Cause; as, —

*nūllō adversante rēgnū obtinuit, since no one opposed him, he secured the throne.*

e) Attendant circumstance; as, —

*passis palmis pācem petivērunt, with hands outstretched they sued for peace.*

3. An Infinitive or clause sometimes occurs in the Ablative Absolute construction, especially in Livy and later writers; as, —

*audītō eum fūgisse, when it was heard that he had fled.*

4. A noun or pronoun stands in the Ablative Absolute construction only when it denotes a different person or thing from any in the clause in which it stands. Exceptions to this principle are extremely rare.

## LOCATIVE USES OF THE ABLATIVE.

## Ablative of Place.

## A. Place where.

228. The place where is regularly denoted by the *Ablative with a preposition*; as,—

*in urbe habitat, he dwells in the city.*

i. But certain words stand in the Ablative without a preposition; *viz.*—

a) Names of towns,—except Singulars of the First and Second Declensions (see § 232. 1); as,—

*Carthagini, at Carthage;*

*Athēnis, at Athens;*

*Vejis, at Veii.*

b) The general words *locō, locis, parte*, also many words modified by *tōtus* or even by other Adjectives; as,—

*hōc locō, at this place;*

*tōtis castris, in the whole camp.*

c) The special words: *foris, out of doors; rūsi, in the country; terrā marīque, on land and sea.*

d) The poets freely omit the preposition with any word denoting place; as,—

*stant lītore puppēs, the sterns rest on the beach.*

B. Place from which.<sup>1</sup>

229. Place from which is regularly denoted by the *Ablative with a preposition*; as,—

*ab Italīa profectus est, he set out from Italy;*

*ex urbe rediit, he returned from the city.*

i. But certain words stand in the Ablative without a preposition; *viz.*—

a) Names of towns and small islands; as,—

*Rōmā profectus est, he set out from Rome;*

*Rhodō revertit, he returned from Rhodes.*

<sup>1</sup> Place from which, though strictly a Genuine Ablative use, is treated here for sake of convenience.

b) *domō, from home ; rūre, from the country.*

c) *Freely in poetry ; as, —*

*Italiā dēcessit, he withdrew from Italy.*

2. With names of towns, *ab* is used to mean *from the vicinity of*, or to denote the point *whence distance is measured* ; as, —

*ā Gergoviā discessit, he withdrew from the vicinity of Gergovia.*

*ā Rōmā X milia aberat, he was ten miles distant from Rome.*

*Urbe* and *oppidō*, when standing in apposition with a town name, are accompanied by a preposition ; as, —

*Curibus ex oppidō SabInōrum, from Cures, a town of the Sabines.*

#### **Ablative of Time.**

##### *A. Time at which.*

230. The Ablative is used to denote the time *at which* ; as, —

*quārtā hōrā mortuus est, he died at the fourth hour ;*

*annō septuāgēsimō cōnsul crēatus, elected consul in his seventieth year.*

1. Any word denoting a period of time may stand in this construction, particularly *annus*, *vēr*, *aestās*, *hiems*, *diēs*, *nox*, *hōra*, *comitia* (*Election Day*), *lūdī* (*the Games*), etc.

2. Words not denoting time require the preposition *in*, unless accompanied by a modifier. Thus : —

in pāce, in peace ;                            in bellō, in war ;  
but    secundō bellō Pūnicō, in the second Punic War.

3. Expressions like *in eō tempore*, *in summā senectūte*, take the preposition because they denote *situation* rather than *time*.

##### *B. Time within which.*

231. Time *within which* is denoted by the Ablative either *with* or *without* a preposition ; as, —

*stella Sāturnī trīgintā annīs cursum cōficit, the planet Saturn completes its orbit within thirty years ;*  
*ter in annō, thrice in the course of the year.*

1. Occasionally the Ablative denotes *duration of time* ; as, —

*bienniō prōsperas rēs habuit, for two years he had a prosperous administration.*

## THE LOCATIVE.

232. The Locative case occurs chiefly in the following words :—

1. Regularly in the Singular of names of towns and small islands of the first and second declensions, to denote the place *in which* ; as, —

**Rōmae**, *at Rome* ;                           **Corinthi**, *at Corinth* ;  
**Rhodi**, *at Rhodes*.

2. In the following special forms :—

<b>domi</b> , <i>at home</i> ;	<b>humi</b> , <i>on the ground</i> ;
<b>belli</b> , <i>in war</i> ;	<b>militiae</b> , <i>in war</i> ;
<b>vesperī</b> , <i>at evening</i> ;	<b>heri</b> , <i>yesterday</i> .

3. Note the phrase **pendēre animi**, lit. *to be in suspense in one's mind*.

4. For **urbs** and **oppidum** in apposition with a Locative, see § 169. 4.

—••—

CHAPTER III.—*Syntax of Adjectives.*

233. 1. The word with which an Adjective agrees is called its Subject.

2. **Attributive and Predicate Adjectives.** An Attributive Adjective is one that limits its subject directly ; as, —

**vir sapiēns**, *a wise man*.

A Predicate Adjective is one that limits its subject through the medium of a verb (usually **esse**) ; as, —

**vir est sapiēns**, *the man is wise* ;  
**vir vidēbātur sapiēns**, *the man seemed wise* ;  
**vir jūdicātus est sapiēns**, *the man was judged wise* ;  
**hunc virum sapientem jūdicāvimus**, *we adjudged this man wise*.

3. Participles and Adjective Pronouns have the construction of Adjectives.

**AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.**

**234. Agreement with One Noun.** When an Adjective limits one noun it agrees with it in Gender, Number, and Case.

1. Two Adjectives in the Singular may limit a noun in the Plural; as, *prīma et vīcēsima legiōnēs, the first and twentieth legions.*

2. A Predicate Adjective may stand in the Neuter when its Subject is Masculine or Feminine and denotes a thing; as,—

*mors est miserum, death is a wretched thing.*

**235. Agreement with Two or More Nouns.**

**A. AGREEMENT AS TO NUMBER.**

1. When the Adjective is Attributive, it regularly agrees in number with the nearest noun; as,—

*pater tuus et māter, your father and mother ;  
eadem alacritās et studium, the same eagerness and zeal.*

2. When the Adjective is Predicative, it is regularly Plural; as,—

*pāx et concordia sunt pulchrae, peace and concord are glorious.*

**B. AGREEMENT AS TO GENDER.**

1. When the Adjective is Attributive, it regularly agrees in gender with the nearest noun; as,—

*rēs operae multae ac labōris, a matter of much effort and labor.*

2. When the Adjective is Predicative —

a) If the nouns are of the same gender, the Adjective agrees with them in gender; as,—

*pater et fīlius capti sunt, father and son were captured.*

Yet with feminine abstract nouns, the Adjective is more frequently Neuter; as,—

*stultitia et timiditās fugienda sunt, folly and cowardice must be shunned.*

**b)** If the nouns are of different gender; then,—

a) In case they denote persons, the Adjective is Masculine; as,—  
*pater et māter mortuī sunt, the father and mother have died.*

β) In case they denote things, the Adjective is Neuter; as,—  
*honōrēs et victōriae fortūta sunt, honors and victories are accidental.*

γ) In case they include both persons and things, the Adjective is,—

aa) Sometimes Masculine; as,—  
*domus, uxor, līberī inventi sunt, home, wife, and children are secured.*

ββ) Sometimes Neuter; as,—  
*parentēs, līberōs, domōs vīlia habēre, to hold parents, children, houses, cheap.*

γγ) Sometimes it agrees with the nearest noun; as,—  
*populi prōvinciaeque līberātae sunt, nations and provinces were liberated.*

**c)** Construction according to Sense. Sometimes an Adjective does not agree with a noun according to strict grammatical form, but according to sense; as,—  
*pars bēstīa objecti sunt, part (of the men) were thrown to beasts.*

#### ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY.

**236. I. PLURAL ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY.** Adjectives are quite freely used as Substantives in the Plural. The Masculine denotes persons; the Neuter denotes things; as,—

doctī, scholars;	parva, small things;
mallī, the wicked;	magna, great things;
Graecōl, the Greeks;	ūtilia, useful things;
nostri, our men.	

2. Neuter Plural Adjectives thus used are confined mainly to the Nominative and Accusative cases. Such forms as **magnōrum**, **omnium**; **magnis**, **omnibus**, would ordinarily lead to ambiguity; yet where there is no ambiguity, they sometimes occur; as, —

**parva compōnere magnis**, *to compare small things with great.*

Otherwise the Latin says: **magnārum rērum**, **magnis rēbus**, etc.

**237. SINGULAR ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY.** Adjectives are less freely used as Substantives in the Singular than in the Plural.

1. Masculine Adjectives occur only occasionally in this use; as, — **probus invidet nēminī**, *the honest man envies nobody.*

a. Usually **vir**, **homō**, or some similar word is employed; as, —  
**homō doctus**, *a scholar* ;  
**vir Rōmānus**, *a Roman.*

b. But when limited by a pronoun any adjective may be so used; as, —

**hic doctus**, *this scholar* ;  
**doctus quidam**, *a certain scholar.*

2. Neuters are likewise infrequent; as, —

**vērum**, *truth* ;  
**jūstum**, *justice* ;  
**honestum**, *virtue*.

a. This substantive use of Neuter Singulars is commonest in the construction of the Genitive of the Whole, and after Prepositions; as, —

**aliquid vēri**, *something true* ;  
**nihil novi**, *nothing new* ;  
**in mediō**, *in the midst.*

**238. From Adjectives which, like the above, occasionally admit the substantive use, must be carefully distinguished certain others which have become nouns**; as, —

<b>adversārius</b> , <i>opponent</i> ;	<b>hīberna</b> , <i>winter quarters</i> ;
<b>aequālis</b> , <i>contemporary</i> ;	<b>propinquus</b> , <i>relative</i> ;
<b>amicus</b> , <i>friend</i> ;	<b>socius</b> , <i>partner</i> ;
<b>cognātus</b> , <i>kinsman</i> ;	<b>sodālis</b> , <i>comrade</i> ;
<b>vīcinus</b> , <i>neighbor</i> ; etc.	

## ADJECTIVES WITH THE FORCE OF ADVERBS.

239. The Latin often uses an Adjective where the English idiom employs an Adverb or an adverbial phrase ; as, —

*senatus frequēns convēnit, the senate assembled in great numbers ; fuit assiduus mēcum, he was constantly with me.*

## COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.

240. 1. The Comparative often corresponds to the English Positive with 'rather,' 'somewhat,' 'too' ; as, —

*senectūs est loquācior, old age is rather talkative.*

2. So the Superlative often corresponds to the Positive with 'very' ; as, —

*vir fortissimus, a very brave man.*

3. **Strengthening Words.** *Vel* and *quam* are often used with the Superlative as strengthening particles, *vel* with the force of 'very,' and *quam* with the force of 'as possible' ; as, —

*vel maximus, the very greatest ;*

*quam maximae cōpiae, as great forces as possible.*

4. Phrases of the type 'more rich than brave' regularly take the Comparative in both members ; as, —

*exercitus erat dītior quam fortior, the army was more rich than brave.*

## OTHER PECULIARITIES.

241. 1. Certain Adjectives may be used to denote *a part of an object*, chiefly *prīmus*, *extrēmus*, *summus*, *medius*, *infīmus*, *īmus* ; as, —

*summus mōns, the top of the mountain ;*

*extrēmā hieme, in the last part of the winter.*

2. *Prior*, *prīmus*, *ultimus*, and *postrēmus* are frequently equivalent to a relative clause ; as, —

*prīmus eam vīdī, I was the first who saw her ;*

*ultimus dēcessit, he was the last who withdrew.*

3. When *multus* and another adjective both limit the same noun, *et* is generally used ; as, —

*multae et magnae cōgītatiōnēs, many (and) great thoughts.*

## CHAPTER IV.— Syntax of Pronouns.

### PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

242. 1. The Personal Pronouns as subjects of verbs are, as a rule, not expressed except for the purpose of *emphasis, contrast, or clearness*. Thus ordinarily :—

*videō, I see ;      amat, he loves.*

But *ego tē videō, et tū mē vidēs, I see you, and you see me.*

2. The Genitives *mei, tui, nostri, vestri* are used only as Objective Genitives ; *nostrum* and *vestrum* as Genitives of the Whole. Thus :—

*memor tui, mindful of you ;  
dēsiderium vestri, longing for you ;  
nēmō vestrum, no one of you.*

a. But *nostrum* and *vestrum* are regularly used in place of the Possessive in the phrases *omnium nostrum, omnium vestrum*.

3. The First Plural is often used for the First Singular of Pronouns and Verbs. Compare the Eng. editorial ‘we.’

4. When two Verbs govern the same object, the Latin does not use a pronoun with the second, as is the rule in English. Thus :—

*virtus amicitiās conciliat et cōservat, virtue establishes friendships and maintains them* (not *eās cōservat*).

### POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

243. 1. The Possessive Pronouns, as a rule, are not employed except for the purpose of *clearness*. Thus :—

*patrem amō, I love my father ;  
dē morte filii morte filiās, you wept for the death of your son.*

But —

*dē morte filii mei filiās, you wept for the death of my son.*

a. When expressed merely for the sake of clearness, the possessive usually stands after its noun ; but in order to indicate emphasis or contrast, it precedes ; as, —

*suā manū liberōs occidit, with his own hand he slew his children ;  
mēa quidem sententiā, in my opinion at least.*

2. Sometimes the Possessive Pronouns are used with the force of an Objective Genitive ; as, —

*metus vester, fear of you ;  
dēsiderium tuum, longing for you.*

3. For special emphasis, the Latin employs *ipsius* or *ipsorum*, in apposition with the Genitive idea implied in the Possessive ; as, —

*meā ipsius operā, by my own help ;  
nostrā ipsorum operā, by our own help ;*

a. So sometimes other Genitives ; as, —

*meā unius operā, by the assistance of me alone.*

#### REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

244. I. The Reflexive Pronoun *sē* and the Possessive Reflexive *suus* have a double use : —

I. They may refer to the subject of the clause (either principal or subordinate) in which they stand, — ‘Direct Reflexives’ ; as, —

*sē amant, they love themselves ;  
suōs amicōs adjuvat, he helps his own friends ;  
eum ɔrāvī, ut sē servāret, I besought him to save himself.*

II. They may stand in a subordinate clause and refer to the subject of the principal clause, — ‘Indirect Reflexives’ ; as, —

*mē ɔrāvit ut sē dēfenderem, he besought me to defend him (lit. that I defend himself) ;  
mē ɔrāvērunt, ut fortūnārum suārum dēfēnsiōnem susciperem, they besought me to undertake the defense of their fortunes.*

a. The Indirect Reflexive is mainly restricted to those clauses which express the thought, not of the author, but of the subject of the principal clause.

2. The Genitive *sui* is regularly employed, like *mei* and *tuī*, as an Objective Genitive, e.g. *oblitus sui*, *forgetful of himself* ; but it occasionally occurs — particularly in post-Augustan writers — in place of the Possessive *suus* ; as, *fruitur fāmā sui*, *he enjoys his own fame*.

3. *Sē* and *suus* are sometimes used in the sense, *one's self, one's own*, where the reference is not to any particular person ; as, —

*sē amāre, to love one's self ;  
suum genium propitiāre, to propitiate one's own genius.*

4. **Suus** sometimes occurs in the meaning *his own, their own, etc.*, referring not to the subject but to an oblique case; as,—

**Hannibalem sui cívēs & cívitatē sjōcērunt**, *his own fellow-citizens drove out Hannibal.*

- a. This usage is particularly frequent in combination with **quisque**; as,—  
**suus quemque error vexat**, *his own error troubles each.*

5. The Reflexives for the first and second persons are supplied by the oblique cases of **ego** and **tū** (§ 85); as,—

**vōs dēfenditis**, *you defend yourselves.*

#### RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS.

245. 1. The Latin has no special reciprocal pronoun ('*each other*'), but expresses the reciprocal notion by the phrases: **inter nōs**, **inter vōs**, **inter sē**; as,—

**Belgae obsidēs inter sē dedērunt**, *the Belgae gave each other hostages* (lit. *among themselves*);  
**amāmus inter nōs**, *we love each other*;

**Gallī inter sē cohortātī sunt**, *the Gauls exhorted each other.*

- a. Note that the Object is not expressed in sentences of this type.

#### DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

##### **Hic, Ille, Iste.**

246. 1. Where **hic** and **ille** are used in contrast, **hic** usually refers to the latter of two objects, and **ille** to the former.

2. **Hic** and **ille** are often used in the sense of '*the following*'; as,—  
**Themistoclēs his verbis epistulam misit**, *Themistocles sent a letter (couched) in the following words;*  
**illud intellegō**, *omnium ūra in mē conversa esse*, *I understand this, that the faces of all are turned toward me.*

3. **Ille** often means *the famous*; as, **Solōn ille**, *the famous Solon.*
4. **Iste** frequently involves contempt; as, **iste homō**, *that fellow!*
5. The above pronouns, along with **is**, are usually attracted to the gender of a predicate noun; as, **hic est honor**, *meminisse officium suum*, *this is an honor, to be mindful of one's duty.*

## Is.

247. 1. **Is** often serves as the antecedent of the relative **qui**.  
Thus: —

**Maximum, eum qui Tarentum recēpit, dīlēxi, I loved Maximus, the man who retook Tarentum.**

a. Closely akin to this usage is **is** in the sense of *such* (= **tālis**) ; as, —

**nōn sum is qui terrear, I am not such a person as to be frightened.**

b. Note the phrase **id quod**, where **id** stands in apposition with an entire clause ; as, —

**nōn suspicābātur (id quod nunc sentiet) satis multōs testēs nōbīs reliquōs esse, he did not suspect (a thing which he will now perceive) that we had witnesses enough left.**

Yet **quod** alone, without preceding **id**, sometimes occurs in this use.

2. **Is** also in all cases serves as the personal pronoun of the third person, 'he,' 'she,' 'it,' 'they,' 'them.'

3. When the English uses 'that of,' 'those of,' to avoid repetition of the noun, the Latin omits the pronoun ; as, —

**in exercitū Sullae et posteā in Crassi fuerat, he had been in the army of Sulla and afterward in that of Crassus ; nūllae mē fābulae dēlectant nisi Plautī, no plays delight me except those of Plautus.**

4. Note the phrases **et is, et ea, etc.**, in the sense : *and that too ; as, — vincula, et ea sempiterna, imprisonment, and that too permanently.*

## Idem.

248. 1. **Idem** in apposition with the subject or object often has the force of *also, likewise* ; as, —

**quod idem mihi contigit, which likewise happened to me (lit. which, the same thing) ;**

**bonus vir, quem eundem sapientem appellāmus, a good man, whom we call also wise.**

2. For **Idem atque (ao)**, *the same as*, see § 341. I. c.

Ipse.

249. 1. *Ipse*, literally *self*, acquires its special force from the context; as,—

*eo ipsō diē, on that very day;*

*ad ipsam rīpam, close to the bank;*

*ipsō terrōre, by mere fright;*

*valvae sē ipsae aperuērunt, the doors opened of their own accord;*

*ipse aderat, he was present in person.*

2. The reflexive pronouns are often emphasized by the addition of *ipse*, but *ipse* in such cases, instead of standing in apposition with the reflexive, more commonly agrees with the subject; as,—

*sēcum ipsi loquuntur, they talk with themselves;*

*sē ipse continēre nōn potest, he cannot contain himself.*

3. *Ipse* is also used as an Indirect Reflexive for the purpose of marking a contrast or avoiding an ambiguity; as,—

*Persae pertimuērunt nē Alcibiadēs ab ipsīs dēscīsiceret et cum suis in grātiā redīret, the Persians feared that Alcibiades would break with them and become reconciled with his countrymen.*  
*ea molestissimē ferre dēbent hominēs quae ipsōrum culpā contrācta sunt, men ought to chafe most over those things which have been brought about by their own fault (as opposed to the fault of others).*

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

250. **Agreement.** 1. The Relative Pronoun agrees with its antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but its case is determined by its construction in the clause in which it stands; as,—

*mulier quam vidēbāmus, the woman whom we saw;*

*bona quibus fruimur, the blessings which we enjoy.*

2. Where the antecedent is compound, the same principles for number and gender prevail as in case of predicate adjectives under similar conditions (see § 235. B. 2). Thus:—

*pater et filius, qui capti sunt, the father and son who were captured;*  
*stultitia et timiditās quae fugienda sunt, folly and cowardice which must be shunned;*

*honōrēs et victōriæ quae sunt fortuita, honors and victories which are accidental.*

3. The Relative regularly agrees with a predicate noun (either Nominative or Accusative) instead of its antecedent ; as, —

*carcer, quae lautumiae vocantur, the prison, which is called Lautumiae ;*

*Celtae, quae est tertia pars, the Celts, who are the third part.*

4. Sometimes the Relative takes its gender and number from the meaning of its antecedent ; as, —

*pars qui bēstīa objecti sunt, a part (of the men) who were thrown to beasts.*

5. Occasionally the Relative is attracted into the case of its antecedent ; as, —

*nātus eō patre quō dixi, born of the father that I said.*

251. **Antecedent.** I. The antecedent of the Relative is sometimes omitted ; as, —

*qui nātūram sequitur sapiēns est, he who follows Nature is wise.*

2. The antecedent may be implied in a possessive pronoun (or rarely an adjective) ; as, —

*nostra qui remāsimus caedēs, the slaughter of us who remained ; servīlī tumulū, quōs fūsus ac disciplīna sublevārunt, at the uprising of the slaves, whom experience and discipline assisted (servīlī = servōrūm).*

3. Sometimes the antecedent is repeated with the Relative ; as, —  
*erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus, there were two routes, by which (routes).*

4. **Incorporation of Antecedent in Relative Clause.** The antecedent is often incorporated in the relative clause. Thus :—

a) When the relative clause stands first ; as, —

*quam quisque nōvit artem in hāc sē exerceat, let each one practice the branch which he knows.*

b) When the antecedent is an appositive ; as, —

*nōn longē à Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā, they are not far from the borders of the Tolosates, a state which is in our province.*

c) When the logical antecedent is a superlative ; as, —

*Themistoclēs dē servīs suis, quem habuit fidēlissimum, misit, Themistocles sent the most trusty slave he had.*

d) In expressions of the following type—

*quā es prūdentia; quae tua est prūdentia, such is your prudence* (lit. of which prudence you are; which is your prudence).

5. The Relative is never omitted in Latin as it is in English. Thus *the boy I saw* must be *puer quem vīdi*.

6. The Relative is used freely in Latin, particularly at the beginning of a sentence, where in English we employ a demonstrative; as,—

*quō factum est, by this it happened;*

*quae cum ita sint, since this is so;*

*quibus rēbus cognitiō, when these things became known.*

7. The Relative introducing a subordinate clause may belong grammatically to a clause which is subordinate to the one it introduces; as,—

*numquam dignē satis laudārī philosophia poterit, cui qui pāreat, omne tempus aetātis sine molestiā possit dēgere, philosophy can never be praised enough, since he who obeys her can pass every period of life without annoyance* (lit. he who obeys which, etc.).

Here *qui* introduces the subordinate clause *possit* and connects it with *philosophia*; but *qui* is governed by *pāreat*, which is subordinate to *possit*.

#### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

252. 1. **Quis**, *any one*, is the weakest of the Indefinites, and stands usually in combination with *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, *num*; as,—

*sī quis putat, if any one thinks.*

2. **Aliquis** (adj. *aliqui*) is more definite than *quis*, and corresponds usually to the English *some one, somebody, some*; as,—

*nunc aliquis dicat mihi, now let somebody tell me;*

*utinam modo agātur aliquid, oh that something may be done.*

3. **Quidam**, *a certain one*, is still more definite than *aliquis*; as,—  
*homō quidam, a certain man* (i.e. *one whom I have in mind*).

a. **Quidam** (with or without *quasi*, *as if*) is sometimes used in the sense: *a sort of, kind of*; as,—

*quaedam cognatiō, a sort of relationship;*

*mors est quasi quaedam migratiō, death is a kind of transfer, as it were.*

4. **Quisquam**, *any one, any one whoever* (more general than **quis**), and its corresponding adjective **ūllus**, *any*, occur mostly in negative and conditional sentences, in interrogative sentences implying a negative, and in clauses of comparison ; as, —

**jūstitia numquam nocet cuiquam**, *justice never harms anybody* ;  
**sī quisquam**, *Catō sapiēns fuit, if anybody was ever wise, Cato was* ;  
**potestne quisquam sine perturbatiōne animi irāsci**, *can anybody be angry without excitement?*

**sī ūllō modō fierī potest**, *if it can be done in any way* ;  
**taetrior hīc tyrannus fuit quam quisquam superiōrum**, *he was a viler tyrant than any of his predecessors*.

5. **Quisque**, *each one*, is used especially under the following circumstances : —

- a) In connection with **suus**. See § 244. 4. a.
- b) In connection with a Relative or Interrogative Pronoun ; as, —  
**quod cuique obtigit, id teneat**, *what falls to each, that let him hold.*
- c) In connection with superlatives ; as, —  
**optimus quisque**, *all the best* (lit. *each best one*).
- d) With ordinal numerals ; as, —  
**quīntō quōque annō**, *every four years* (lit. *each fifth year*).

6. **Nēmō**, *no one*, in addition to its other uses, stands regularly with adjectives used substantively ; as, —

**nēmō mortālis**, *no mortal* ;  
**nēmō Rōmānus**, *no Roman*.

#### PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

253. 1. **Alius**, *another*, and **alter**, *the other*, are often used correlatively ; as, —

**aliud loquitur, aliud sentit**, *he says one thing, he thinks another* ;  
**aliī resistunt, aliī fugiunt**, *some resist, others flee* ;  
**alter exercitum perdidit, alter vēndidit**, *one ruined the army, the other sold it* ;  
**alterī sē in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta sē contulērunt**, *the one party retreated to the mountain, the others betook themselves to the baggage*.

2. Where the English says *one does one thing, another another*, the Latin uses a more condensed form of statement ; as,—

*alius aliud amat, one likes one thing, another another ;  
aliud aliis placet, one thing pleases some, another others.*

a. So sometimes with adverbs ; as,—

*alii aliō fugiunt, some flee in one direction, others in another.*

3. The Latin also expresses the notion ‘*each other*’ by means of *alius* repeated ; as,—

*Galli aliis alium cohortati sunt, the Gauls encouraged each other.*

4. *Ceteri* means *the rest, all the others* ; as,—

*ceteris praestare, to be superior to all the others.*

5. *Reliqui* means *the others* in the sense of *the rest, those remaining*,—hence is the regular word with numerals ; as,—

*reliqui sex, the six others.*

6. *Nescio quis* forms a compound indefinite pronoun with the force of *some one or other* ; as,—

*causidicus nescio quis, some pettifogger or other ;  
misit nescio quem, he sent some one or other ;  
nescio quo pacto, somehow or other.*



## CHAPTER V.—*Syntax of Verbs.*

### AGREEMENT.

#### With One Subject.

254. 1. **Agreement in Number and Person.** A Finite Verb agrees with its subject in Number and Person ; as,—

*vōs vidētis, you see ;  
pater filiōs instituit, the father trains his sons.*

2. **Agreement in Gender.** In the compound forms of the verb the participle regularly agrees with its subject in gender ; as,—

*sēditiō repressa est, the mutiny was checked.*

3. But when a predicate noun is of different gender or number from its subject, the verb usually agrees with its nearest substantive; as,—  
**Tarquinii māterna patria erat, Tarquintii was his native country on his mother's side;**  
**nōn omnis error stultitia est dicenda, not every error is to be called folly.**

a. Less frequently the verb agrees with an appositive; as,—

**Corioli, oppidum Volscōrum, captum est, Corioli, a town of the Volsci, was captured.**

4. **Construction according to Sense.** Sometimes the verb agrees with its subject according to sense instead of strict grammatical form. Thus:—

a) In Number; as,—

**multitudō hominum convēnerant, a crowd of men had gathered.**

b) In Gender; as,—

**duo milia crucibus adfixi sunt, two thousand (men) were crucified.**

#### With Two or More Subjects.

255. I. **Agreement in Number.** With two or more subjects the verb is regularly plural; as,—

**pater et filius mortui sunt, the father and son died.**

2. But sometimes the verb agrees with the nearest subject; *viz.*,—

a) When the verb precedes both subjects or stands between them; as,—

**mortuus est pater et filius;**  
**pater mortuus est et filius.**

b) When the subjects are connected by **aut**; **aut . . . aut**; **vel . . . vel**; **neque . . . neque**; as,—

**neque pater neque filius mortuus est, neither father nor son died.**

3. When the different subjects are felt together as constituting a whole, the singular is used; as,—

**temeritās ignōrātiōque vitiōsa est, rashness and ignorance are bad.**

a. This is regularly the case in **senātus populusque Rōmānus.**

4. **Agreement in Person.** With compound subjects of different persons the verb always takes the *first* person rather than the *second*, and the *second* rather than the *third*; as, —

**si tū et Tullia valētis, ego et Cicerō valēmus,** *if you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well.*

5. **Agreement in Gender.** With subjects of different genders the participle in the compound tenses follows the same principles as laid down for predicate adjectives. See § 235, B, 2.

### VOICES.

**256.** 1. The Passive Voice sometimes retains traces of its original middle or reflexive meaning; as, —

**ego nōn patiar eum dēfendI,** *I shall not allow him to defend himself.*

2. In imitation of Greek usage many perfect passive participles are used by the poets as indirect middles, *i.e.* the subject is viewed as acting not upon himself, but as doing something *in his own interest*; as, —

**vēlātus tempora,** *having veiled his temples.*

a. Occasionally finite forms of the verb are thus used; as, —  
**tunicā indūcitur artūs,** *he covers his limbs with a tunic.*

3. Intransitive Verbs may be used impersonally in the passive; as, —  
**curritur,** *people run* (lit. *it is run*);  
**ventum est,** *he (they, etc.) came* (lit. *it was come*).

### TENSES.

#### TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

**257.** 1. The Latin tenses express two distinct notions: —

- a) The *period of time* to which the action belongs: Present, Past, or Future.
- b) The *kind of action*: Undefined, Going on, or Completed.

The Latin with its six tenses is able to express each of the three kinds of action for each of the three periods of time (making practically nine

tenses). It does this by employing certain tenses in more than one way, as may be seen by the following table:—

PERIOD OF TIME.			
	PRESENT.	PAST.	FUTURE.
KIND OF ACTION.	UNDEFINED. Present: <i>scribō, I write.</i>	Historical Perfect: <i>scripti, I wrote.</i>	Future: <i>scribam, I shall write.</i>
	GOING ON. Present: <i>scribō, I am writing.</i>	Imperfect: <i>scribēbam, I was writing.</i>	Future: <i>scribam, I shall be writing.</i>
	COMPLETED. Present Perfect: <i>scripti, I have written.</i>	Pluperfect: <i>scripseram, I had written.</i>	Future Perfect: <i>scripserō, I shall have written.</i>

2. It will be seen that the Present may express Undefined action or action Going on; so also the Future. The Perfect likewise has a double use, according as it denotes action Completed in present time (Present Perfect) or Undefined action belonging to past time (Historical Perfect).

#### Principal and Historical Tenses.

258. Tenses which denote Present or Future time are called **Principal** (or Primary) Tenses; those which denote Past time are called **Historical** (or Secondary).

The Principal Tenses of the Indicative are: Present, Future, Present Perfect, Future Perfect.

The Historical Tenses are: Imperfect, Historical Perfect, Pluperfect.

#### Present Indicative.

259. Besides the two uses indicated in the table, the Present Indicative presents the following peculiarities:—

1. It is used to denote a *general truth*, i.e. something true not merely in the present but at all times ('Gnomic Present'); as,—

*virtus conciliat amicitias et cōservat, virtue establishes ties of friendship and maintains them* (i.e. always does so).

2. It is used of an attempted action ('Conative Present') ; as, —  
*dum vītant vitia, in contrāria currunt, while they try to avoid (vītant) vices, they rush into opposite ones.*

3. In lively narration the Present is often used of a past action ('Historical Present') ; as, —

**Caesar Haedui obsidēs imperat**, *Caesar demanded hostages of the Haedui* (lit. demands).

4. In combination with *jam*, *jam diū*, *jam prīdem*, and similar words, the Present is frequently used of an action originating in the past and continuing in the present ; as, —

*jam diū cupiō tē vīsere*, *I have long been desiring to visit you* (i.e. I desire and have long desired).

#### Imperfect Indicative.

260. 1. The Imperfect primarily denotes action *going on in past time* ; as, —

*librum legēbam*, *I was reading a book.*

a. This force makes the Imperfect especially adapted to serve as the tense of *description* (as opposed to mere *narration*).

2. From the notion of action *going on*, there easily develops the notion of *repeated* or *customary* action ; as, —

*lēgātōs interrogābat*, *he kept asking the envoys* ;  
*puer C. Duiliūm vidēbam*, *as a boy I often used to see Gaius Duilius.*

3. The Imperfect often denotes an attempted action ('Conative Imperfect') or an action as beginning ('Inceptive Imperfect') ; as, —

*hostēs nostrōs intrā mūnītiōnēs prōgredī prohibēbant*, *the enemy tried to prevent (prohibēbant) our men from advancing within the fortifications* ('Conative') ;

*ad proelium sē expediēbant*, *they were beginning to get ready for battle* ('Inceptive').

4. The Imperfect, with *jam*, *jam diū*, *jam dūdum*, *etc.*, is sometimes used of an action which had been continuing some time ; as, —

**domiciliū Rōmae multōs jam annōs habēbat**, *he had had his residence at Rome for many years* (i.e. he had it at this time and had long had it).

## Future Indicative.

261. 1. The Latin is much more exact in the use of the Future than is the English. We say: '*If he comes, I shall be glad*,' where we really mean: '*If he shall come*,' etc. In such cases the Latin rarely admits the Present, but generally employs the Future.

2. Sometimes the Future has Imperative force; as, **dīcēs, say!**

## Perfect Indicative.

262. A. PRESENT PERFECT. Several Present Perfects denote the *state resulting from a completed act*, and so seem equivalent to the Present; as,—

**nōvī, cognōvī, I know** (lit. *I have become acquainted with*) ;  
**cōnsuēvī, I am wont** (lit. *I have become accustomed*).

B. HISTORICAL PERFECT. The Historical Perfect is the tense of *narration* (as opposed to the Imperfect, the tense of *description*); as,—  
**Rēgulus in senātūm vēnit, mandāta exposuit, reddī captīvōs negāvit esse fītile, Regulus came into the Senate, set forth his commission, said it was useless for captives to be returned.**

1. Occasionally the Historical Perfect is used of a general truth ('Gnomic Perfect').

## Pluperfect Indicative.

263. The Latin Pluperfect, like the English Past Perfect, denotes an act *completed in the past*; as,—

**Caesar Rhēnum trānsire dēcrēverat, sed nāvēs deerant, Caesar had decided to cross the Rhine, but had no boats.**

a. In those verbs whose Perfect has Present force (§ 262, A), the Pluperfect has the force of an Imperfect; as,—  
**nōveram, I knew.**

## Future Perfect Indicative.

264. The Future Perfect denotes an action *completed in future time*. Thus:—

**scribam epistulam, cum redieris, I will write the letter when you have returned** (lit. *when you shall have returned*).

a. The Latin is much more exact in the use of the Future Perfect than the English, which commonly employs the Present Perfect instead of the Future Perfect.

b. In those verbs whose Perfect has Present force (§ 262, A) the Future Perfect has the force of a Future; as,—  
**nōverō, I shall know.**

## Epistolary Tenses.

265. In letters the writer often uses tenses which are not appropriate at the time of writing, but which will be so at the time when his letter is received; he thus employs the Imperfect and the Perfect for the Present, and the Pluperfect for the Present Perfect; as,—

**nihil habēbam quod scriborem, neque enim novī quidquam audieram et ad tuās omnēs epistulās jam rescrīpseram, I have nothing to write, for I have heard no news and have already answered all your letters.**

## TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

266. *A. In Independent Sentences.* See §§ 272–280.

*B. In Dependent Sentences.* In dependent sentences the tenses of the subjunctive usually conform to the so-called

## Sequence of Tenses.

267. 1. In the Subjunctive the Present and Perfect are Principal tenses, the Imperfect and Pluperfect, Historical.

2. By the Sequence of Tenses Principal tenses are followed by Principal, Historical by Historical. Thus:—

## PRINCIPAL SEQUENCE,—

**videō quid faciās, I see what you are doing.**

**vidēbō quid faciās, I shall see what you are doing.**

**viderō quid faciās, I shall have seen what you are doing.**

**videō quid fēceris, I see what you have done.**

**vidēbō quid fēceris, I shall see what you have done.**

**viderō quid fēceris, I shall have seen what you have done.**

## HISTORICAL SEQUENCE,—

**vidēbam quid facerēs, I saw what you were doing.**

**vidī quid facerēs, I saw what you were doing.**

**videram quid facerēs, I had seen what you were doing.**

**vidēbam quid fēcissēs, I saw what you had done.**

**vidī quid fēcissēs, I saw what you had done.**

**videram quid fēcissēs, I had seen what you had done.**

3. The Present and Imperfect Subjunctive denote incomplete action, the Perfect and Pluperfect completed action, exactly as in the Indicative.

## Peculiarities of Sequence.

268. 1. The Perfect Indicative is usually an historical tense (even when translated in English as a Present Perfect), and so is followed by the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive; as, —

**dēmōnstrāvī quārē ad causam accēderem,** *I have shown why I took the case* (lit. *I showed why, etc.*).

2. A dependent Perfect Infinitive is treated as an historical tense wherever, if resolved into an equivalent Indicative, it would be historical; as, —

**videor ostendisse quālēs dei essent,** *I seem to have shown of what nature the gods are* (ostendisse here corresponds to an Indicative, **ostendī**, *I showed*).

3. The Historical Present is sometimes regarded as a principal tense, sometimes as historical. Thus: —

**Sulla suōs hortātur ut fortī animō sint,** *Sulla exhorts his soldiers to be stout-hearted;*

**Gallōs hortātur ut arma caperent,** *he exhorted the Gauls to take arms.*

4. Conditional sentences of the 'contrary-to-fact' type are not affected by the principles for the Sequence of Tenses; as, —

**honestum tāle est ut vel sī ignōrārent id hominēs suā tamen pulchritūdine laudābile esset,** *virtue is such a thing that even if men were ignorant of it, it would still be worthy of praise for its own loveliness.*

5. In conditional sentences of the 'contrary-to-fact' type the Imperfect Subjunctive is usually treated as an Historical tense; as, —

**sī sōlōs eōs dīcerēs miserōs, quibus moriendum esset, nēminem tū quidem eōrum qui vīverent exciperēs,** *if you called only those wretched who must die, you would except no one of those who live.*

6. In clauses of Result and some others, the Perfect Subjunctive is sometimes used as an historical tense. Thus: —

**rēx tantum mōtus est, ut Tissaphernem hostem jūdicārit,** *the king was so much moved that he adjudged Tissaphernes an enemy.*

This construction is rare in Cicero, but frequent in Nepos and subsequent historians. The Perfect Subjunctive in this use represents a

result simply as a fact without reference to the continuance of the act, and therefore corresponds to an Historical Perfect Indicative of direct statement. Thus, *jūdicārit* in the above example corresponds to a *jūdicāvit*, *he adjudged*. To denote a result as something continuous, all writers use the Imperfect Subjunctive after historical tenses.

7. Sometimes perspicuity demands that the ordinary principles of Sequence be abandoned altogether. Thus : —

a) We may have the Present or Perfect Subjunctive after an historical tense ; as, —

*Verrēs Siciliam ita perdidit ut ea restitul nōn possit,*  
*Verres so ruined Sicily that it cannot be restored*  
*(Direct statement ; nōn potest restitui) ;*

*ārdēbat Hortēnsius dīcendī cupiditātē sīc, ut in nūllō*  
*flagrantius studium vīderim, Hortensius burned so*  
*with eagerness to speak that I have seen in no one a*  
*greater desire (Direct statement : in nūllō vīdī, I have*  
*seen in no one).*

NOTE. — This usage is different from that cited under 6. Here, by neglect of Sequence, the Perfect is used though a principal tense ; there the Perfect was used as an historical tense.

b) We may have a principal tense followed by the Perfect Subjunctive used historically ; as, —

*nesciō quid causae fuerit cūr nūllās ad mē litterās*  
*darās, I do not know what reason there was why you*  
*did not send me a letter.*

Here *fuerit* is historical, as is shown by the following Imperfect Subjunctive.

#### Method of Expressing Future Time in the Subjunctive.

269. The Future and Future Perfect which are lacking to the Latin Subjunctive are supplied in subordinate clauses as follows : —

i. a) The Future is supplied by the Present after principal tenses, by the Imperfect after historical tenses.

b) The Future Perfect is supplied by the Perfect after principal tenses, by the Pluperfect after historical tenses.

This is especially frequent when the context clearly shows, by the presence of a future tense in the main clause, that the reference is to future time. Thus : —

GallI pollicentur sē factūrōs, quae Caesar imperet, *the Gauls promise they will do what Caesar shall order;*  
 GallI pollicēbantur sē factūrōs, quae Caesar imperāret, *the Gauls promised they would do what Caesar should order;*  
 GallI pollicentur sē factūrōs quae Caesar imperāverit, *the Gauls promise they will do what Caesar shall have ordered;*  
 GallI pollicēbantur sē factūrōs quae Caesar imperāvisset, *the Gauls promised they would do what Caesar should have ordered.*

2. Even where the context does not contain a Future tense in the main clause, Future time is often expressed in the subordinate clauses by the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive. Thus:—

*timeō nē veniat, I am afraid he will come;*  
*Caesar exspectābat quid cōsillI hostēs caperent, Caesar was waiting to see what plan the enemy would adopt.*

3. Where greater definiteness is necessary the periphrastic forms in -ūrus sim and -ūrus essem are employed, especially in clauses of Result, Indirect Questions, and after nōn dubitō quīn; as,—

*nōn dubitō quīn pater ventūrus sit, I do not doubt that my father will come;*  
*nōn dubitābam quīn pater ventūrus esset, I did not doubt that my father would come.*

4. Where the verb has no Future Active Participle, or where it stands in the passive voice, its Future character may be indicated by the use of the particles **mox**, **brevi**, **statim**, etc., in connection with the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive; as,—

*nōn dubitō quīn tē mox hūjus rei paeniteat, I do not doubt that you will soon repent of this thing;*  
*nōn dubitābam quīn haec rēs brevi cōficerētur, I did not doubt that this thing would soon be finished.*

#### TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

270. 1. The tenses of the Infinitive denote time not absolutely, but *with reference to the verb on which they depend*. Thus:—

a) The Present Infinitive represents an act as *contemporaneous with the time of the verb on which it depends*; as,—  
*vidētur honōrēs adsequi, he seems to be gaining honors;*  
*vidēbatur honōrēs adsequi, he seemed to be gaining honors.*

b) The Perfect Infinitive represents an act as *prior to* the time of the verb on which it depends ; as,—

*videtur honōrēs adsecūtus esse, he seems to have gained honors ;*

*visus est honōrēs adsecūtus esse, he seemed to have gained honors.*

c) The Future Infinitive represents an act as *subsequent to* that of the verb on which it depends ; as,—

*videtur honōrēs adsecūtūrus esse, he seems to be about to gain honors ;*

*visus est honōrēs adsecūtūrus esse, he seemed to be about to gain honors.*

2. Where the English says ‘*ought to have done*’, ‘*might have done*’, etc., the Latin uses *dēbui*, *oportuit*, *potui* (*dēbēbam*, *oportēbat*, *poteram*), with the Present Infinitive ; as,—

*dēbuit dīcere, he ought to have said* (lit. *owed it to say*) ;

*oportuit venire, he ought to have come* ;

*potuit vidēre, he might have seen.*

a. Oportuit, *volō, nōlō* (and in poetry some other verbs), may take a Perfect Infinitive instead of the Present ; as,—

*hōc jam pridē factum esse oportuit, this ought long ago to have been done.*

3. PERIPHRASTIC FUTURE INFINITIVE. Verbs that have no Participle Stem express the Future Infinitive Active and Passive by *fore ut* or *futūrum esse ut*, with the Subjunctive ; as,—

*spērō fore ut tē paeniteat levitātis, I hope you will repent of your sickleness* (lit. *hope it will happen that you repent*) ;

*spērō futūrum esse ut hostēs arceantur, I hope that the enemy will be kept off.*

a. The Periphrastic Future Infinitive is often used, especially in the Passive, even in case of verbs which have the Participle Stem ; as,—

*spērō fore ut hostēs vincantur, I hope the enemy will be conquered.*

4. Passives and Deponents sometimes form a Future Perfect Infinitive with *fore* ; as,—

*spērō epistulam scriptam fore, I hope the letter will have been written ;*

*putō mē omnia adeptum fore, I think that I shall have gained everything.*

## THE MOODS.

## MOODS IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES.

## The Indicative in Independent Sentences.

271. The Indicative is used for the *statement of facts, the supposition of facts, or inquiry after facts.*

1. Note the following idiomatic uses : —

a) With **possum**; as, —

**possum multa dicere**, *I might say much* ;

**poteram multa dicere**, *I might have said much* (§ 270, 2).

b) In such expressions as **longum est**, **aequum est**, **melius est**, **difficile est**, **utilius est**, and some others ; as, —

**longum est ea dicere**, *it would be tedious to tell that* ;

**difficile est omnia persequi**, *it would be difficult to enumerate everything.*

## The Subjunctive in Independent Sentences.

272. The Subjunctive is used in Independent Sentences to express something —

1. **As willed** — **Volitive Subjunctive** ;

2. **As desired** — **Optative Subjunctive** ;

3. **Conceived of as possible** — **Potential Subjunctive**.

## VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

273. The Volitive Subjunctive represents the action *as willed*. It always implies authority on the part of the speaker, and has the following varieties : —

## A. HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE.

274. The Hortatory Subjunctive expresses *an exhortation*. This use is confined to the first person plural, of the Present. The negative is **nō**. Thus : —

**eāmus**, *let us go* ;

**amēmus patriam**, *let us love our country* ;

**nō dēspērēmus**, *let us not despair*.

B. JUSSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

275. The Jussive Subjunctive expresses a *command*. The Jussive stands regularly in the Present Tense, and is used —

i. Most frequently in the third singular and third plural; as, —

*dīcat, let him tell;*

*dīcant, let them tell;*

*quārē sēcēdant improbī, wherefore let the wicked depart!*

2. Less frequently in the second person, often with indefinite force; as, —

*istō bonō ūtāre, use that advantage;*

*modestē vīvās, live temperately.*

C. PROHIBITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

276. The Subjunctive is used in the second and third persons singular and plural, with *nē*, to express a *prohibition*. Both Present and Perfect occur, and without appreciable difference of meaning; as, —

*nē repūgnētis, do not resist!*

*tū vērō istam nē reliqueris, don't leave her!*

*impiī nē plācāre audeant deōs, let not the impious dare to appease the gods!*

a. Neither of these constructions is frequent in classical prose.

b. A commoner method of expressing a prohibition in the second person is by the use of *nōlī* (*nōlīte*) with a following infinitive, or by *cavē* or *cavē nē* with the Subjunctive; as, —

*nōlī hōc facere, don't do this* (lit. *be unwilling to do*)!

*nōlīte mentīrī, do not lie!*

*cavē ignōscās, cavē tē misereat, do not forgive, do not pity!*

*cavē nē haec faciās, do not do this* (lit. *take care lest you do*)!

D. DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

277. The Deliberative Subjunctive is used in *questions and exclamations implying doubt, indignation, the impossibility of an act, obligation, or propriety*. The Present is

used referring to present time, the Imperfect referring to past. The negative is *nōn*. Thus:—

*quid faciam, what shall I do?*

*ego redeam, I go back!*

*hūc cēdāmus ! hūjus condiciōnēs audiāmus ! are we to bow to him ! are we to listen to his terms !*

*quid facerem, what was I to do ?*

*hunc ego nōn diligam, should I not cherish this man ?*

a. These Deliberative Questions are usually purely Rhetorical in character, and do not expect an answer.

#### E. CONCESSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

278. The Subjunctive is used to indicate something *as granted or conceded for the sake of argument*. The Present is used for present time, the Perfect regularly for past. The negative is *nē*. Thus:—

*sit hōc vērum, I grant that this is true (lit. let this be true) ;*

*nē sint in senectūte vīrēs, I grant there is not strength in old age.*

*fuerit malus cīvis aliis ; tibi quandō esse coepit, I grant that he was a bad citizen to others ; when did he begin to be so toward you ?*

#### OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

279. The Optative Subjunctive occurs in expressions of *wishing*. The negative is regularly *nē*.

1. The Present Tense, often accompanied by *utinam*, is used where the wish is conceived of *as possible*.

*dī istaec prohibeant, may the gods prevent that !*

*falsus utinam vātēs sim, oh that I may be a false prophet !*

*nē veniant, may they not come !*

2. The Imperfect expresses, in the form of a wish, the *regret that something is not so now*; the Pluperfect that something *was not so in the past*. The Imperfect and Pluperfect are regularly accompanied by *utinam*; as,—

*utinam istud ex animō dicerēs, would that you were saying that in earnest, (i.e. I regret that you are not saying it in earnest) ;*

*Pēlidēs utinam vītāsset Apollinis arcūs, would that Achilles had escaped the bow of Apollo ;*

*utinam nē nātus essem, would that I had not been born.*

POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

280. The Potential Subjunctive expresses *a possibility*. The negative is *nōn*. The following uses are to be noted:—

1. **The 'May' Potential.**—The Potential Subjunctive may designate *a mere possibility* (English auxiliary *may*). Both Present and Perfect occur, and without appreciable difference of meaning. Thus:—

*dīcat aliquis, some one may say;*

*dīxerit aliquis, some one may say.*

a. This construction is by no means frequent, and is confined mainly to a few phrases like those given as examples.

2. **'Should'-'Would' Potential.**—The Potential Subjunctive may represent something as *depending upon a condition expressed or understood* (English auxiliary *should, would*). Both Present and Perfect occur, and without appreciable difference of meaning. Thus:—

*fortūnam citius reperiās quam retineās, one would more quickly find fortune than keep it* (i.e. if one should make the trial);  
*crēdiderim, I should believe.*

a. Here belongs the use of *velim, mālim, nōlim*, as softened forms of statement for *volō, mālō, nōlō*. Thus:—

*velim mihi ignōscās, I wish you would forgive me;*

*nōlim putās mē jocārī, I don't want you to think I'm joking.*

b. When the condition is expressed, we get one of the regular types of Conditional Sentences (see § 303); as, —

*diēs dēficiat, sī cōner ēnumerāre causās, time would fail if I should attempt to enumerate the reasons.*

3. **'Can'-'Could' Potential.**—In the Present and Imperfect the Potential occurs in the second person singular (with *indefinite* force; § 356, 3) of a few verbs of *perceiving, seeing, thinking*, and the like; as,—

*videās, cernās, one can see, one can perceive;*

*crēderēs, one could believe;*

*vidērēs, cernerēs, one could see, perceive;*

*putārēs, one could imagine.*

4. The Imperfect and Pluperfect in the Apodosis of conditional sentences of the contrary-to-fact type (see § 304) are also Potential in character. By omission of the Protasis, such an Apodosis sometimes stands alone, particularly *vellem, nōllem, māllem*; as,—

*vellem id quidem, I should wish that* (i.e. were I bold enough).

## The Imperative.

281. The Imperative is used in *commands, admonitions, and entreaties* (negative *nē*) ; as, —

**ēgredere ex urbe**, *depart from the city* ;  
**mihi ignōsce**, *pardon me* ;  
**valē**, *farewell*.

1. The Present is the tense of the Imperative most commonly used, but the Future is employed —

a) Where there is a distinct reference to future time, especially in the apodosis of conditional sentences ; as, —

**rem vōbīs prōpōnam** ; **vōs eam penditōte**, *I will lay the matter before you ; do you (then) consider it* ;  
**si bene disputābit**, *tribuitō litteris Graecis*, *if he shall speak well, attribute it to Greek literature*.

b) In laws, treaties, wills, maxims, etc. ; as, —

**cōsulēs summum jūs habentō**, *the consuls shall have supreme power* ;  
**hominem mortuom in urbe nē sepelitō**, *no one shall bury a dead body in the city* ;  
**amicitia rēgī Antiochō cum populō Rōmānō hīs lēgibus et condiciōnibus estō**, *let there be friendship between Antiochus and the Roman people on the following terms and conditions* ;  
**quārtae estō partis Mārcus hērēs**, *let Marcus be heir to a fourth (of the property)* ;  
**ignōscoitō saepe alterī, numquam tibi**, *forgive your neighbor often, yourself never*.

2. Except with the Future Imperative the negative is not used in classical prose. Prohibitions are regularly expressed in other ways. See § 276, b.

3. Questions in the Indicative introduced by **quīn** (*why not?*) are often equivalent to an Imperative or to the Hortatory Subjunctive ; as, —  
**quīn abīs**, *go away!* (lit. *why don't you go away?*) ;  
**quīn vōcēm continētis**, *keep still!* (lit. *why don't you stop your voices?*) ;  
**quīn equōs cōnscedimus**, *let us mount our horses* (lit. *why do we not mount our horses?*).

## MOODS IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

## Clauses of Purpose.

282. i. Clauses of Purpose are introduced most commonly by **ut** (*utī*), **quō** (*that, in order that*), **nē** (*in order that not, lest*), and stand in the Subjunctive; as,—

*edimus, ut vīvāmus, we eat that we may live;*  
*adjūta mē quō hōc fiat facilius, help me, in order that this may be done more easily;*  
*portās clausit, nē quam oppidānī injūriam acciperent, he closed the gates, lest the townspeople should receive any injury.*

a. **Quō**, as a rule, is employed only when the purpose clause contains a comparative or a comparative idea. Occasional exceptions occur; as,—

*haec faciunt quō Chremētem absterreant, they are doing this in order to frighten Chremes.*

b. **Ut nē** is sometimes found instead of **nē**. Thus:—

*ut nē quid neglegenter agāmus, in order that we may not do anything carelessly.*

c. **Ut nōn** (not **nē**) is used where the negation belongs to some single word, instead of to the purpose clause as a whole. Thus:—

*ut nōn ējectus ad aliēnōs, sed invitātus ad tuōs videāre, that you may seem not driven out among strangers, but invited to your own friends.*

d. To say 'and that not' or 'or that not,' the Latin regularly uses **nēve** (*neu*); as,—

*ut ēārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu pontī nocērent, that the violence of these things might be lessened, and that they might not harm the bridge;*

*profūgit, nē caperētur nēve interficerētur, he fled, that he might not be captured or killed.*

e. But **neque** (for **nēve**) is sometimes used in a second Purpose Clause when **ut** stands in the first, and, after the Augustan era, even when the first clause is introduced by **nē**.

f. Purpose Clauses sometimes stand in apposition with a preceding noun or pronoun; as,—

*hāc causā, ut pācem habērent, on this account, that they might have peace.*

2. A Relative Pronoun (**qui**) or Adverb (**ubi**, **unde**, **quod**) is frequently used to introduce a Purpose Clause ; as, —

*Helvētiī lēgātōs mittunt, qui dicerent, the Helvetii sent envoys to say* (lit. *who should say*) ;

*haeo habui, dē senectūte quae dīcerem, I had these things to say about old age* ;

*nōn habēbat quod fugeret, he had no place to which to flee* (lit. *whither he might flee*) .

a. **Qui** in such clauses is equivalent to **ut is**, **ut ego**, etc.; **ubi** to **ut ibi**; **unde** to **ut inde**; **quod** to **ut eō**.

3. Relative clauses of purpose follow **dignus**, **indignus**, and **idōneus** ; as, —

*idōneus fuit nēmō quem imitārēre, there was no one suitable for you to imitate* (cf. *nēmō fuit quem imitārēre, there was no one for you to imitate*) ;

*dignus est qui aliquandō imperet, he is worthy to rule sometime*.

4. Purpose Clauses often depend upon something to be supplied from the context instead of upon the principal verb of their own sentences ; as, —

*ut haeo omnia omittam, abilius, to pass over all this, (I will say that) we departed.*

#### Clauses of Characteristic.

283. 1. A relative clause used to express a quality or characteristic of a general or indefinite antecedent is called a Clause of Characteristic, and usually stands in the Subjunctive ; as, —

*multa sunt, quae mentem acuant, there are many things which sharpen the wits.*

Clauses of Characteristic are opposed to those relative clauses which are used merely to state some fact about a definite antecedent, and which therefore take the Indicative ; as, —

*Catō, senex jūcundus, qui Sapiēns appellātus est, Cato, a delightful old man, who was called 'The Wise.'*

The Clause of Characteristic implies 'a person of the sort that does something' ; the Indicative relative clause implies 'a particular person who does something.'

2. Clauses of Characteristic are used especially after such expressions as, *est qui*; *sunt qui*; *nēmō est qui*; *nūllus est qui*; *ūnus est qui*; *sōlus est qui*; *quis est qui*; *is qui*; etc. Thus:—

*sunt qui dīcant, there are (some) who say;*  
*nēmō est qui putet, there is nobody who thinks;*  
*sapientia est ūna quae maestitiam pellat, philosophy is the only*  
*thing that drives away sorrow;*  
*quae cīvitās est quae nōn ēverti possit, what state is there that*  
*cannot be overthrown?*  
*nōn is sum qui improbōs laudem, I am not the sort of man that*  
*praises the wicked.*

a. Sometimes (very rarely in Cicero and Caesar) the clause of characteristic is used after comparatives; as,—

*nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quōd tēlum adigi posset,*  
*the enemy were not too far off for a dart to reach them (lit. further*  
*off than [a point] to which a dart could be cast).*

3. The Clause of Characteristic often conveys an accessory notion of cause (*since*) or opposition (*although*). Thus:—

a) Cause. The relative is then frequently accompanied by *ut* *quippe, utpote*; as,—

*ō fortūnātē adulēscēns, qui tuae virtūtis Homērum*  
*praecōnēm invēnerīs, O fortunate man, since you*  
*have found a Homer as the herald of your valor;*  
*ut qui optimō jūre eam prōvinciam obtinuerit, since*  
*he held that province by excellent right.*

b) Opposition:—

*egomet qui sērō Graecās litterās attigissem, tamen*  
*complūrēs diēs Athēnīs commorātus sum, I, al-*  
*though I had taken up Greek literature late in life,*  
*nevertheless tarried several days at Athens.*

4. Clauses of Characteristic may also be introduced by *quiIn = qui* (*quae, quod*) *nōn*; as,—

*nēmō est quiIn saepe audierit, there is no one who has not often*  
*heard;*

*nēmō fuit mīlitum quiIn vulnerārēstur, there was no one of the soldiers*  
*who was not wounded.*

5. Related to Clauses of Characteristic are also phrases of the type: *quod sciām, so far as I know*; *quod audierim, so far as I have heard.*

## Clauses of Result.

284. 1. Clauses of Result are usually introduced by **ut** (*that, so that*), negative **ut nōn** (*so that not*), and take the Subjunctive. The main clause often contains **tantus, tālis, tot, is** (= **tālis**), **tam, ita, sic, adeō**, or some similar word. Thus :—

**quis tam dēmēns est ut suā voluntātē maereat, who is so senseless as to mourn of his own volition?**

**Siciliam ita vāstāvit ut restitū in antiquum statum nōn possit, he has so ravaged Sicily that it cannot be restored to its former condition;**

**mōns altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpauci prohibēre possent, a very high mountain overhung, so that a very few could easily stop them;**

**nōn is es ut tē pudor umquam ā turpitūdine āvocārit, you are not so constituted that shame ever called you back from baseness.**

2. A Result Clause is often introduced by a Relative Pronoun or Adverb, **qui** (= **ut is**), **quōd** (= **ut eō**), etc. ; as,—

**nēmō est tam senex qui sē annum nōn putet posse vīvere, nobody is so old as not to think he will live a year;**

**habētis eum cōnsulem qui pārēre vestrīs dēcrētīs nōn dubitet, you have a consul such as does not hesitate to obey your decrees.**

a. These Relative Clauses of Result are closely related to the Clause of Characteristic, and sometimes it is difficult to distinguish the two constructions. It is best to class the relative clause as one of Characteristic, unless the result idea is clear and unmistakable.

3. Result clauses may also be introduced by **qui** = **ut nōn** ; as,—  
**nihil tam difficile est qui** **quaerendō invēstigārī possit, nothing is so difficult that it cannot be discovered by searching;**  
**nēmō est tam fortis qui** **reī novitātē perturbētur, no one is so steadfast as not to be thrown into confusion by a strange occurrence.**

4. Note the use of **quam ut** (sometimes **quam** alone) to denote Result after comparatives ; as,—

**urbs erat mūnitior quam ut primō impetū capi posset, the city was too strongly fortified to be taken at the first attack (lit. more strongly fortified than [so] that it could be taken, etc.).**

## Causal Clauses.

285. Causal clauses are introduced chiefly by the following particles :—

1. **Quod, quia, quoniam.**
2. **Cum.**
3. **Quandō.**

286. The use of moods is as follows :—

1. **Quod, quia, quoniam** take the Indicative when the reason is *that of the writer or speaker*; they take the Subjunctive when the reason is viewed *as that of another*. Thus :—

**Parthōs** timeō quod diffidō cōpīls nostrīs, *I fear the Parthians, because I distrust our troops.*

**Themistoclēs**, quia nōn tūtus erat, **Corcȳram** dēmigrāvit, *Themistocles, since he was not safe, moved to Corcyra.*

neque mē vixisse paenitet, quoniam bene vīxi, *I do not regret having lived, since I have lived well.*

**Sōcratēs** accūsātus est quod corrumperet juventūtem, *Socrates was arraigned on the ground that he was corrupting the young.* (Here the reason is not that of the writer but of the accuser. Hence the Subjunctive.)

**Haedui** Caesari grātiās ēgērunt, quod sē periculō liberāvisset, *the Haedui thanked Caesar because he had delivered them from danger.* (The reason of the Haedui.)

quoniam **Miltiadēs** dīcere nōn posset, verba prō eō fēcit **Ti-**  
**sagorās**, *since Miltiades could not speak, Tisagoras spoke for him.* (The reason of Tisagoras.)

**noctū** ambulābat **Themistoclēs**, quod somnum capere nōn pos-  
set, *Themistocles used to walk at night because (as he said) he couldn't sleep.*

a. Verbs of *thinking* and *saying* often stand in the Subjunctive in causal clauses as though the act of thinking or saying, and not the contents of the thought or language, constituted the reason. Thus :—

**Bellovacī** suum numerū nōn complēvērunt, quod sē  
suō nōmine cum Rōmānlī bellū gestūrōs dīce-  
rent, *the Bellovaci did not furnish their complement,*

*because they said they were going to wage war with the Romans on their own account.*

b. **Nōn quod, nōn quōd** (by attraction for *nōn eō quod*), *nōn quia, not that, not because*; and *nōn quod nōn, nōn quōd nōn, nōn quīn, not that . . . not; not because . . . not; not but that*, are usually employed merely to introduce a hypothetical reason, and hence take the Subjunctive; as,—

*id fēci, nōn quod vōs hanc dēfēnsiōnem dēsiderāre arbitrārer, sed ut omnēs intellegērent, this I did, not because I thought you needed this defense, but that all might perceive;*

/ **Crassō commendātiōnem nōn sum pollicitus, nōn quīn eam valitāram apud tē arbitrārer, sed egēre mihi commendātiōne nōn vidēbātur, I did not promise a recommendation to Crassus, not that I did not think it would have weight with you, but because he did not seem to me to need recommendation.**

c. But clauses introduced by *nōn quod, nōn quia* take the Indicative *if they state a fact*, even though that fact is denied to be the reason for something; as,—

*hōc ita sentiō, nōn quia sum ipse augur, sed quia sīc existimāre nōs est necesse, this I think, not because I am myself an augur (which I really am), but because it is necessary for us to think so.*

2. **Cum** causal regularly takes the Subjunctive; as,—

*quae cum ita sint, since this is so;*

*oum sis mortālis, quae mortālia sunt, cūrā, since you are mortal, care for what is mortal.*

a. Note the phrase *cum praesertim* (*praesertim cum*), *especially since*; as,—

*Haeduōs accūsat, praesertim cum eōrum precibus ad- ductus bellum suscēperit, he blamed the Haedui, especially since he had undertaken the war at their entreaties.*

3. **Quandō** (less frequent than the other causal particles) governs the Indicative; as,—

*id omittō, quandō vōbīs ita placet, I pass over that, since you so wish.*

Temporal Clauses introduced by Postquam, Ut, Ubi,  
Simul ac, etc.

287. I. Postquam (*posteaquam*), *after*; *ut*, *ubi*, *when*; *cum primum*, *simul*, *simul ac* (*simul atque*), *as soon as*, *when* used to refer to a single past act regularly take the Perfect Indicative; as, —

*Epaminōndās postquam audīvit vīcisse Boētiōs, 'Satis' inquit 'vīxi,' Epaminondas, after he heard that the Boeotians had conquered, said, 'I have lived enough;'*

*id ut audīvit, Corōyram dōmigrāvit, when he heard this, he moved to Corcyra;*

*Caesar cum primum potuit, ad exercitū contendit, Caesar, as soon as he could, hurried to the army;*

*ubi dō Caesaris adventū certiōrēs facti sunt, legatōs ad eum mittunt, when they were informed of Caesar's arrival, they sent envoys to him.*

a. The Historical Present may take the place of the Perfect in this construction.

2. To denote the repeated occurrence of an act, *ut*, *ubi*, *simul atque*, *as often as*, when following an historical tense, take the Pluperfect Indicative (compare §§ 288, 3; 302, 3); as, —

*ut quisque Verris animū offendērat, in lautumī statim conicībātur, whenever anybody had offended Verres's feelings, he was forthwith put in the stone-quarry;*

*hostēs, ubi aliquōs ēgredientēs cōspexerant, adoribantur, whenever the enemy had seen any men disembarking, they attacked them.*

a. In Livy and succeeding historians the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are used to denote this repeated occurrence of an act ('Indefinite Frequency'); as, —

*id ubi dixisset, hastam mittēbat, whenever he had said that, he hurled a spear.*

3. Occasionally the above conjunctions are followed by the Pluperfect Indicative of a single occurrence. This is regularly the case with *postquam* in expressions denoting a definite interval of time (days, months, years, etc.), such as *post tertium annum quam*, *trienniō postquam*. Thus: —

quīnque post diēbus quam Lūcā discesserat, ad Sardiniam vēnit,  
*five days after he had departed from Luca he came to Sardinia;*

postquam occupātae Syrācūsae erant, profectus est Carthā-  
*ginem, after Syracuse had been seized, he set out for Carthage.*

4. The Imperfect Indicative also sometimes occurs to denote a *continued state*; as,—

postquam Rōmam adventābant, senātus cōsultus est, *after they were on the march towards Rome, the Senate was consulted;*

postquam strūcti utrimque stābant, *after they had been drawn up on both sides and were in position.*

5. Rarely postquam, posteāquam, following the analogy of **cum**, take the Subjunctive, but only in the historical tenses; as,—

posteāquam sūmptuōsa fieri fūnera coepiſſent, lēge sublāta sunt,  
*after funerals had begun to be elaborate, they were done away with by law.*

### Temporal Clauses introduced by **Cum**.

#### *A. Cum* REFERRING TO THE PAST.

288. I. **Cum**, when referring to the past, takes—

*A.* The Indicative (Imperfect, Historical Perfect, or Pluperfect) to denote *the point of time at which* something occurs.

*B.* The Subjunctive (Imperfect or Pluperfect) to denote *the situation or circumstances under which* something occurs.

Examples:—

#### INDICATIVE.

an tum erās cōſul, cum in Palātiō mea domus ārdēbat, *or were you consul at the time when my house burned up on the Palatine?*  
 crēdō tum cum Sicilia flōrēbat opibus et cōpīis magna artificia  
*fuisse in eā Insulā, I believe that at the time when Sicily was powerful in riches and resources there were great crafts in that island;*

eō tempore pārūit cum pārēre necesse erat, *he obeyed at the time when it was necessary to obey;*

illō diē, cum est lāta lēx dē mē, *on that day when the law concerning me was passed.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

**Lysander cum vellet Lycurgi lēgēs commūtāre, prohibitus est,**  
*when Lysander desired to change the laws of Lycurgus, he was prevented;*

**Pythagorās cum in geōmetriā quiddam novi invēnisset, Mūsīs bovem immolāsse dicitur, when Pythagoras had discovered something new in geometry, he is said to have sacrificed an ox to the Muses.**

a. Note that the Indicative is much less frequent in such clauses than the Subjunctive, and is regularly confined to those cases where the main clause has *tum*, *eō dīs*, *eō annō*, *eō tem-pore* or some similar correlative of the *cum*. Sometimes it depends entirely upon the point of view of the writer whether he shall employ the Indicative or Subjunctive.

2. When the logical order of the clauses is inverted, we find *cum* with the Perfect Indicative or Historical Present, in the sense of *when, when suddenly*. The main clause in such cases often has *jam, vix, aegrē, nōndum*; as,—

**jam Gallī ex oppidō fugere apparābant, cum mātrēs familiae repente prōcurrērunt, the Gauls were already preparing to flee, when suddenly the matrons rushed forth (logically, the matrons rushed forth as the Gauls were preparing to flee);**

**Trēvirī Labiēnum adorīrī parābant, cum duās legiōnēs vēnisse cognōscunt, the Treviri were preparing to attack, when (suddenly) they learned that two legions had arrived.**

3. To denote a *recurring action* in the past, *cum* is followed by the Indicative, particularly of the Pluperfect (compare §§ 287, 2; 302, 3); as,—  
*cum ad aliquod oppidum vēnerat, eādem lecticā ad cubiculum dēferēbātur, whenever he had arrived at some town, he was (always) carried in the same litter to his room;*

*cum equitātus noster sē in agrōs ējēcerat, esedāriōs ex silvīs ēmittēbat, whenever our cavalry had advanced into the fields, he would send his charioteers out from the woods.*

a. Sometimes the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive is thus used; as,—  
*saepe cum aliquem vidēret minus bene vestitū, suum amiculum dedit, often, whenever he saw some one more poorly clothed, he gave him his own mantle;*  
*cum prōcucurrisserent, Numidae effugīebant, as often as they had advanced, the Numidians ran away.*

This construction is frequent in Livy and subsequent historians.

B. **Cum** REFERRING TO THE PRESENT OR FUTURE.

289. When **cum** refers to the Present or Future it regularly takes the Indicative; as, —

*tum tua rēs agitur, pariēs cum proximus ardēt, your own interests are at stake when your neighbor's house is burning;*  
*cum vidēbis, tum sciēs, when you see, then you will know.*

a. The Indicative of the Present or Future may denote also a *recurring action*; as, —

*stabilitās amicitiae cōfirmāri potest, cum hominēs cupidinibus imperābunt, firm friendship can be established whenever men shall control their desires.*

## C. OTHER USES OF Cum.

290. i. **Cum** Explicative. **Cum**, with the Indicative, is sometimes used to indicate the identity of one act with another; as, —

*cum tacent, clāmant, their silence is a shout (lit. when they are silent, they shout).*

2. **Cum . . . tum.** When **cum . . . tum** mean *both . . . and*, the **cum**-clause is in the Indicative; but when **cum** has the force of *while, though*, it may take the Subjunctive; as, —

*cum tē semper dīlēxerim, tum tuīs factīs incēnsus sum, while I have always loved you, at the same time I am incensed at your conduct.*

Clauses introduced by **Antequam** and **Priusquam**.

## A. WITH THE INDICATIVE.

291. **Antequam** and **priusquam** (often written **ante . . . quam**, **prius . . . quam**) take the Indicative to denote *an actual fact*.

1. Sometimes the Present or Future Perfect; as, —

*prius respondēs quam rogō, you answer before I ask;*  
*nihil contrā disputābō priusquam dīixerit, I will say nothing in opposition, before he speaks.*

2. Sometimes the Perfect, especially after negative clauses; as, —

*nōn prius jugulandī finis fuit, quam Sulla omnēs suōs dīvitilis explēvit, there was no end of murder until Sulla satisfied all his henchmen with wealth.*

## B. WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

292. *Antequam* and *priusquam* take the Subjunctive to denote an act as *anticipated*.

I. Thus the Subjunctive may denote —

a) An act in preparation for which the main act takes place ; as, —  
*priusquam dīmicārent, foedus Ictum est*, i.e. *in anticipation of the fight, a treaty was struck.*

By an extension of this usage, the Subjunctive is sometimes used of *general truths*, where the anticipatory notion has faded out ; as, —  
*tempestās minātur antequam surgat, the tempest threatens before it rises.*

b) An act anticipated and forestalled ; as, —

*priusquam tēlum adicī posset, omnis aciēs terga vertit,*  
*before a spear could be hurled, the whole army fled.*

c) An act anticipated and deprecated ; as, —

*animum omittunt priusquam locō dēmigrent, they die rather than quit their post.*

2. After historical tenses the Imperfect Subjunctive is used, especially by post-Augustan writers, where the notion of anticipation has practically vanished ; as, —

*sōl antequam sē abderet fugientem vīdit Antōnium, the sun before it set saw Antony fleeing.*

Clauses introduced by *Dum*, *Dōnec*, *Quoad*.

293. I. *Dum*, *while*, regularly takes the Indicative of the Historical Present ; as, —

*Alexander, dum inter prīmōrēs pugnat, sagittā Ictus est, Alexander, while he was fighting in the van, was struck by an arrow ; dum haec geruntur, in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit, while these things were being done, he arrived in the territory of the Venelli.*

II. *Dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, *as long as*, take the Indicative ; as, —

*dum anima est, spēs est, as long as there is life, there is hope ; Lacedaemoniōrum gēns fortis fuit, dum Lycurgi lēgēs vigēbant, the race of the Lacedaemonians was powerful, as long as the laws of Lycurgus were in force ;*

*Catō, quoad vīxit, virtūtum laude crēvit, Cato, as long as he lived, increased in the fame of his virtues.*

III. **Dum, dōnec, and quoad, until, take :—**

1. The Indicative, to denote *an actual event* ; as, —  
**dōnec rediit, fuit silentium, there was silence till he came ;**  
**ferrum in corpore retinuit, quoad renūtiātūm est Boeōtiōs**  
*vīcisse, he kept the iron in his body until word was brought that*  
*the Boeotians had conquered.*

a. In Livy and subsequent historians **dum** and **dōnec** in this sense often  
 take the Subjunctive instead of the Indicative ; as, —  
**trepidatiōnis aliquantum ȕdēbant dōnec timor quiētem**  
*fēcisset, they showed some trepidation, until fear produced quiet.*

2. The Subjunctive, to denote *anticipation* or *expectancy* ; as, —  
**exspectāvit Caesar dum nāvēs conveniērent, Caesar waited for the**  
*ships to assemble ;*  
**dum hostēs veniant, morābor, I shall wait for the enemy to come.**

#### Substantive Clauses.

294. A Substantive Clause is one which as a whole  
 serves as the Subject or Object of a verb, or stands in some  
 other case relation.

##### A. Substantive Clauses Developed from the Volitive.

295. Substantive Clauses Developed from the Volitive  
 are used with the following classes of verbs :—

i. With verbs signifying *to admonish, request, command, urge, persuade, induce*,<sup>1</sup> etc. (conjunctions *ut, nē, or ut nē*) ; as, —  
**postulō ut fiat, I demand that it be done** (dependent form of the  
*Jussive fiat, let it be done!);*  
**ōrat, nē abeās, he begs that you will not go away ;**  
**militēs cohortātūs est ut hostiūm impetūm sustinērent, he ex-**  
*horted his soldiers to withstand the attack of the enemy ;*  
**Helvētīs persuāsīt ut exirent, he persuaded the Helvetii to march**  
*forth.*

a. *Jubeō, command, order*, regularly takes the Infinitive.

<sup>1</sup> Especially: **moneō, admoneō; rogō, ȕrō, petō, postulō, precor,**  
**flāgitō; mandō, imperō, praecipiō; suādeō, hortor, cohortor; per-**  
**suādeō, impellō.**

2. With verbs signifying *to grant, concede, permit, allow*,<sup>1</sup> etc. (conjunction *ut*) ; as, —

*hūic concēdō ut ea praetereat, I allow him to pass that by* (dependent form of the Jussive *ea praetereat, let him pass that by!*) ; *cōsulī permīssum est ut duās legiōnēs scriberet, the consul was permitted to enroll two legions.*

3. With verbs of *hindering, preventing*,<sup>2</sup> etc. (conjunctions *nē, quōminus, quīn*) ; as, —

*nē lūstrum perficeret, mors prohibuit, death prevented him from finishing the lustrum* (dependent form after past tense of *nē lūstrum perficiat, let him not finish, etc.*) ; *prohibuit quōminus in ūnum colrent, he prevented them from coming together* ; *nec quīn ērumperet, prohibērī poterat, nor could he be prevented from rushing forth.*

a. *Quīn* is used only when the verb of *hindering* is accompanied by a negative, or stands in a question implying a negative ; it is not necessarily used even then.

4. With verbs of *deciding, resolving*,<sup>3</sup> etc. (conjunctions *ut, nē, or ut nē*) ; as, —

*cōstitueram ut prīdiē īdūs Aquīnī manērem, I had decided to remain at Aquinum on the 12th* ; *dēcrēvit senātus ut Opīnius vidēret, the Senate decreed that Opīnius should see to it* ; *convēnit ut ūnis castrīs miscērentur, it was agreed that they should be united in one camp.*

5. With verbs of *striving*,<sup>4</sup> etc. (conjunctions *ut, nē, or ut nē*) ; as, — *fac ut eum exōrēs, see to it that you prevail upon him!* *cūrā ut vir sis, see to it that you are a man!* *labōrābat ut reliquās cīvitātēs adjungeret, he was striving to join the remaining states to him.*

a. *Cōnor, try*, always takes the Infinitive.

NOTE. — Verbs of all the above classes also admit the Infinitive, especially in poetry.

<sup>1</sup> Especially: *permittō, concēdō, nōn patiōr.*

<sup>2</sup> Especially: *prohibēō, impediō, dēterreō.*

<sup>3</sup> Especially: *cōstituō, dēcernō, cēnseō, placuit, convenit, paciscor.*

<sup>4</sup> Especially: *labōrō, dō operam, id agō, contendō, impetrō.*

6. With a few other expressions, such as **necessē est**, **reliquum est**, **sequitur**, **licet**, **oportet**; as,—

**reliquum est ut doceam**, *it remains for me to show*;  
**licet redeās**, *you may return*;  
**oportet loquāmūr**, *we must speak*.

On the absence of **ut** with **licet** and **oportet**, see paragraph 8.

7. Here also belong phrases of the type: **nūlla causa est cūr**, **quiñ**; **nōn est cūr**, *etc.*; **nihil est cūr**, *etc.*; as,—

**nūlla causa est cūr timeam**, *there is no reason why I should fear* (originally Deliberative: *why should I fear? There's no reason*); **nihil est quiñ dīcam**, *there is no reason why I should not say*.

8. Many of the above classes of verbs at times take the simple Subjunctive without **ut**. In such cases we must not recognize any omission of **ut**, but simply an earlier form of expression which existed before the **ut**-clause arose. This is regularly the case with **necessē est**, **licet**, and **oportet**; see 6. Other examples are:—

**eōs moneō dēsinant**, *I warn them to stop*;  
**huic imperat adeat cīvitātēs**, *he orders him to visit the states*.

### B. Substantive Clauses Developed from the Optative.

**296.** Substantive Clauses Developed from the Optative occur:—

1. With verbs of *wishing*, *desiring*, especially **cupiō**, **optō**, **volō**, **mālō** (conjunctions **ut**, **nē**, **ut nē**); as,—

**optō ut in hōc jūdiciō nēmō improbus reperiātur**, *I hope that in this court no bad man may be found* (here **ut reperiātur** represents a simple optative of direct statement, *viz. reperiātur, may no bad man be found!*);

**cupiō nē veniat**, *I desire that he may not come*.

a. The simple Subjunctive (without **ut**) sometimes occurs with verbs of this class. (See § 295, 8.) Examples are: **velim scribās**, *I wish you would write*; **vellem scripsisset**, *I wish he had written*.

2. With expressions of *fearing* (**timeō**, **metuō**, **vereor**, *etc.*). Here **nē** means *that*, *lest*, and **ut** means *that not*; as,—

**timeō nē veniat**, *I fear that he will come* (originally: *may he not come!* *I'm afraid [he will!]*);

**timeō ut veniat**, *I fear that he will not come* (originally: *may he come!* *I'm afraid [he won't!]*).

a. Nē nōn sometimes occurs instead of *ut*, especially where the verb of fearing has a negative, or where the writer desires to emphasize some particular word in the dependent clause; as, —

nōn vereor nē hōc nōn flat, *I am not afraid that this will not happen;*

vereor nē exercitum firmum habēre nōn possit, *I fear that he is unable (nōn possit) to have a strong army.*

#### C. Substantive Clauses of Result.

297. Substantive Clauses of Result (introduced by *ut*, *ut nōn*) are a development of pure Result clauses, and occur with the following classes of words: —

1. As object clauses after verbs of *doing, accomplishing* (especially *faciō, efficiō, cōficiō*). Thus: —

*gravitās morbi facit ut medicinā egeāmus, the severity of disease makes us need medicine.*

2. As the subject of several impersonal verbs, particularly *fit, effici-  
tur, accidit, ēvenit, contingit, accēdit, fieri potest, fore, sequitur,  
relinquitur*. Thus: —

*ex quō efficitur, ut voluptās nōn sit summum bonum, from which it follows that pleasure is not the greatest good;*

*ita fit, ut nēmō esse possit beātus, thus it happens that no one can be happy;*

*accēdēbat ut nāvēs deessent, another thing was the lack of ships (lit. it was added that ships were lacking).*

3. As predicate or appositive after expressions like *jūs est, mōs est, cōsuētūdō est*; also after neuter pronouns, *hōc, illud, etc.* Thus: —

*est mōs hominum ut nōlint eundem plūribus rēbus excellere, it is the way of men not to wish the same person to excel in many things.*

#### D. Substantive Clauses Introduced by *Quīn*.

298. Substantive Clauses introduced by *quīn* (used sometimes as subject, sometimes as object) occur after negative and interrogative expressions of *doubt, omission*, and the like, particularly after *nōn dubitō, I do not doubt; quis*

**dubitat, who doubts? ; nōn (haud) dubium est, there is no doubt.** The mood is the Subjunctive. Examples :—

**quis dubitat quin in virtute dīvitiae sint, who doubts that in virtue there are riches?**

**nōn dubium erat quin venturus esset, there was no doubt that he was about to come.**

a. In Nepos, Livy, and post-Augustan writers an Infinitive sometimes takes the place of the *quin*-clause after **nōn dubitō**; as,—

**nōn dubitāmus inventōs esse, we do not doubt that men were found.**

b. **Nōn dubitō, I do not hesitate**, is regularly followed by the Infinitive, though sometimes by a *quin*-clause.

#### E. Substantive Clauses Introduced by *Quod*.

**299. 1. Quod, the fact that, that, introduces Substantive Clauses in the Indicative.** This construction occurs especially —

a) In apposition with a preceding demonstrative, as **hōc, id, illud, illa, ex eō, inde, etc.** Thus :—

**illud est admiratiōne dignum, quod captivōs retinendōs cōnsuit, this is especially worthy of admiration, that he thought the prisoners ought to be kept;**

**hōc tūdō praestāmus vel maximē ferīs, quod colloquimur inter nōs, in this one respect we are especially superior to the beasts, that we talk with each other.**

b) After **bene fit, bene accidit, male fit, bene facere, mīror, etc.**; as,—

**bene mihi accidit, quod mittor ad mortem, it is well for me that I am sent to death;**

**bene fēcisti quod mānsisti, you did well in remaining.**

2. **Quod** at the beginning of the sentence sometimes has the force of *as regards the fact that*. Thus :—

**quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcō, id mei mūniendī causā faciō, as regards the fact that I am transporting a multitude of Germans into Gaul, I am doing it for the sake of strengthening myself;**

**quod mē Agamemnona aemulārī putās, falleris, as regards your thinking that I emulate Agamemnon, you are mistaken.**

## F. Indirect Questions.

300. 1. Indirect Questions are Substantive Clauses used after verbs of *asking, inquiring, telling*, and the like. They take their verb in the Subjunctive.<sup>1</sup> Like Direct Questions (see § 162) they may be introduced —

a) By Interrogative Pronouns or Adverbs ; as, —

*dic mihi ubi fueris, quid feceris, tell me where you were, what you did;*

*oculis iudicari non potest in utram partem fluat Arar, it cannot be determined by the eye in which direction the Arar flows;*

*bis bina quot essent, nesciebat, he did not know how many two times two were.*

NOTE. — Care should be taken to distinguish Indirect Questions from Relative Clauses. The difference between the two appears clearly in the following : —

*effugere nemō id potest quod futurum est, no one can escape what is destined to come to pass ; but*

*saepe autem ne utile quidem est scire quid futurum sit, but often it is not even useful to know what is coming to pass.*

b) By *num* or *-ne*, without distinction of meaning ; as, —

*Epaminondas quaesivit num salvus esset clipeus, or salvusne esset clipeus, Epaminondas asked whether his shield was safe ;*

*disputatur num interire virtus in homine possit, the question is raised whether virtue can die in a man ;*

*ex Socrate quaestum est nonne Archelaeum beatum putaret, the question was asked of Socrates whether he did not think Archelaus happy.*

NOTE. — *Nonne* in Indirect Questions occurs only after *quaerō*, as in the last example above.

2. Often the Indirect Question represents a Deliberative Subjunctive of the direct discourse ; as, —

*nescio quid faciam, I do not know what to do. (Direct: quid faciam, what shall I do!)*

<sup>1</sup> Exclamations, also, upon becoming indirect, take the Subjunctive, as *considera quam variae sint hominum cupidines, consider how varied are the desires of men.* (Direct: *quam variae sunt hominum cupidines!*)

3. After verbs of *expectation* and *endeavor* (*exspectō*, *cōnor*, *experior*, *temptō*) we sometimes find an Indirect Question introduced by *si* ; as, —

*cōnāntur si perrumpere possint, they try whether they can break through.*

a. Sometimes the governing verb is omitted ; as, —

*pergit ad proximam spēluncam si forte eō vēstigia ferrent, he proceeded to the nearest cave (to see) if the tracks led thither.*

4. Indirect Double Questions are introduced in the main by the same particles as direct double questions (§ 162, 4) ; *viz.* : —

utrum . . . an ;

-ne . . . . an ;

— . . . . an ;

— . . . . ne.

Examples : —

*quaerō utrum vērum an falsum sit,*  
*quaerō vērumne an falsum sit,*  
*quaerō vērum an falsum sit,*  
*quaerō vērum falsumne sit,*

} *I ask whether it is true or false?*

a. 'Or not' in the second member of the double question is ordinarily expressed by *necne*, less frequently by *an nōn* ; as, —

*di utrum sint necne, quaeritur, it is asked whether there are gods or not.*

5. *Haud sciō an, nesciō an*, by omission of the first member of the double question, occur with the Subjunctive in the sense : *I am inclined to think, probably, perhaps* ; as, —

*haud sciō an hōc vērum sit, I am inclined to think this is true.*

6. In early Latin and in poetry the Indicative is sometimes used in Indirect Questions.

#### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

301. Conditional Sentences are compound sentences (§ 164) consisting of two parts, the *Protasis* (or *condition*), usually introduced by *si*, *nisi*, or *sin*, and the *Apodosis* (or *conclusion*). There are the following types of Conditional Sentences : —

**First Type.—Nothing Implied as to the Reality of the Supposed Case.**

302. 1. Here we regularly have the Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis. Any tense may be used; as,—

*si hōc orēdis, errās, if you believe this, you are mistaken;*  
*nātūram si sequēmur, numquam aberrābimus, if we follow*  
*Nature, we shall never go astray;*  
*si hōc dixisti, errāsti, if you said this, you were in error.*

2. Sometimes the Protasis takes the Indefinite Second Person Singular (§ 356, 3) of the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, with the force of the Indicative; as,—

*memoria minuitur, nisi eam exerceās, memory is impaired unless you exercise it.*

3. Here belong also those conditional sentences in which the Protasis denotes a repeated action (compare §§ 287, 2; 288, 3); as,—

*si quis equitum dēciderat, peditēs circumsistēbant, if any one of the horsemen fell, the foot-soldiers gathered about him.*

a. Instead of the Indicative, Livy and subsequent writers employ the Subjunctive of the Historical tenses in the Protasis to denote repeated action; as,—

*si dicendō quis diem eximeret, if (ever) anybody consumed a day in pleading; si quandō adsidēret, if ever he sat by.*

4. Where the sense demands it, the Apodosis in conditional sentences of the First Type may be an Imperative or one of the Independent Subjunctives (Hortatory, Deliberative, etc.); as,—

*si hōc orēditis, tacēte, if you believe this, be silent;*  
*si hōc orēdimus, taceāmus, if we believe this, let us keep silent.*

**Second Type. — 'Should'-'Would' Conditions.**

303. Here we regularly have the Subjunctive (of the Present or Perfect tense) in both Protasis and Apodosis; as,—

*si hōc dīcās, errēs, } if you should say this, you would be mis-*  
*si hōc dixeris, errāveris, } taken.*

*si velim Hannibalis proelia omnia dēscribēre, diēs mē dēficiat,*  
*if I should wish to describe all the battles of Hannibal, time would fail me;*

mentiar, si negem, *I should lie, if I should deny it;*  
 haec si tecum patria loquatur, nonne impetrare debet, *if your  
 country should plead thus with you, would she not deserve to  
 obtain her request?*

a. The Subjunctive in the Apodosis of conditional sentences of this type is of the Potential variety.

b. Sometimes we find the Indicative in the Apodosis of sentences of the Second Type, where the writer wishes to assert the accomplishment of a result more positively; as,—

aliter si faciat, nullam habet auctoritatem, *if he should do  
 otherwise, he has no authority.*

**Third Type.—Supposed Case Represented as Contrary to Fact.**

**304.** 1. Here we regularly have the Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis, the Imperfect referring to *present time*, and the Pluperfect referring to *past*; as,—

si amici mei adessent, opis non indigem, *if my friends were here,  
 I should not lack assistance;*

si hoc dixisset, errasset, *if you had said this, you would have  
 erred;*

sapientia non expeteretur, si nihil efficeret, *philosophy would not  
 be desired, if it accomplished nothing;*

cōnsilium, ratiō, sententia nisi essent in senibus, non summum  
 cōnsilium majōres nostri appellasset senātum, *unless deli-  
 beration, reason, and wisdom existed in old men, our ances-  
 tors would not have called their highest deliberative body a  
 senate.*

2. Sometimes the Imperfect Subjunctive is found referring to the past, especially to denote *a continued act, or a state of things still existing*; as,—

Laelius, Furius, Catō, si nihil litteris adjuvarentur, numquam sē  
 ad eārum studium contulissent, *Laelius, Furius, and Cato  
 would never have devoted themselves to the study of letters,  
 unless they had been (constantly) helped by them;*

num igitur si ad centēsimum annum vixisset, senectūs eum  
 suae paenitēret, *if he had lived to his hundredth year,  
 would he have regretted (and now be regretting) his old  
 age?*

3. The Apodosis in conditional sentences of this type sometimes stands in the Indicative (Imperfect, Perfect, or Pluperfect), *viz.* —

a) Frequently in expressions of *ability, obligation, or necessity*; as, —

*nisi fēlicitās in sōcordiam vertisset, exuere jugum potuērunt, unless their prosperity had turned to folly, they could have thrown off the yoke;*

NOTE. — In sentences of this type, however, it is not the *possibility* that is represented as contrary-to-fact, but something to be supplied in thought from the context. Thus in the foregoing sentence the logical apodosis is *et exuissent* understood (*and they would have shaken it off*). When the *possibility* itself is conditioned, the Subjunctive is used.

*eum patris locō colere dēbēbās, si ulla in tē pietās esset, you ought to revere him as a father, if you had any sense of devotion.*

b) With both the Periphrastic Conjugations; as, —

*si Pompejus occīsus esset, fūstisne ad arma itūr, if Pompey had been slain, would you have proceeded to arms?*

*si finum diem morātī essētis, moriendum omnibus fuit, if you had delayed one day, you would all have had to die.*

#### Protasis expressed without *Si*.

305. 1. The Protasis is not always expressed by a clause with *si*, but may be implied in a word, a phrase, or merely by the context; as, —

*aliōquī haec nōn scriberentur, otherwise (i.e. if matters were otherwise) these things would not be written;*  
*nōn potestis, voluntāte omnia dīrigentēs, retinēre virtūtem, you cannot retain virtue, if you direct everything with reference to pleasure.*

2. Sometimes an Imperative, or a Jussive Subjunctive, serves as Protasis. Thus: —

*orās petitō, dabitur, if you ask to-morrow, it shall be given you (lit. ask to-morrow, etc.);*

*haec reputent, vidēbunt, if they consider this, they will see (lit. let them consider, etc.);*

*rogēs Aristōnem, respondeat, if you should ask Aristo, he would answer.*

Use of *Nisi*, *Sī Nōn*, *Sīn*.

306. 1. **Nisi**, *unless*, negatives the entire protasis; **sī nōn** negatives a single word; as,—

*ferreus essem, nisi tē amārem, I should be hard-hearted unless I loved you; but—*

*ferreus essem, sī tē nōn amārem, I should be hard-hearted if I did NOT love you.*

In the first example, it is the notion of *loving you* that is negated, in the second, the notion of *loving*.

2. **Sī nōn** (*sī minus*) is regularly employed:—

a) When an apodosis with *at*, *tamen*, *certē* follows; as,—

*dolōrem sī nōn potuerō frangere, tamen occultābō, if I cannot crush my sorrow, yet I will hide it.*

b) When an affirmative protasis is repeated in negative form; as,—

*sī fēceris, magnam habēbō grātiam; sī nōn fēceris, ignōscam, if you do it, I shall be deeply grateful; if you do not do it, I shall pardon you.*

a. But if the verb is omitted in the repetition, only *sī minus* or *sīn minus* is admissible; as,—

*hōc sī assecūtus sum, gaudēbō; sī minus, mē cōnsōlor, if I have attained this, I am glad; if not, I console myself.*

3. **Sīn**. Where one protasis is followed by another opposed in meaning, but affirmative in form, the second is introduced by *sīn*; as,—

*hunc mihi timōrem ēripe; sī vērus est, nē opprimar, sīn falsus, ut timēre dēsinam, relieve me of this fear; if it is well founded, that I may not be destroyed; but if it is groundless, that I may cease to fear.*

4. **Nisi** has a fondness for combining with negatives (*nōn*, *nēmō*, *nihil*); as,—

*nihil cōgitāvit nisi caedem, he had no thought but murder.*

a. **Nōn** and **nisi** are always separated in the best Latinity.

5. **Nisi forte**, *nisi vērō*, *nisi sī*, *unless perchance, unless indeed* (often with ironical force), take the Indicative; as,—

*nisi vērō, quia perfecta rēs nōn est, nōn vidētur pūnienda, unless indeed, because an act is not consummated, it does not seem to merit punishment.*

**Conditional Clauses of Comparison.**

307. 1. Conditional Clauses of Comparison are introduced by the particles, *ac si*, *ut si*, *quasi*, *quam si*, *tamquam si*, *velut si*, or simply by *velut* or *tamquam*. They stand in the Subjunctive mood and regularly involve an ellipsis (see § 374, 1), as indicated in the following examples:—

*tantus patrēs metus cēpit, velut si jam ad portās hostis esset, as great fear seized the senators as (would have seized them) if the enemy were already at the gates;*  
*sed quid ego hīs testimoniis tūtor quasi rēs dubia aut obscurā sit, but why do I use these witnesses, as (I should do) if the matter were doubtful or obscure;*  
*serviam tibi tamquam si ēmeris mē argentō, I will serve you as though you had bought me for money.*

2. Note that in sentences of this kind the Latin observes the regular principles for the Sequence of Tenses. Thus after principal tenses the Latin uses the Present and Perfect (as in the second and third examples), where the English uses the Past and the Past Perfect.

**Concessive Clauses.**

308. The term 'Concessive' is best restricted to those clauses developed from the Jussive Subjunctive which have the force of *granted that*, *etc.*; as,—

*sit fūr, sit sacrilegus, at est bonus imperātor, granted that he is a thief and a robber, yet he is a good commander;*  
*ut hōc vērum sit, granted that this is true;*  
*nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est, granted that pain is not the greatest evil, yet it is certainly an evil.*

**Adversative Clauses with *quamvis*, *quamquam*, *etc.***

309. Clauses introduced by *quamvis*, *quamquam*, *etsi*, *tametsi*, *cum*, *although*, while often classed as 'Concessive,' are yet essentially different from genuine Concessive clauses. As a rule, they do not *grant* or *concede* anything, but rather state that something is true *in spite of*

*something else.* They accordingly emphasize the adversative idea, and are properly Subordinate Adversative Clauses. The different particles used to introduce these clauses have different meanings and take different constructions, as follows:—

1. **Quamvis**, *however much, although*, does not introduce a statement of fact, but represents an act merely as conceived. It is followed by the Subjunctive, usually of the present tense; as,—

**hominēs quamvis in turbidīs rēbus sint, tamen interdum animis relaxantur,** *in however stirring events men may engage, yet at times they relax their energies;*

**nōn est potestās opitulandī rēi pūblicae quamvis ea premātur periculis,** *there is no opportunity to succor the state, though it be beset by dangers.*

2. **Quamquam, etsī, tametsī, although**, introduce a statement of fact, and are followed by the Indicative (of any tense); as,—

**quamquam omnis virtūs nōs allicit, tamen jūstitia id maximē efficit,** *although all virtue attracts us, yet justice does so especially;*

**Caesar, etsī nōndum cōnsilium hostium cognōverat, tamen id quod accidit suspicābatur,** *Caesar, though he did not yet know the plans of the enemy, yet was suspecting what actually occurred.*

a. **Etsī, although**, must be distinguished from **etsī, even if**. The latter is a conditional particle and takes any of the constructions admissible for **si**. (See §§ 302-304.)

3. **Cum, although**, is followed by the Subjunctive; as,—

**Atticus honōrēs nōn petiit, cum ei patērent,** *Atticus did not seek honors, though they were open to him.*

4. **Licet** sometimes loses its verbal force (see § 295, 6) and sinks to the level of a conjunction with the force of *although*. It takes the Subjunctive, Present or Perfect; as,—

**licet omnēs terrōrēs impendeant, succurram,** *though all terrors hang over me, (yet) I will lend aid.*

5. **Quamquam**, with the force *and yet*, is often used to introduce principal clauses; as,—

**quamquam quid loquor, and yet why do I speak?**

6. In post-Augustan writers **quamquam** is freely construed with the Subjunctive, while **quamvis** is often used to introduce statements of fact, and takes either the Indicative or the Subjunctive. Thus:—

**quamquam** *movērētur his vōcibus*, *although he was moved by these words* ;  
**quamvis** *multī opinārentur*, *though many thought* ;  
**quamvis** *infēstō animō pervēnerās*, *though you had come with hostile intent*.

**Clauses with *Dum*, *Modo*, *Dummodo*, denoting a Wish or a Proviso.**

310. These particles are followed by the Subjunctive (negative **nē**) and have two distinct uses:—

I. They are used to introduce clauses *embodying a wish entertained by the subject of the leading verb*; as, —

**multī honesta neglegunt dummodo potentiam cōsequantur**,  
*many neglect honor in their desire to obtain power (if only they may attain)* ;  
**omnia postposul, dum praeceptis patris pārērem**, *I made everything else secondary, in my desire to obey the injunctions of my father* ;  
**nīl obstat tibi, dum nē sit dītor alter**, *nothing hinders you in your desire that your neighbor may not be richer than you*.

II. They are used to express a *proviso* ('*provided that*'); as, —

**ōderint, dum metuant**, *let them hate, provided they fear* ;  
**manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium et industria**,  
*old men retain their faculties, provided only they retain their interest and vigor* ;  
**nūbant, dum nē dōs flat comes**, *let them marry, provided no dowry goes with it*.

**Relative Clauses.**

311. Relative Clauses are introduced by Relative Pronouns, Adjectives, or Adverbs.

312. I. Relative clauses usually stand in the Indicative Mood, especially clauses introduced by those General Relatives which are doubled or have the suffix **-cunque**; as, —

quidquid id est, timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentēs, whatever it is, I fear the Greeks even when they offer gifts;  
 quidquid oritur, quāleculque est, causam ā nātūrā habet, whatever comes into being, of whatever sort it is, has its primal cause in Nature.

2. Any simple Relative may introduce a conditional sentence of any of the three types mentioned in §§ 302-304; as,—

qui hōc dicit, errat, he who says this is mistaken (First Type);  
 qui hōc dīcat, errat, he would be mistaken who should say this (Second Type);  
 qui hōc dīxisset, errāsset, the man who had said this would have been mistaken.

### INDIRECT DISCOURSE (*ŌRĀTIŌ OBLĪQUA*).

313. When the language or thought of any person is reproduced without change, that is called Direct Discourse (*Ōrātiō Rēcta*); as, *Caesar said, 'The die is cast.'* When, on the other hand, one's language or thought is made to depend upon a verb of *saying, thinking, etc.*, that is called Indirect Discourse (*Ōrātiō Oblīqua*); as, *Caesar said that the die was cast; Caesar thought that his troops were victorious.*

a. For the verbs most frequently employed to introduce Indirect Discourse, see § 331.

### MOODS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

#### Declarative Sentences.

314. 1. Declarative Sentences upon becoming Indirect change their main clause to the Infinitive with Subject Accusative, while all subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive; as,—

*Rēgulus dīxit quam dīū jūre jūrandō hostiū tenērētur nōn esse sē senātōrem, Regulus said that as long as he was held by his pledge to the enemy he was not a senator. (Direct: quam dīū teneor nōn sum senātor.)*

2. The verb of *saying*, *thinking*, etc., is sometimes to be inferred from the context<sup>4</sup>; as,—

**tum Rōmulus lēgātōs circā vicinās gentēs misit qui societātem cōnūbiumque peterent: urbēs quoque, ut cōterā, ex infimō nāscī,** then *Romulus sent envoys around among the neighboring tribes, to ask for alliance and the right of intermarriage, (saying that) cities, like everything else, start from a modest beginning.*

3. Subordinate clauses which contain an explanatory statement of the writer and so are not properly a part of the Indirect Discourse, or which emphasize the fact stated, take the Indicative; as,—

**nūntiātūm est Ariovistūm ad occupāndūm Vesontiōnēm, quod est oppidūm māximūm Sēquānōrum, contendēre,** *it was reported that Ariovistus was hastening to seize Vesontio, which is the largest town of the Sequani.*

4. Sometimes a subordinate clause is such only in its external form, and in sense is principal. It then takes the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. This occurs especially in case of relative clauses, where *qui* is equivalent to *et hic, nam hic, etc.*; as,—

**dixit urbēm Athēniēnūm prōpugnāculūm oppositūm esse barbaris, apud quam jam bis classēs rēglās fēcissee naufragium,** *he said the city of the Athenians had been set against the barbarians like a bulwark, near which (= and near it) the fleets of the King had twice met disaster.*

5. The Subject Accusative of the Infinitive is sometimes omitted when it refers to the same person as the subject of the leading verb, or can easily be supplied from the context; as,—

**cum id nescīre Māgō dīceret, when Mago said he did not know this (for sē nescīre).**

### Interrogative Sentences.

315. 1. Real questions of the Direct Discourse, upon becoming indirect, are regularly put in the Subjunctive; as,—

**Ariovistus Caesarī respondit: sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populūm Rōmānum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possētiōnēs venīret,** *Ariovistus replied to Caesar that he*

*had come into Gaul before the Roman people. What did he (Caesar) mean? Why did he come into his domain?* (Direct: *quid tibi vis? cur in meas possessiōnēs venis?*)

2. Rhetorical questions, on the other hand, being asked merely for effect, and being equivalent in force to emphatic statements, regularly stand in the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse. Thus : —

**quid est levius** (lit. *what is more trivial*, = nothing is more trivial) of the Direct Discourse becomes **quid esse levius** in the Indirect.

3. Deliberative Subjunctives of the Direct Discourse remain unchanged in mood in the Indirect ; as, —

**quid faceret**, *what was he to do?* (Direct: **quid faciat?**)

#### Imperative Sentences.

316. All Imperatives or Jussive Subjunctives of the Direct Discourse appear as Subjunctives in the Indirect ; as, —

**militēs certiōrēs fēcīt paulisper intermitterent proelium**, *he told the soldiers to stop the battle for a little.* (Direct: **intermittite.**)

a. The Negative in such sentences is **nē** ; as, —

**nē suae virtūtē tribueret**, *let him not attribute it to his own valor!*

#### TENSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

##### A. Tenses of the Infinitive.

317. These are used in accordance with the regular principles for the use of the Infinitive as given in § 270.

a. The Perfect Infinitive may represent any past tense of the Indicative of Direct Discourse. Thus : —

**sciō tē haec ēgisse** may mean —

*I know you were doing this.* (Direct: **haec agēbās.**)

*I know you did this.* (Direct: **haec ēgisti.**)

*I know you had done this.* (Direct: **haec ēgerās.**)

## B. Tenses of the Subjunctive.

318. These follow the regular principle for the Sequence of Tenses, being Principal if the verb of *saying* is Principal; Historical if it is Historical. Yet for the sake of vividness, we often find the Present Subjunctive used after an historical tense (*Repraesentatiō*); as, —

**Caesar respondit, si obsidēs dentur, sēsē pācem esse factūrum,**  
*Caesar replied that, if hostages be given, he would make peace.*

a. For the sequence after the Perfect Infinitive, see § 268, 2.

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

## Conditional Sentences of the First Type.

319. A. THE APODOSIS. Any tense of the Indicative is changed to the corresponding tense of the Infinitive (§§ 270; 317, a).

B. THE PROTASIS. The protasis takes those tenses of the Subjunctive which are required by the Sequence of Tenses.

Examples: —

DIRECT.	INDIRECT.
sī hōc crēdis, errās,	{ dīcō, sī hōc crēdās, tē errāre ; dīxi, sī hōc crēderās, tē errāre.
sī hōc crēdēs, errābis,	{ dīcō, sī hōc crēdās, tē errātūrum esse ; dīxi, sī hōc crēderās, tē errātūrum esse.
sī hōc crēdideris, errābis,	{ dīcō, sī hōc crēdiderās, tē errātūrum esse ; dīxi, sī hōc crēdidiſſās, tē errātūrum esse.
sī hōc crēdēbās, errāvisti,	{ dīcō, sī hōc crēderās, tē errāvisse ; dīxi, sī hōc crēderās, tē errāvisse.

a. Note that a Future Perfect Indicative of the Direct Discourse regularly appears in the Indirect as a Perfect Subjunctive after a principal tense, and as a Pluperfect Subjunctive after an historical tense.

### Conditional Sentences of the Second Type.

320. *A. THE APODOSIS.* The Present Subjunctive of the Direct Discourse regularly becomes the Future Infinitive of the Indirect.

**B. THE PROTASIS.** The Protasis takes those tenses of the Subjunctive demanded by the sequence of tenses.

### Examples :—

sī hōc crēdās, errēs, *{* dīcō, sī hōc crēdās, tē errātūrum esse;  
dīxi, sī hōc crēderās, tē errātūrum esse.

### Conditional Sentences of the Third Type.

### 321. A. THE APODOSIS.

## 1. The Imperfect Subjunctive of the Direct Discourse becomes the Future Infinitive.

a. But this construction is rare, being represented in the classical Latinity by a single example (Caesar, V. 29. 2). Some scholars question the correctness of this passage.

2. The Pluperfect Subjunctive of the Direct Discourse becomes:—

a) In the Active Voice the Infinitive in **-ūrus** **fuisse**.

8) In the Passive Voice it takes the form **futūrum fuisse ut** with the Imperfect Subjunctive.

**B. THE PROTASIS.** The protasis in Conditional Sentences of this type always remains unchanged.

### Examples:—

<i>sī hōc crēderēs, errārēs,</i> <i>sī hōc crēdidissēs, errāvissēs,</i> <i>sī hōc dīxissēs, pūnitus essēs,</i>	<i>dīcō (dīxī), sī hōc crēderēs, tē er- rātūrum esse;</i> <i>dīcō (dīxī), sī hōc crēdidissēs, tē errātūrum fuisse;</i> <i>dīcō (dīxī), sī hōc dīxissēs fūtū- rum fuisse ut pūnirēris.</i>
--	---

**322.** When an apodosis of a conditional sentence of the Third Type referring to the past is at the same time a Result clause, or a

quīn-clause (after *nōn dubitō*, etc.), it stands in the Perfect Subjunctive in the form *-ūrus fuerim*; as,—

*ita territi sunt, ut arma trāditūri fuerint,<sup>1</sup> nisi Caesar subitō advēnisset, they were so frightened that they would have given up their arms, had not Caesar suddenly arrived;*  
*nōn dubitō quīn, si hōc dīxissēs, errātūrus fueris,<sup>1</sup> I do not doubt that, if you had said this, you would have made a mistake.*

a. This peculiarity is confined to the Active Voice. In the Passive, such sentences, when they become dependent, remain unchanged; as,—

*nōn dubitō quīn, si hōc dīxissēs, vituperātus essēs, I do not doubt that, if you had said this, you would have been blamed.*

b. When an Indirect Question becomes an apodosis in a conditional sentence of the Third Type, *-ūrus fuerim* (rarely *-ūrus fuissēm*) is used; as,—

*quaerō, num, si hōc dīxissēs, errātūrus fueris (or fuissēs).*

c. *Potūl*, when it becomes a dependent apodosis in sentences of this Type, usually changes to the Perfect Subjunctive; as,—

*concursū tōtius civitātis dēfēnsi sunt, ut frigidissimōs quoque orātōrēs populi studia excitāre potuerint, they were defended before a gathering of all the citizens, so that the interest of the people would have been enough to excite even the most apathetic orators.*

#### IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

323. The Subjunctive is often used in subordinate clauses whose Indirect character is *merely implied by the context*; as,—

*dēmōnstrābantur mihi praetereā, quae Sōcratēs dē immortālitātē animōrum disseruisset, there were explained to me besides, the arguments which Socrates had set forth concerning the immortality of the soul (i.e. the arguments which, it was said, Socrates had set forth);*

*Paetus omnēs librōs quōs pater suus reliquisset mihi dōnāvit, Paetus gave me all the books which (as he said) his father had left.*

<sup>1</sup> *Trāditūri fuerint* and *errātūrus fueris* are to be regarded as representing *trāditūri fuērunt* and *errātūrus fuistī* of Direct Discourse. (See § 304. 3. b.)

## SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION.

324. 1. Subordinate clauses dependent upon the Subjunctive are frequently attracted into the same mood, especially when they do not express a fact, but constitute *an essential part of one complex idea*; as,—

*nēmō avārus adhūc inventus est, cui, quod habēret, esset sati,*  
*no miser has yet been found who was satisfied with what he*  
*had;*

*cum diversās causās afferrent, dum fōrmam sui quisque et*  
*animi et ingenī redderent, as they brought forward different*  
*arguments, while each mirrored his own individual type of*  
*mind and natural bent;*

*quod ego fatēar, pudeat? should I be ashamed of a thing which I*  
*admit?*

2. Similarly a subordinate clause dependent upon an Infinitive is put in the Subjunctive when the two form one closely united whole; as,—

*mōs est Athēnīs quotannīs in cōtiōne laudārī eōs qui sint in*  
*proeliīs interfecti, it is the custom at Athens every year for*  
*those to be publicly eulogized who have been killed in battle.*  
*(Here the notion of 'praising those who fell in battle' forms*  
*an inseparable whole.)*

## NOUN AND ADJECTIVE FORMS OF THE VERB.

325. These are the Infinitive, Participle, Gerund, and Supine. All of these partake of the nature of the Verb, on the one hand, and of the Noun or Adjective, on the other. Thus:—

As Verbs,—

- a) They may be limited by adverbs;
- b) They admit an object;
- c) They have the properties of voice and tense.

As Nouns or Adjectives,—

- a) They are declined;
- b) They take Noun or Adjective constructions.

### THE INFINITIVE.

#### Infinitive without Subject Accusative.

326. This is used chiefly as Subject or Object but also as Predicate or Appositive.

NOTE.—The Infinitive was originally a Dative, and traces of this are still to be seen in the poetical use of the Infinitive to express *purpose*; as, *nec dulcēs occur-  
rent oscula nāti praeripere*, and *no sweet children will run to snatch kisses*.

#### A. As Subject.

327. 1. The Infinitive without Subject Accusative is used as the Subject of *esse* and various impersonal verbs, particularly *opus est*, *necesse est*, *oportet*, *juvat*, *dēlectat*, *placet*, *libet*, *licet*, *praestat*, *debet*, *pudet*, *interest*, etc.; as,—  
*dulce et decōrum est prō patriā mori*, *it is sweet and noble to die  
for one's country*;  
*virōrum est fortium toleranter dolōrem pati*, *it is the part of brave  
men to endure pain with patience*;  
*senātuī placuit lēgātōs mittere*, *the Senate decided* (lit. *it pleased the  
Senate*) *to send envoys*.

2. Even though the Infinitive itself appears without Subject, it may take a Predicate Noun or Adjective in the Accusative; as,—  
*aliud est irācundum esse*, *aliud irātum*, *it is one thing to be irasci-  
ble, another to be angry*;  
*impūne quaelibet facere*, *id est rēgem esse*, *to do whatever you  
please with impunity, that is to be a king*.

a. But when *licet* is followed by a Dative of the person, a Predicate Noun or Adjective with *esse* is attracted into the same case; as, *licuit esse ḍtiōsō Themistocli*, lit. *it was permitted to Themisto-  
cles to be at leisure*. So sometimes with other Impersonals.

#### B. As Object.

328. 1. The Infinitive without Subject Accusative is used as the Object of many verbs, to denote another action of the same subject, particularly after—

*volō*, *cupiō*, *mālō*, *nōlō*;      *cōgitō*, *meditor*, *purpose, intend*;  
*dēbeō*, *ought*;      *neglegō*, *neglect*;  
*statuō*, *cōnstituō*, *decide*;      *vereor*, *timeō*, *fear*;

audeō, dare;	mātūrō, festīnō, properō, con-
studeō, contendō, strive;	tendō, hasten;
parō, prepare (so parātus);	assuēscō, cōnsuēscō, accustom
incipiō, coepī, Instituō, begin;	myself (so assuētus, Insuētus,
pergō, continue;	assuēfactus);
dēsinō, dēsistō, cease;	discō, learn;
possum, can;	sciō, know how;
cōnor, try;	soleō, am wont; as, —

tū hōs intuērī audēs, *do you dare to look on these men?*

Dēmosthenēs ad flūctūs maris dēclāmāre solēbat, *Demosthenes used to declaim by the waves of the sea.*

2. A Predicate Noun or Adjective with these Infinitives is attracted into the Nominative; as, —

beātus esse sine virtūte nēmō potest, *no one can be happy without virtue;*

Catō esse quam vidērī bonus mālēbat, *Cato preferred to be good rather than to seem so.*

#### Infinitive with Subject Accusative.

329. This is used chiefly as Subject or Object but also as Predicate or Appositive.

##### A. As Subject.

330. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative (like the simple Infinitive) is used as Subject with *esse* and Impersonal verbs, particularly with *aequum est, ûtile est, turpe est, fâma est, spâs est, fâs est, nefâs est, opus est, necesse est, oportet, cōnstat, praestat, licet, etc.*; as, —

nihil in bellō oportet contemnī, *nothing ought to be despised in war;*  
apertum est sibi quemque nâtūrâ esse cárum, *it is manifest that by nature everybody is dear to himself.*

##### B. As Object.

331. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is used as Object after the following classes of verbs: —

I. Most frequently after verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, and the like (Verba Sentiēndi et Dēclarandi).* This is the

regular construction of Principal Clauses of Indirect Discourse. Verbs that take this construction are, among others, the following: *sentiō*, *audiō*, *videō*, *cognoscō*; *putō*, *jūdicō*, *spērō*, *cōfidō*; *sciō*, *meminī*; *dīcō*, *affīrmō*, *negō* (*say that . . . not*), *trādō*, *nārrō*, *fateor*, *respondeō*, *scrībō*, *prōmittō*, *glōrior*. Also the phrases: *certiōrem faciō* (*inform*), *memoriā teneō* (*remember*), etc.

Examples: —

*Epicōrēi putant cum corporibus simul animōs interire*, the Epicureans think that the soul perishes with the body;

*Thalēs dīxit aquam esse initium rērum*, Thales said that water was the first principle of the universe;

*Dēmocritus negat quicquid esse sempiternum*, Democritus says nothing is everlasting;

*spērō eum ventūrum esse*, I hope that he will come.

## II. With *jubeō*, *order*, and *vetō*, *forbid*; as, —

*Caesar mīlitēs pontem facere jussit*, Caesar ordered the soldiers to make a bridge.

a. When the name of the person who is ordered or forbidden to do something is omitted, the Infinitive with *jubeō* and *vetō* is put in the Passive; as, *Caesar pontem fieri jussit*.

## III. With *patior* and *sinō*, *permit*, *allow*; as, —

*nūllō sē implicārī negōtiō passus est*, he did not permit himself to be involved in any difficulty.

## IV. With *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, *cupiō*, when the Subject of the Infinitive is different from that of the governing verb; as, —

*nec mihi hunc errōrem extorquērī volō*, nor do I wish this error to be wrested from me;

*eās rēs jactārī nōlēbat*, he was unwilling that these matters should be discussed;

*tē tuis dīvitīs frūl cupimus*, we desire that you enjoy your wealth.

a. When the Subject of both verbs is the same, the simple Infinitive is regularly used in accordance with § 328. 1. But exceptions occur, especially in case of *esse* and Passive Infinitives; as, —

*cupiō mē esse clēmentem*, I desire to be lenient;

*Timoleōn māluit sē dīligī quām metūl*, Timoleon preferred to be loved rather than feared.

b. *Volō* also admits the Subjunctive, with or without *ut*; *nōlō* the Subjunctive alone. (See § 296. 1. a.)

V. With Verbs of *emotion* (*joy, sorrow, regret, etc.*), especially *gaudeō*, *laetor*, *doleō*; *aegrē ferō*, *molestē ferō*, *graviter ferō*, *am annoyed, distressed*; *mīror*, *queror*, *indignor*; as, —

*gaudeō tē salvum advenīre*, *I rejoice that you arrive safely*;  
*nōn molestē ferunt sē libīdīnum vinculīs laxātōs esse*, *they are not troubled at being released from the bonds of passion*;  
*mīror tē ad mē nihil scribēre*, *I wonder that you write me nothing*.

a. Instead of an Infinitive these verbs also sometimes admit a quod-clause as Object. (See § 299.) Thus: —

*mīror quod nōn loqueris*, *I wonder that you do not speak*.

VI. Some verbs which take two Accusatives, one of the Person and the other of the Thing (§ 178, 1), may substitute an Infinitive for the second Accusative; as, —

*cōgō tē hōc facere*, *I compel you to do this* (cf. *tē hōc cōgō*);  
*docuī tē contentum esse*, *I taught you to be content* (cf. *tē modētiam docuī*, *I taught you temperance*).

#### Passive Construction of the Foregoing Verbs.

332. Those verbs which in the Active are followed by the Infinitive with Subject Accusative, usually admit the personal construction in the Passive. This is true of the following and of some others: —

a) *jubeor, vētor, sinor*; as, —

*mīlitēs pontēm facere jussi sunt*, *the soldiers were ordered to build a bridge*;

*pōns fieri jussus est*, *a bridge was ordered built*;

*mīlitēs castris exire vetiti sunt*, *the troops were forbidden to go out of the camp*;

*Sēstius Clōdium accūsare nōn est situs*, *Sestius was not allowed to accuse Clodius*.

b) *videor, I am seen, I seem*; as, —

*vidētūr comperisse*, *he seems to have discovered*.

c) *dīcor, putor, existimor, jūdicor* (in all persons); as, —

*dīcitur in Italiam vēnisse*, *he is said to have come into Italy*;

*Rōmulus p̄imūs rēx Rōmānōrum fuisse putātur*, *Romulus is thought to have been the first king of the Romans*.

d) **fertur, feruntur, träditur, träduntur** (only in the third person); as, —

**fertur Homērus caecus fuisse**, *Homer is said to have been blind*;

**carmina Archilochi contumēliis referta esse träduntur**, *Archilochus's poems are reported to have been full of abuse.*

NOTE.—In compound tenses and periphrastic forms, the last two classes of verbs, c), d), more commonly take the impersonal construction; as, —

**träditum est Homērum caecum fuisse**, *the story goes that Homer was blind.*

#### Infinitive with Adjectives.

333. The Infinitive with Adjectives (except **parātus, assuētus, etc.**; see § 328, 1) occurs only in poetry and post-Augustan prose writers; as, —

**contentus dēmōnstrāsse**, *contented to have proved*;  
**audāx omnia perpeti**, *bold for enduring everything*.

#### Infinitive in Exclamations.

334. The Infinitive is used in Exclamations implying *scorn, indignation, or regret*. An intensive -ne is often attached to some word in the clause. Examples: —

**huncine sōlem tam nigrum surrēxe mihi**, *to think that to-day's sun rose with such evil omen for me!*

**sedēre tōtōs diēs in villā**, *to stay whole days at the villa!*

#### Historical Infinitive.

335. The Infinitive is often used in historical narrative instead of the Imperfect Indicative. The Subject stands in the Nominative; as, —

**interim cottidiē Caesar Haeduōs frumentum flāgitāre**, *meanwhile Caesar was daily demanding grain of the Haedui.*

### PARTICIPLES.

#### Tenses of the Participle.

336. 1. The tenses of the Participle, like those of the Infinitive (see § 270), express time not absolutely, but with reference to the verb upon which the Participle depends.

2. The Present Participle denotes action *contemporary with* that of the verb. Thus :—

**audiō tē loquentem** = *you ARE speaking and I hear you;*

**audiēbam tē loquentem** = *you WERE speaking and I heard you;*

**audiam tē loquentem** = *you WILL BE speaking and I shall hear you.*

a. The Present Participle is sometimes employed with Conative force ; as,—

**assurgentem rēgem resupinat**, *as the king was trying to rise, he threw him down.*

3. The Perfect Passive Participle denotes action *prior to* that of the verb. Thus :—

**locūtus taceō** = *I HAVE spoken and am silent;*

**locūtus tacuī** = *I HAD spoken and then was silent;*

**locūtus tacēbō** = *I SHALL speak and then shall be silent.*

4. The **absolute** time of the action of a participle, therefore, is determined entirely by the finite verb with which it is connected.

5. Certain Perfect Passive Participles of Deponent and Semi-Deponent Verbs are used as Presents ; *viz.* **arbitrātus**, **ausus**, **ratus**, **gāvisus**, **solitus**, **tūsus**, **cōfīsus**, **diffīsus**, **secūtus**, **veritus**.

#### Use of Participles.

337. As an Adjective the Participle may be used either as an attributive or predicate modifier of a Substantive.

1. **Attributive Use.** This presents no special peculiarities. Examples are :—

**glōria est cōsentīens laus bonōrum**, *glory is the unanimous praise of the good;*

**Conōn mūrōs ā Līysandrō dīrutōs reficit**, *Conon restored the walls destroyed by Lysander.*

2. **Predicate Use.** Here the Participle is often equivalent to a subordinate clause. Thus the Participle may denote :—

a) Time ; as,—

**omne mālum nāscēns facile opprimitur**, *every evil is easily crushed at birth.*

b) A Condition ; as,—

**mente tūtī nōn possumus cibō et pōtiōne complētī**, *if gorged with food and drink, we cannot use our intellects.*

c) Manner ; as,—

**Solōn senēscere sē dīcēbat multa in dīs addiscentem,**  
*Solon said he grew old learning many new things daily.*

d) Means ; as,—

**sōl oriēns diem cōnficit,** *the sun, by its rising, makes the day.*

e) Opposition ('*though*') ; as,—

**mendācī hominī nē vērum quidem dīcenti orēdimus,**  
*we do not believe a liar, though he speaks the truth.*

f) Cause ; as,—

**perfidiam veritus ad suōs recessit,** *since he feared treachery, he returned to his own troops.*

3. **Videō** and **audiō**, besides the Infinitive, take the Present Participle in the Predicate use ; as,—

**videō tē fugientem,** *I see you fleeing.*

a. So frequently **faciō**, **flingō**, **inducō**, etc. ; as,—

**els Catōnem respondentem facimus,** *we represent Cato replying to them;*

**Homērus Laērtem colentem agrum facit,** *Homer represents Laertes tilling the field.*

4. The Future Active Participle (except **futūrus**) is regularly confined to its use in the Periphrastic Conjugation, but in poets and later writers it is used independently, especially to denote *purpose* ; as,—

**vēnērunt castra oppugnātūrī,** *they came to assault the camp.*

5. The Perfect Passive Participle is often equivalent to a coördinate clause ; as,—

**urbem captam dīruit,** *he captured and destroyed the city* (lit. *he destroyed the city captured*).

6. The Perfect Passive Participle in combination with a noun is sometimes equivalent to an abstract noun with a dependent Genitive ; as,—

**post urbem conditam,** *after the founding of the city;*

**Quiñotius dēfēnsus,** *the defense of Quintius;*

**quibus animus occupātus,** *the preoccupation of the mind with which.*

7. **Habēō** sometimes takes a Perfect Passive Participle in the Predicate construction with a force not far removed from that of the Perfect or Pluperfect Indicative ; as,—

**cōpiās quās cōactās habēbat,** *the forces which he had collected.*

8. The Gerundive denotes *obligation, necessity, etc.* Like other Participles it may be used either as Attributive or Predicate.

a) Less frequently as Attributive. Thus :—

*liber legendus, a book worth reading;*

*lēgēs observandae, laws deserving of observance.*

b) More frequently as Predicate.

1) In the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation (*amandus est, etc.*). In this use Intransitive Verbs can be used only impersonally, but admit their ordinary case-construction (Gen., Dat., Abl.); as,—

*veniendum est, it is necessary to come;*

*obliviscendum est injūriārum, one must forget injuries;*

*numquam prōdītōrī crēdendum est, you must never trust a traitor;*

*suō cūique fūtendum est jūdiciō, every man must use his own judgment.*

2) After *cūrō, provide for*; *dō, trādō, give over*; *relinquō, leave*; *concēdō, hand over*; and some other verbs, instead of an object clause or to denote purpose; as,—

*Caesar pōntem in Ararī faciendum cūrāvit, Caesar provided for the construction of a bridge over the Arar;*

*imperātor urbēm militib⁹ diripiendam concessit, the general handed over the city to the soldiers to plunder.*

9. For the Gerundive as the equivalent of the Gerund, see § 339, 1.

### THE GERUND.

338. As a verbal noun the Gerund admits noun constructions as follows :—

1. **Genitive.** The Genitive of the Gerund is used —

a) With Nouns, as Objective or Appositional Genitive (see §§ 200, 202); as,—

*cupiditās dominandi, desire of ruling;*  
*ars scribendi, the art of writing.*

b) With Adjectives; as,—

*cupidus audiendi, desirous of hearing.*

c) With **causā, grātiā**; as,—

*discendi causā, for the sake of learning.*

2. **Dative.** The Dative of the Gerund is used —

a) With Adjectives ; as, —

*aqua útilis est bibendō, water is useful for drinking.*

b) With Verbs (rarely) ; as, —

*adfuī scribendō, I was present at the writing.*

3. **Accusative.** The Accusative of the Gerund is used only with Prepositions, chiefly *ad* and *in* to denote purpose ; as, —

*homō ad agendum nātus est, man is born for action.*

4. **Ablative.** The Ablative of the Gerund is used —

a) Without a Preposition, as an Ablative of Means, Cause, etc. (see §§ 218, 219) ; as, —

*mēns discendō alitur et cōgitandō, the mind is nourished by learning and reflection.*

*Themistocles maritimōs praeđōnēs cōnsectandō mare tūtum reddidit, Themistocles made the sea safe by following up the pirates.*

b) After the prepositions *ā, dē, ex, in* ; as, —

*summa voluptās ex discendō capitūr, the keenest pleasure is derived from learning;*

*multa dē bene beātēque vivendō ā Platōne disputāta sunt, there was much discussion by Plato on the subject of living well and happily.*

5. As a rule, only the Genitive of the Gerund and the Ablative (without a preposition) admit a Direct Object.

#### Gerundive Construction instead of the Gerund.

339. 1. Instead of the Genitive or Ablative of the Gerund with a Direct Object, another construction *may be, and very often is, used.* This consists in putting the Direct Object in the case of the Gerund (Gen. or Abl.) and using the Gerundive in agreement with it. This is called the Gerundive Construction. Thus : —

##### GERUND CONSTRUCTION.

*cupidus urbēm vidēndī, desirous of seeing the city;* } *cupidus urbīs vidēndae;*  
*dēlector ḥrātōrēs legēndō, I am charmed with reading the orators.* } *dēlector ḥrātōribus legēndia.*

##### GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION.

2. The Gerundive Construction *must be used* to avoid a Direct Object with the Dative of the Gerund, or with a case dependent upon a Preposition; as,—

*locus castris muniendis aptus, a place adapted to fortifying a camp;*  
*ad pacem petendam venērunt, they came to ask peace;*  
*multum temporis cōsūmō in legendis poētis, I spend much time*  
*in reading the poets.*

3. In order to avoid ambiguity (see § 236, 2), the Gerundive Construction must not be employed in case of Neuter Adjectives used substantively. Thus regularly—

*philosophi cupidi sunt vērum invēstigandī, philosophers are eager*  
*for discovering truth* (rarely *vēri invēstigandī*);  
*studium plūra cognōscendī, a desire of knowing more* (not *plūrium*  
*cognōscendōrum*).

4. From the nature of the case only Transitive Verbs can be used in the Gerundive Construction; but *ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior* (originally transitive) regularly admit it; as,—

*hostēs in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant, the enemy had*  
*conceived the hope of gaining possession of the camp.*

5. The Genitives *meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī*, when used in the Gerundive Construction, are regularly employed without reference to Gender or Number, since they were originally Neuter Singular Adjectives used substantively. Thus:—

*mulier suī servandī causā aufūgit, the woman fled for the sake of*  
*saving herself;*

*lēgāti in castra vēnērunt suī pūrgandī causā, the envoys came into*  
*camp for the purpose of clearing themselves.*

*So nostrī servandī causā, for the sake of saving ourselves.*

6. Occasionally the Genitive of the Gerundive Construction is used to denote *purpose*; as,—

*quae ille cēpit lēgum ac libertatis subvertundae, which he under-*  
*took for the purpose of overthrowing the laws and liberty.*

7. The Dative of the Gerundive Construction occurs in some expressions which have the character of formulas; as,—

*decemviri lēgibus scribundis, decemvirs for codifying the laws;*  
*quīndecimviri sacrī faciundis, quindecimvirs for performing the*  
*sacrifices.*

## THE SUPINE.

340. 1. The Supine in -um is used after Verbs of motion to express purpose; as,—

lēgātī ad Caesarem grātulātūm convēnērunt, *envoys came to Caesar to congratulate him.*

a. The Supine in -um may take an Object; as,—

pācem petītūm ḫrātōrēs Rōmām mittunt, *they send envoys to Rome to ask for peace.*

b. Note the phrase: —

dō (collocō) fīliam nūptūm, *I give my daughter in marriage.*

2. The Supine in -ū is used as an Ablative of Specification with *facilis, difficilis, incrēdibilis, jūcundus, optimus, etc.*; also with *fās est, nefās est, opus est*; as,—

haec rēs est facilis cognitū, *this thing is easy to learn;*  
hōc est optimum factū, *this is best to do.*

a. Only a few Supines in -ū are in common use, chiefly *auditū, cognitū, dictū, factū, vīsū.*

b. The Supine in -ū never takes an Object.

CHAPTER VI.—*Particles.*

## COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS.

341. Copulative Conjunctions. These *join* one word, phrase, or clause to another.

i. a) **et** simply connects.

b) **-que** joins more closely than **et**, and is used especially where the two members have an internal connection with each other; as,—

*parentēs liberique, parents and children;*

*cum hominēs aestū febrīque jactantur, when people are tossed about with heat and fever.*

c) **atque (ac)** usually emphasizes the second of the two things connected, — *and also, and indeed, and in fact*. After words of *likeness* and *difference* **atque (ac)** has the force of *as, than*. Thus: —

*ego idem sentiō ac tū, I think the same as you;*  
*haud aliter ac, not otherwise than.*

d) **neque (nec)** means *and not, neither, nor.*

2. a) **-que** is an enclitic, and is appended always to the second of two words connected. Where it connects phrases or clauses it is appended to the first word of the second clause; but when the first word of the second clause is a Preposition, **-que** is regularly appended to the next following word; as, — *ob eamque rem, and on account of that thing.*

b) **atque** is used before vowels and consonants; **ac** never before vowels, and seldom before **c, g, qu.**

c) **et nōn** is used for **neque** when the emphasis of the negative rests upon a special word; as, —

*vetus et nōn ignōbilis orātor, an old and not ignoble orator.*

d) For *and nowhere, and never, and none*, the Latin regularly said **nec usquam, nec umquam, nec ullus, etc.**

3. **Correlatives.** Copulative Conjunctions are frequently used correlatively; as, —

*et . . . et, both . . . and;*  
*neque (nec) . . . neque (nec), neither . . . nor;*  
*cum . . . tum, while . . . at the same time;*  
*tum . . . tum, not only . . . but also.*

Less frequently: —

*et . . . neque;      neque . . . et.*

a. Note that the Latin, with its tendency to emphasize antithetical relations, often uses correlatives, especially **et . . . et, et . . . neque, neque . . . et**, where the English employs but a single connective.

4. **In enumerations —**

a) The different members of a series may follow one another without connectives (Asyndeton; see § 346). Thus: —

*ex cupiditātibus odia, discidia, discordiae, sēditiōnēs,  
 bella nāscuntur, from covetous desires spring up  
 hatred, dissensions, discord, sedition, wars.*

b) The different members may severally be connected by **et** (Polysyndeton). Thus:—

*hōrae cēdunt et dīēs et mēnsēs et anni, hours and days and years and months pass away.*

c) The connective may be omitted between the former members, while the last two are connected by **-que** (rarely **et**) ; as,—

*Caesar in Carnutēs, Andēs Turonēsque legiōnēs dēdū-cit, Caesar leads his legions into the territory of the Carnutes, Andes, and Turones.*

### 342. Disjunctive Conjunctions indicate an *alternative*.

1. a) **aut** must be used when the alternatives are mutually exclusive ; as,—

*cita mōs venit aut victōria laeta, (either) swift death or glad victory comes.*

b) **vel, -ve** (enclitic) imply a choice between the alternatives ; as,—

*qui aethēr vel caelum nōminātur, which is called aether or heaven.*

2. **Correlatives.** Disjunctive Conjunctions are often used correlatively ; as,—

*aut . . . aut, either . . . or ;*

*vel . . . vel, either . . . or ;*

*sive . . . sive, if . . . or if.*

### 343. Adversative Conjunctions. These denote *opposition*.

1. a) **sed, but**, merely denotes opposition.

b) **vērum, but**, is stronger than **sed**, but is less frequently used.

c) **autem, but on the other hand, however**, marks a transition. It is always post-positive.

**DEFINITION.** A post-positive word is one that cannot begin a sentence, but is placed after one or more words.

d) **at, but**, is used especially in disputation, to introduce an opposing argument.

e) **atqui** means *but yet*.

f) **tamen, yet**, usually stands after the emphatic word, but not always.

g) **vērē, however, indeed, in truth**, is always post-positive.

2. Note the correlative expressions :—

*nōn sōlum (nōn modo) . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also ; nōn modo nōn . . . sed nē . . . quidem, not only not, but not even ; as, —*

*nōn modo tibi nōn irāscor, sed nē reprehendō quidem factum tuum, I not only am not angry with you, but I do not even blame your action.*

a. But when the sentence has but one verb, and this stands with the second member, *nōn modo* may be used for *nōn modo nōn*; as,—

*adsentātiō nōn modo amicō sed nē liberō quidem digna est, flattery is not only not worthy of a friend, but not even of a free man.*

**344. Illative Conjunctions.** These represent the statement which they introduce as *following from* or as *in conformity with* what has preceded.

1. a) *itaque* = *and so, accordingly.*

b) *ergō* = *therefore, accordingly.*

c) *igitur* (regularly post-positive<sup>1</sup>) = *therefore, accordingly.*

2. *Igitur* is never combined with *et, atque, -que, or neque.*

**345. Causal Conjunctions.** These denote *cause*, or *give an explanation.* They are *nam, namque, enim* (post-positive), *etenim, for.*

**346. Asyndeton.** The conjunction is sometimes omitted between coördinate members, particularly in lively or impassioned narration. Thus :—

a) A Copulative Conjunction is omitted ; as,—

*avāritia Infinita Insatiābilis est, avarice is boundless (and) insatiable;*

*Cn. Pompejō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus, in the consulship of Gnaeus Pompey (and) Marcus Crassus.*

The conjunction is regularly omitted between the names of consuls when the praenomen (*Mārcus, Gāius, etc.*) is expressed.

b) An Adversative Conjunction may be omitted ; as,—

*ratiōnēs dēfūerunt, ūbertās ōrātiōnis nōn dēfuit, arguments were lacking, (but) abundance of words was not.*

<sup>1</sup> Except in Sallust and Silver Latin.

## ADVERBS.

347. 1. The following particles, sometimes classed as Conjunctions, are more properly Adverbs:—

*etiam*, *also*, *even*.

*quoque* (always post-positive), *also*.

*quidem* (always post-positive) lays stress upon the preceding word.

It is sometimes equivalent to the English *indeed*, *in fact*, but more frequently cannot be rendered, except by vocal emphasis.

*nē* . . . *quidem* means *not even*; the emphatic word or phrase always stands between; as, *nē ille quidem*, *not even he*.

*tamen* and *vērō*, in addition to their use as Conjunctions, are often employed as Adverbs.

2. **Negatives.** Two Negatives are regularly equivalent to an affirmative as in English, as *nōn nullī*, *some*; but when *nōn*, *nēmō*, *nihil*, *numquam*, *etc.*, are accompanied by *neque* . . . *neque*, *nōn* . . . *nōn*, *nōn modo*, or *nē* . . . *quidem*, the latter particles simply take up the negation and emphasize it; as,—

*habeō hic nēminem neque amīcum neque cognātūm*, *I have here no one, neither friend nor relative.*

*nōn enim praetereundūm est nē id quidem*, *for not even that must be passed by.*

a. *Haud* in Cicero and Caesar occurs almost exclusively as a modifier of Adjectives and Adverbs, and in the phrase *haud sciō an*. Later writers use it freely with verbs.



## CHAPTER VII.—Word-Order and Sentence-Structure.

### A. WORD-ORDER.

348. In the normal arrangement of the Latin sentence the Subject stands at the beginning of the sentence, the Predicate at the end; as,—

*Dārius classem quīngentārūm nāvium comparāvit*, *Darius got ready a fleet of five hundred ships.*

349. But for the sake of emphasis the normal arrangement is often abandoned, and the emphatic word is put at the beginning, less frequently at the end of the sentence; as, —

**magnus in hōc bellō Themistoclēs fuit, GREAT was Themistocles in this war;**  
**aliud iter habēmus nūllum, other course we have NONE.**

### SPECIAL PRINCIPLES.

350. 1. **Nouns.** A Genitive or other oblique case regularly follows the word upon which it depends. Thus: —

a) Depending upon a Noun: —

*tribūnus plēbis, tribune of the plebs;*

*filius rēgis, son of the king;*

*vir magni animi, a man of noble spirit.*

Yet always *senātūs cōsultum, plēbis scītum.*

b) Depending upon an Adjective: —

*ignārūs rērum, ignorant of affairs;*

*digni amīctiā, worthy of friendship;*

*plūs aequō, more than (what is) fair.*

2. **Appositives.** An Appositive regularly follows its Subject; as, —

**Philippus, rēx Macedonum, Philip, king of the Macedonians;**  
**adsentatiō, vitiōrum adjūtrīx, flattery, promoter of evils.**

Yet *flūmen Rhēnus, the River Rhine;* and always in good prose  
*urbs Rōma, the city Rome.*

3. The **Vocative** usually follows one or more words; as, —

*audi, Caesar, hear, Caesar!*

4. **Adjectives.** No general law can be laid down for the position of Adjectives. On the whole they precede the noun oftener than they follow it.

a. Adjectives of *quantity* (including *numerals*) regularly precede their noun; as, —

*omnēs hominēs, all men;*

*septingentae nāvēs, seven hundred vessels.*

- b. Note the force of position in the following:—  
*media urbs, the middle of the city ;*  
*urbs media, the middle city ;*  
*extrēmum bellum, the end of the war ;*  
*bellum extrēmum, the last war.*
- c. **Rōmānus** and **Latīnus** regularly follow; as,—  
*senātus populusque Rōmānus, the Roman Senate and People ;*  
*lūdī Rōmānī, the Roman games ;*  
*fēriae Latīnae, the Latin holidays.*
- d. When a Noun is modified both by an Adjective and by a Genitive, a favorite order is: Adjective, Genitive, Noun; as,—  
*summa omnium rērum abundātia, the greatest abundance of all things.*

#### 5. Pronouns.

- a. The Demonstrative, Relative, and Interrogative Pronouns regularly precede the Noun; as,—  
*hic homō, this man ;*  
*ille homō, that man ;*  
*erant duo itinera, quibus itineribus, etc., there were two routes, by which, etc.*  
*qui homō ? what sort of a man ?*
- b. But *ille* in the sense of 'that well known,' 'that famous,' usually stands after its Noun; as,—  
*testula illa, that well-known custom of ostracism ;*  
*Mēdēa illa, that famous Medea.*
- c. Possessive and Indefinite Pronouns usually follow their Noun; as,—  
*pater meus, my father ;*  
*homō quidam, a certain man ;*  
*mulier aliqua, some woman.*  
 But for purposes of contrast the Possessive often precedes its Noun; as,—  
*meus pater, my father (i.e. as opposed to yours, his, etc.).*
- d. Where two or more Pronouns occur in the same sentence, the Latin is fond of putting them in close proximity; as,—  
*nisi forte ego vōbīs cessārē videor, unless perchance I seem to you to be doing nothing.*

6. Adverbs and Adverbial phrases regularly precede the word they modify ; as, —

*valdē diligēns, extremely diligent ;  
saepe dixi, I have often said ;  
tē jam dīū hortāmūr, we have long been urging you ;  
paulō post, a little after.*

7. Prepositions regularly precede the words they govern.

a. But limiting words often intervene between the Preposition and its case ; as, —

*dē commūnī hominū memorīā, concerning the common  
memory of men ;  
ad beātē vivendūm, for living happily.*

b. When a noun is modified by an Adjective, the Adjective is often placed before the preposition ; as, —

*magnō in dolōre, in great grief ;  
summā cum laude, with the highest credit ;  
quā dē causā, for which cause ;  
hanc ob rem, on account of this thing.*

c. For Anastrophe, by which a Preposition is put after its case, see § 144. 3.

8. Conjunctions. **Autem**, **enim**, and **igitur** regularly stand in the second place in the sentence, but when combined with **est** or **sunt** they often stand third ; as, —

*ita est enim, for so it is.*

9. Words or Phrases referring to the preceding sentence or to some part of it, regularly stand first ; as, —

*id ut audīvit, Corcȳram dēmigrāvit, when he heard that (referring to the contents of the preceding sentence), he moved to Corcyra ;  
eō cum Caesar vēnisset, timentēs cōnfīrmat, when Caesar had come thither (i.e. to the place just mentioned), he encouraged the timid.*

10. The Latin has a fondness for putting side by side words which are etymologically related ; as, —

*ut ad senem senex dē senectūtē, sic hōc librō ad amīcūm amīcissimus dē amīcītā scripsi, as I, an old man, wrote to an old man, on old age, so in this book, as a fond friend, I have written to a friend concerning friendship.*

11. Special rhetorical devices for indicating emphasis are the following :—

a) **Hypérbaton**, which consists in the separation of words that regularly stand together ; as,—  
*septimus mihi Originum liber est in manibus, the seventh book of my 'Origines' is under way;*  
*receptō Caesar Ōricō proficiuntur, having recovered Oricus, Caesar set out.*

b) **Anáphora**, which consists in the repetition of the same word or the same word-order in successive phrases ; as,—  
*sed plēnī omnēs sunt libri, plēnae sapientium vōcēs, plēna exemplōrum vetustās, but all books are full of it, the voices of sages are full of it, antiquity is full of examples of it.*

c) **Chiásmus**,<sup>1</sup> which consists in changing the relative order of words in two antithetical phrases ; as,—  
*multōs dēfendi, laesī nēminem, many have I defended, I have injured no one;*  
*horribilem illum diēm aliis, nōbīs faustum, that day dreadful to others, for us fortunate.*

d) **Sýnchysis**, or the interlocked arrangement. This is mostly confined to poetry, yet occurs in rhetorical prose, especially that of the Imperial Period ; as,—  
*simulātam Pompejānārum grātiam partium, pretended interest in the Pompeian party.*

12. **Metrical Close.** At the end of a sentence certain cadences were avoided ; others were much employed. Thus :—

a) Cadences avoided.  
 $\text{— } \cup \cup \text{— } \searrow$  ; as, *esse vidētūr* (close of hexameter).  
 $\text{— } \cup \cup \searrow$  ; as, *esse potest* (close of pentameter).

b) Cadences frequently employed.  
 $\text{— } \cup \text{—}$  ; as, *auxerant.*  
 $\text{— } \cup \text{— } \cup$  ; as, *comprobāvit.*  
 $\text{— } \cup \cup \cup \text{— } \cup$  ; as, *esse videātūr.*  
 $\cup \text{— } \text{— } \cup \text{—}$  ; as, *rogātū tuō.*

<sup>1</sup> So named from a fancied analogy to the strokes of the Greek letter X (*χι*).  
 Thus :—

$\text{multōs laesi}$   
 $\text{dēfendi } \times \text{ nēminem}$

## B. SENTENCE-STRUCTURE.

351. 1. Unity of Subject.—In complex sentences the Latin regularly holds to unity of Subject in the different members; as,—

**Caesar** primum suō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtis equis, ut aequātō periculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortatus suōs proelium commisit, *Caesar having first removed his own horse from sight, then the horses of all, in order, by making the danger equal, to take away hope of flight, encouraged his men and joined battle.*

2. A word serving as the common Subject or Object of the main clause and a subordinate one, stands before both; as,—

**Haedui** cum s̄s dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt, *since the Haedui could not defend themselves, they sent envoys to Caesar;*  
**ille** etsi flagrābat bellandi cupiditāte, tamen pāci serviendum putāvit, *although he was burning with a desire to fight, yet he thought he ought to aim at peace.*

a. The same is true also

1) When the Subject of the main clause is Object (Direct or Indirect) of a subordinate clause; as,—

**Caesar**, cum hōc ei nūntiatum esset, mātūrat ab urbe proficisci, *when this had been reported to Caesar he hastened to set out from the city.*

2) When the Subject of a subordinate clause is at the same time the Object (Direct or Indirect) of the main clause; as,—

**L. Mānliō**, cum dīctātor fūisset, **M. Pompōnius** tribūnus plēbis diem dīxit, *M. Pomponius, tribune of the people, instituted proceedings against Lucius Manlius though he had been dictator.*

3. Of subordinate clauses, temporal, conditional, and adversative clauses more commonly precede the main clause; indirect questions and clauses of purpose or result more commonly follow; as,—

postquam haec dīxit, profectus est, *after he said this, he set out;*  
**sī** quis ita agat, imprudēns sit, *if any one should act so, he would be devoid of foresight;*  
**accidit** ut ūnā nocte omnēs Hermae dēicerentur, *it happened that in a single night all the Hermae were thrown down.*

4. Sometimes in Latin the main verb is placed within the subordinate clause ; as, —

*si quid est in mē ingenī, quod sentiō quam sit exiguum, if there is any talent in me, and I know how little it is.*

5. **The Latin Period.** The term Period, when strictly used, designates a compound sentence in which the subordinate clauses are inserted within the main clause ; as, —

*Caesar etsī intellegēbat quā dē causā ea dicerentur, tamen, nē aēstātem in Trēverīs cōnsimere cōgerētur, Indutiomarū ad sē venīrē jussit, though Caesar perceived why this was said, yet, lest he should be forced to spend the summer among the Treveri, he ordered Indutiomarus to come to him.*

In the Periodic structure the thought is suspended until the end of the sentence is reached. Many Roman writers were extremely fond of this sentence-structure, and it was well adapted to the inflectional character of their language ; in English we generally avoid it.

6. When there are several subordinate clauses in one Period, the Latin so arranges them as to avoid a succession of verbs. Thus : —

*At hostēs cum misissent, qui, quae in castris gererentur, cognōscerent, ubi sē dēceptōs intellēxerunt, omnibus cōpīis subsecūti ad flūmen contendunt, but the enemy when they had sent men to learn what was going on in camp, after discovering that they had been outwitted, followed with all their forces and hurried to the river.*



## CHAPTER VIII.—Hints on Latin Style.

352. In this chapter brief consideration is given to a few features of Latin diction which belong rather to style than to formal grammar.

### NOUNS.

353. 1. Where a distinct reference to several persons or things is involved, the Latin is frequently *much more exact in the use of the Plural* than is the English ; as, —

**domōs eunt, they go home** (*i.e. to their homes*) ;  
**Germānī corpora cūrant, the Germans care for the body** ;  
**animōs militum recreat, he renews the courage of the soldiers** ;  
**diēs noctēsque timēre, to be in a state of fear day and night.**

2. In case of Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives used substantively the Latin often employs the Plural where the English uses the Singular ; as, —

**omnia sunt perdita, everything is lost** ;  
**quae cum ita sint, since this is so** ;  
**haec omnibus pervulgāta sunt, this is very well known to all.**

3. The Latin is usually *more concrete* than the English, and especially *less bold in the personification* of abstract qualities. Thus : —

**ā puerō, ā puerīs, from boyhood** ;  
**Sullā dictātōre, in Sulla's dictatorship** ;  
**mē duce, under my leadership** ;  
**Rōmānī cum Carthāgīnīēnsib⁹ pācem fōcērunt = Rome made peace with Carthage** ;  
**liber doctrīnae plēnus = a learned book** ;  
**prūdentī Themistoclis Graecia servāta est = Themistocles's foresight saved Greece.**

4. The Nouns of Agency in **-tor** and **-sor** (see § 147. 1) denote a permanent or characteristic activity ; as, —

**accūsātōrēs (professional) accusers** ;  
**ōrātōrēs, pleaders** ;  
**cantōrēs, singers** ;  
**Arminius, Germānīae liberātor, Arminius, liberator of Germany.**

a. To denote single instances of an action, other expressions are commonly employed ; as, —

**Numa, qui Rōmūlō successit, Numa, successor of Romulus** ;  
**qui mēa legunt, my readers** ;  
**qui mē audiunt, my auditors.**

5. The Latin avoids the use of prepositional phrases as modifiers of a Noun. In English we say : 'The war against Carthage' ; 'a journey through Gaul' ; 'cities on the sea' ; 'the book in my hands' ; 'the fight at Salamis' ; etc. The Latin in such cases usually employs another mode of expression. Thus : —

a) A Genitive ; as, —

**dolor injūriārum, resentment at injuries.**

*b) An Adjective ; as,—*

*urbēs maritimae, cities on the sea ;  
pugna Salaminia, the fight at Salamis.*

*c) A Participle ; as,—*

*pugna ad Cannās facta, the battle at Cannae.*

*d) A Relative clause ; as,—*

*liber qui in meis manibus est, the book in my hands.*

NOTE.— Yet within certain limits the Latin does employ Prepositional phrases as Noun modifiers. This is particularly frequent when the governing noun is derived from a verb. The following are typical examples : —

*trānsitus in Britanniam, the passage to Britain ;  
excessus ē vītā, departure from life ;  
odium ergā Rōmānōs, hatred of the Romans ;  
liber dē senectūte, the book on old age ;  
amor in patriam, love for one's country.*

### ADJECTIVES.

**354. I. Special Latin Equivalents for English Adjectives are —**

*a) A Genitive ; as,—*

*virtūtēs animī = moral virtues ;  
dolōrēs corporis = bodily ills.*

*b) An Abstract Noun ; as,—*

*novitās refī = the strange circumstance ;  
asperitās viārum = rough roads.*

*c) Hendiadys (see § 374, 4) ; as,—*

*ratiō et ɔrdō = systematic order ;  
ārdor et impetus = eager onset.*

*d) Sometimes an Adverb ; as,—*

*omnēs circā populi, all the surrounding tribes ;  
suōs semper hostēs, their perpetual foes.*

**2. Often a Latin Noun is equivalent to an English Noun modified by an Adjective ; as,—**

<i>doctrīna, theoretical knowledge ;</i>	<i>prūdentia, practical knowledge ;</i>
<i>oppidum, walled town ;</i>	<i>libellus, little book.</i>

3. Adjectives are not used in immediate agreement with proper names ; but an Adjective may limit *vir*, *homō*, *ille*, or some other word used as an Appositive of a proper name ; as,—

**Sōcratēs, homō sapiēns** = *the wise Socrates* ;

**Scipiō, vir fortissimus** = *the doughty Scipio* ;

**Syracusae, urbs praeclarissima** = *famous Syracuse*.

4. An Adjective *may be* equivalent to a Possessive or Subjective Genitive ; as —

**pāstor rēgius, the shepherd of the king** ;

**tumultus servilis, the uprising of the slaves**.

### PRONOUNS.

355. In Compound Sentences the Relative Pronoun has a fondness for connecting itself with the subordinate clause rather than the main one ; as,—

**ā quō cum quaererētur, quid maximē expedīret, respondit, when it was asked of him what was best, he replied.** (Less commonly, **qui, cum ab eō quaererētur, respondit.**)

2. **Uterque, ambō.** *Uterque* means *each of two* ; *ambō* means *both* ; as,—

**uterque frāter abiit, each of the two brothers departed** (*i.e.* separately) ;

**ambō frātrēs abiīrunt, i.e. the two brothers departed together.**

a. The Plural of *uterque* occurs —

1) With Nouns used only in the Plural (see § 56) ; as, —  
*in utrīsque castris, in each camp.*

2) Where there is a distinct reference to two groups of persons or things ; as, —

**utriſque ducēs clāri fuērunt, the generals on each side (several in number) were famous.**

### VERBS.

356. 1. In case of Defective and Deponent Verbs, a Passive is supplied : —

a) By the corresponding verbal Nouns in combination with *esse, etc.* ; as, —

*in odiō sumus, we are hated* ;

*in invidiā sum, I am envied* ;

*admiratiōnI est, he is admired;*  
*obliviōne obruitur, he is forgotten (lit. is overwhelmed by oblivion);*  
*in ūsū esse, to be used.*

b) By the Passive of Verbs of related meaning. Thus :—  
*agitārI as Passive of persequi;*  
*temptārI as Passive of adorārI.*

2. The lack of the Perfect Active Participle in Latin is supplied—  
 a) Sometimes by the Perfect Passive Participle of the Dependent ; as, —  
*adhortātus, having exhorted;*  
*veritus, having feared.*

b) By the Ablative Absolute ; as, —  
*hostiūm agrīs vāstātīs Caesar exēcōitūm redūxit, having ravaged the country of the enemy, Caesar led back his army.*

c) By subordinate clauses ; as, —  
*eō cum advēnisset, castra posuit, having arrived there, he pitched a camp;*  
*hostēs qui in urbē irrūperant, the enemy having burst into the city.*

3. The Latin agrees with English in the stylistic employment of the Second Person Singular in an indefinite sense (= 'one'). Cf. the English 'You can drive a horse to water, but you can't make him drink.' But in Latin this use is mainly confined to certain varieties of the Subjunctive, especially the Potential (§ 280), Jussive (§ 275), Deliberative (§ 277), and the Subjunctive in conditional sentences of the sort included under § 302, 2, and 303. Examples :—  
*vidērēs, you could see;*  
*ūtāre vīribus, use your strength;*  
*quid hōc homine faciās, what are you to do with this man ?*  
*mēns quoque et animus, nisi tamquam lūminI oleum instillēs, extinguuntur senectūte, the intellect and mind too are extinguished by old age, unless, so to speak, you keep pouring oil into the lamp;*  
*tantō amōre possessiōnēs suās amplexI tenēbant, ut ab eis membra dīvelli citius posse dicerēs, they clung to their possessions with such an affectionate embrace, that you would have said their limbs could sooner be torn from their bodies.*

## PECULIARITIES IN THE USE OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

357. 1. To denote 'so many years, etc., afterwards or before' the Latin employs not merely the Ablative of Degree of Difference with *post* and *ante* (see § 223), but has other forms of expression. Thus:—

*post quīnque annōs, five years afterward;*

*paucōs ante diēs, a few days before;*

*ante quadriennium, four years before;*

*post diem quartum quam ab urbe discesserāmus, four days after we had left the city;*

*ante tertium annum quam dēcesserat, three years before he had died.*

2. The Latin seldom combines both Subject and Object with the same Infinitive; as, —

**Rōmānōs Hannibalem vīcissem cōnstat.**

Such a sentence would be ambiguous, and might mean either that the Romans had conquered Hannibal, or that Hannibal had conquered the Romans. Perspicuity was gained by the use of the Passive Infinitive; as, —

**Rōmānōs ab Hannibale victōs esse cōnstat, it is well established that the Romans were defeated by Hannibal.**

## PECULIARITIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OF THE DATIVE.

358. 1. The English *for* does not always correspond to a Dative notion in Latin, but is often the equivalent of *prō* with the Ablative, *viz.* in the senses —

a) *In defense of; as, —*

*prō patriā morī, to die for one's country.*

b) *Instead of, in behalf of; as, —*

*ūnus prō omnibus dīxit, one spoke for all;*

*haec prō lēge dīcta sunt, these things were said for the law.*

c) *In proportion to; as, —*

*prō multitudine hominum eōrum fīnēs erant angusti, for the population, their territory was small.*

2. Similarly, English *to* when it indicates motion is rendered in Latin by *ad*.

a. Note, however, that the Latin may say either *scribere ad aliquem*, or *scribere alicui*, according as the idea of motion is or is not predominant. So in several similar expressions.

3. In the poets, verbs of *mingling with*, *contending with*, *joining*, *clinging to*, etc., sometimes take the Dative. This construction is a Grecism. Thus: —

*sē miscet viris, he mingles with the men ;*  
*contendis Homērō, you contend with Homer ;*  
*dextrae dextram jungere, to clasp hand with hand.*

#### PECULIARITIES IN THE USE OF THE GENITIVE.

359. 1. The Possessive Genitive gives emphasis to the *possessor*, the Dative of Possessor emphasizes *the fact of possession*; as, —

*hortus patris est, the garden is my father's ;*  
*mihi hortus est, I possess a garden.*

2. The Latin can say either *stulti* or *stultum est dicere*, *it is foolish to say*; but Adjectives of one ending permit only the Genitive; as, —

*sapientis est haec sēcum reputāre, it is the part of a wise man to consider this.*

## PART VI.

### PROSODY.

**360.** Prosody treats of metres and versification.

**361. Latin Verse.** Latin Poetry was essentially different in character from English. In our own language, poetry is based upon *accent*, and poetical form consists essentially in a certain succession of *accented* and *unaccented* syllables. Latin poetry, on the other hand, was based not upon accent, but upon *quantity*, so that with the Romans poetical form consisted in a certain succession of *long and short syllables*, *i.e.* of long and short intervals of time.

This fundamental difference in the character of English and Latin poetry is a natural result of the difference in character of the two languages. English is a strongly accented language, in which quantity is relatively subordinate. Latin, on the other hand, was a quantitative language, in which accent was relatively subordinate.

#### QUANTITY OF VOWELS AND SYLLABLES.

##### GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

**362.** The general principles for the quantity of vowels and syllables have been given above in § 5. The following peculiarities are to be noted here :—

1. A vowel is usually short when followed by another vowel (§ 5. A. 2), but the following exceptions occur :—

- a) In the Genitive termination **-Ius** (except **alterius**) ; as, **ill̄ius**, **tōt̄ius**. Yet the **i** may be short in poetry ; as, **ill̄ius**, **tōt̄ius**.
- b) In the Genitive and Dative Singular of the Fifth Declension ; as, **diēI**, **aciēI**. But **fidēI**, **rēI**, **spēI** (§ 52, 1).
- c) In **fiō**, excepting **fit** and forms where **i** is followed by **er**. Thus : **fiōbam**, **flat**, **flunt** ; but **fieri**, **fierem**.
- d) In a few other words, especially words derived from the Greek ; as, **dIus**, **Aenēas**, **DārIus**, **hērōes**, etc.

2. A diphthong is usually long (§ 5. B. 2), but the preposition **prae** in composition is often shortened before a vowel ; as, **praeacūtus**.

3. A syllable containing a short vowel followed by two consonants (§ 5. B. 2) is long, even when one of the consonants is in the following word ; as, **terret** **populum**. Occasionally the syllable is long when both consonants are in the following word ; as, **prō** **segete** **spicās**.

4. Compounds of **jaciō**, though written **inicit**, **adicit**, etc., have the first syllable long, as though written **inj-**, **adj-**.

5. Before **j**, **č** and **š** made a long syllable, e.g. in **major**, **pejor**, **ejus**, **ejusdem**, **Pompejus**, **rejšcit**, etc. These were pronounced, **mai-jor**, **pei-jor**, **ei-jus**, **Pompei-jus**, **rei-jšcit**, etc. So also sometimes before **i**, e.g. **Pompe-i**, pronounced **Pompe-i**; **re-ičiō**, pronounced **rei-iciō**.

### Quantity of Final Syllables.

#### A. Final Syllables ending in a Vowel.

363. 1. Final **a** is mostly short, but is long :—

- a) In the Ablative Singular of the First Declension ; as, **portā**.
- b) In the Imperative ; as, **laudā**.
- c) In indeclinable words (except **itā**, **quičā**) ; as, **trigintā**, **contrā**, **posteā**, **interēā**, etc.

2. Final **e** is usually short, but is long —

- a) In the Ablative Singular of the Fifth Declension ; as, **diē**, **rē** ; hence **hodiē**, **quārē**. Here belongs also **famē** (§ 59. 2. b).
- b) In the Imperative of the Second Conjugation ; as, **monē**, **habē**, etc. ; yet occasionally **cavē**, **valē**.
- c) In Adverbs derived from Adjectives of the Second Declension, along with **ferē** and **fermē**. **Benē**, **malē**, **temerē**, **saepē** have **e**.
- d) In **ē**, **dē**, **mē**, **tē**, **sē**, **nē** (*not, lest*), **nē** (*verily*).

3. Final *i* is usually long, but is short in *niſi* and *quaſi*. *Mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *ibi*, *ubi*, have regularly *i*, but sometimes *I*; yet always *ibidem*, *ibique*, *ubique*.

4. Final *o* is regularly long, but is short—

- a) In *egō*, *duō*, *modō* (*only*), *citō*.
- b) Rarely in the First Person Singular of the Verb, and in Nominatives of the Third Declension; as, *amō*, *leō*.
- c) In a few compounds beginning with the Preposition *pro*, especially before *f*; as *prōfundere*, *prōficiēti*, *prōfugere*.

5. Final *u* is always long.

#### B. Final Syllables ending in a Consonant.

364. 1. Final syllables ending in any other consonant than *s* are short. The following words, however, have a long vowel: *sāl*, *sōl*, *Lār*, *pār*, *vēr*, *fūr*, *dīc*, *dīcē*, *ēn*, *nōn*, *quīn*, *sīn*, *sīc*, *cūr*, *hīc*<sup>1</sup> (*this*). Also adverbs in *o*; as, *hīo*, *hūo*, *istīc*, *illīc*, etc.

2. Final syllables in *-as* are long; as, *terrās*, *amās*.

3. Final syllables in *-es* are regularly long, but are short—

- a) In the Nominative and Vocative Singular of dental stems (§ 33) of the Third Declension which have a short penult in the Genitive; as, *segēs* (*segetis*), *obsēs* (*obsidis*), *mīlēs*, *dīvēs*. But a few have *-ēs*; *viz.* *pēs*, *ariēs*, *abiēs*, *pariēs*.
- b) In *ēs* (*thou art*), *penēs*.

4. Final *-os* is usually long, but short in *ōs* (*ossis*), *compōs*, *impōs*.

5. Final *-is* is usually short, but is long—

- a) In Plurals; as, *portīs*, *hortīs*, *nōbīs*, *vōbīs*, *nūbīs* (Acc.).
- b) In the Second Person Singular Perfect Subjunctive Active, as *amāverīs*, *monuerīs*, *audīverīs*, etc. Yet occasional exceptions occur.
- c) In the Second Person Singular Present Indicative Active of the Fourth Conjugation; as, *audīs*.
- d) In *vīs*, *force*; *īs*, *thou goest*; *fīs*; *sīs*; *velīs*; *nōlīs*; *vīs*, *thou wilt* (*māvīs*, *quamvīs*, *quīvīs*, etc.).

6. Final *-us* is usually short, but is long—

- a) In the Genitive Singular and in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural of the Fourth Declension; as, *frīlōtūs*.

<sup>1</sup> Rarely *hīc*.

b) In the Nominative and Vocative Singular of those nouns of the Third Declension in which the u belongs to the stem; as, *palūs* (-ūdis), *servitūs* (-ūtis), *tellūs* (-ūris).

**365. Greek Nouns** retain in Latin their original quantity; as, *Aenēs*, *epitomē*, *Dēlos*, *Pallas*, *Simois*, *Salamis*, *Dīdūs*, *Paridī*, *āēr*, *aethēr*, *crātēr*, *hērōas*. Yet Greek nouns in -ωρ regularly shorten the vowel of the final syllable; as, *rhētōr*, *Hectōr*.

### VERSE-STRUCTURE.

#### GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

**366. 1.** The metrical unit in versification is a short syllable, technically called a *mora* (˘). A long syllable (—) is regarded as equivalent to two morae.

**2.** A **Foot** is a group of syllables. The following are the most important kinds of fundamental feet:—

##### FEET OF THREE MORAE.

— ˘	Trochee.
˘ —	Iambus.

##### FEET OF FOUR MORAE.

— ˘ ˘	Dactyl.
˘ ˘ —	Anapaest.

**3.** A **Verse** is a succession of feet.

**4.** The different kinds of verses are named *Trochaic*, *Iambic*, *Dactylic*, *Anapaestic*, according to the foot which forms the basis of their structure.

**5. Iotus.** In every fundamental foot the long syllable naturally receives the greater prominence. This prominence is called *ictus*.<sup>1</sup> It is denoted thus: ˘ ˘ ˘ ; ˘ ˘ .

**6. Thesis and Arsis.** The syllable which receives the ictus is called the *thesis*; the rest of the foot is called the *arsis*.

**7. Elision.** Final syllables ending in a vowel, a diphthong, or -m are regularly elided before a word beginning with a vowel or h. In reading, we ordinarily omit the elided syllable entirely. Probably the ancients slurred the words together in some way. This may be indicated as follows: *corpore in ūnō*; *multum ille et*; *mōnstrum horrendum*; *causae ūrārum*.

**a.** Omission of elision is called **Hiatus**. It occurs especially before and after monosyllabic Interjections; as, *ō* et *praesidium*.

<sup>1</sup> *Ictus* was not accent,—neither stress accent nor musical accent,—but was simply the quantitative prominence inherent in a long syllable.

8. The ending of a word within a foot is called a **Caesura** (*cutting*). Every verse usually has one prominent caesura. The ending of a word and foot together within the verse is called a **diaeresis**.

9. Verses are distinguished as Catalectic or Acatalectic. A Catalectic verse is one in which the last foot is not complete, but lacks one or more syllables; an Acatalectic verse has its last foot complete.

10. At the end of a verse a slight pause occurred. Hence the final syllable may be either long or short (**syllaba anceps**), and may terminate in a vowel or **m**, even though the next verse begins with a vowel.

11. Iambic, Trochaic, and Anapaestic verses are further designated as dimeter, trimeter, tetrameter, according to *the number of dipodies* (pairs of feet) which they contain. Dactylic verses are measured by *single feet*, and are designated as tetrameter, pentameter, hexameter, accordingly.

#### SPECIAL PECULIARITIES.

367. 1. **Synizésis** (*Synaéresis*). Two successive vowels in the interior of a word are often united into a long syllable; as, —

aureis, deinde, anteire, deesse.

2. **Diástole**. A syllable usually short is sometimes long; as, —  
vidēt, audit.

3. **Systole**. A syllable usually long is sometimes short; as, —  
stetērunt.

a. Diastole and Systole are not mere arbitrary processes. They usually represent an earlier pronunciation which had passed out of vogue in the ordinary speech.

4. After a consonant, **i** and **u** sometimes become **j** and **v**. The preceding syllable then becomes long; as, —

abjete for abiete; genva for genua.

5. Sometimes **v** becomes **u**; as, —  
silua for silva; dissoluō for dissolvō.

6. Sometimes a verse has an extra syllable. Such a verse is called an **Hypérmetre**. The extra syllable ends in a vowel or **-m**, and is united with the initial vowel or **h** of the next verse by **Synaphéia**. Thus: —

..... ignārī hominumque locōrumque^  
errāmus.

7. **Tmesis (cutting).** Compound words are occasionally separated into their elements ; as,—

quōd mē cunque rapit tempestās, for quōcunque, *etc.*

8. **Sȳncope.** A short vowel is sometimes dropped between two consonants ; as,—  
repostus for repositus.

### THE DACTYLIC HEXAMETER.

368. 1. The Dactylic Hexameter, or Heroic Verse, consists theoretically of six dactyls. But in all the feet except the fifth, a spondee (— —) may take the place of the dactyl. The sixth foot may be either a spondee or a trochee, since the final syllable of a verse may be either long or short (*syllaba anceps*). The following represents the scheme of the verse :—

—∞, —∞, —∞, —∞, —∞, —∞.

2. Sometimes we find a spondee in the fifth foot. Such verses are called Spondaic. A dactyl usually stands in the fourth place, and the fifth and sixth feet are generally made up of a quadrisyllable ; as,—

armātumque aurō circumspicit Ōrōna  
cāra deum subolēs, magnum Jovis incrēmentum.

#### 3. Caesura.

a) The favorite position of the caesura in the Dactylic Hexameter is after the thesis of the third foot ; as,—

arma virumque canō || Trōjae qui prīmus ab ūrīs.

b) Less frequently the caesura occurs after the thesis of the fourth foot, usually accompanied by another in the second foot ; as,—

inde torō || pater Aenēas || sic ūrsus ab altō est.

c) Sometimes the caesura occurs between the two short syllables of the third foot ; as,—

Ō passī graviōra || dabit deus hīs quoque finem.

This caesura is called Feminine, as opposed to the caesura after a long syllable, which is called Masculine (as under *a* and *b*).

d) A pause sometimes occurs at the end of the fourth foot. This is called the Bucolic Diaeresis, as it was borrowed by the Romans from the Bucolic poetry of the Greeks. Thus:—

**sōlstitium pecorI dēfendite ; || jam venit aestās.**

### DACTYLIC PENTAMETER.

369. 1. The Dactylic Pentameter consists of two parts, each of which contains two dactyls, followed by a long syllable. Spondees may take the place of the dactyls in the first part, but not in the second. The long syllable at the close of the first half of the verse always ends a word. The scheme is the following:—

/\_ ∞/\_ ∞/\_ ||/\_ ∞/\_ ∞/\_

2. The Pentameter is never used alone, but only in connection with the Hexameter. The two arranged alternately form the so-called Ele-  
gic Distich. Thus:—

**Vergilium vidi tantum, nec amāra Tibullō  
Tempus amicitiae fāta dedēre meae.**

### IAMBIC MEASURES.

370. 1. The most important Iambic verse is the Iambic Trimeter (§ 366. 11), called also **Senarius**. This is an acatalectic verse. It consists of six Iambi. Its pure form is:—

/\_ —/\_ —/\_ —/\_ —/\_ —/\_ —

**Beātus ille qui procul negōtīs.**

The Caesura usually occurs in the third foot; less frequently in the fourth.

2. In place of the Iambus, a Tribrach (/\_ \_/\_ ) may stand in any foot but the last. In the odd feet (first, third, and fifth) may stand a Spondee, Dactyl, or Anapaest, though the last two are less frequent. Sometimes a Proceleusmatic (/\_ \_/\_ \_/\_ ) occurs.

3. In the Latin comic writers, Plautus and Terence, great freedom is permitted, and the various equivalents of the Iambus, *viz.* the Dactyl, Anapaest, Spondee, Tribrach, Proceleusmatic, are freely admitted in any foot except the last.

## SUPPLEMENTS TO THE GRAMMAR.

---

### I. JULIAN CALENDAR.

371. 1. The names of the Roman months are: **Jānuārius, Februārius, Mārtius, Aprilis, Majus, Jūnius, Jūlius** (*Quintilis*<sup>1</sup> prior to 46 B.C.), **Augustus** (*Sextilis*<sup>1</sup> before the Empire), **September, Octōber, November, December**. These words are properly Adjectives in agreement with *mēnsis* understood.

2. Dates were reckoned from three points in the month:—

- a) The Calends, the first of the month.
- b) The Nones, usually the fifth of the month, but the seventh in March, May, July, and October.
- c) The Ides, usually the thirteenth of the month, but the fifteenth in March, May, July, and October.

3. From these points dates were reckoned backward; consequently all days after the Ides of any month were reckoned as so many days before the Calends of the month next following.

4. The day before the Calends, Nones, or Ides of any month is designated as **prīdiē Kalendās, Nōnās, Idūs**. The second day before was designated as **diē tertīō ante Kalendās, Nōnās, etc.** Similarly the third day before was designated as **diē quārtō**, and so on. These designations are arithmetically inaccurate, but the Romans reckoned both ends of the series. The Roman numeral indicating the date is therefore always larger by one than the actual number of days before Nones, Ides, or Calends.

5. In indicating dates, the name of the month is added in the form of an Adjective agreeing with **Kalendās, Nōnās, Idūs**. Various forms of expression occur, of which that given under d) is most common:—

- a) **diē quīntō ante Idūs Mārtiās**;
- b) **quīntō ante Idūs Mārtiās**;
- c) **quīntō (V) Idūs Mārtiās**;
- d) **ante diēm quīntūm Idūs Mārtiās**.

---

<sup>1</sup> Originally the Roman year began with March. This explains the names *Quintilis, Sextilis, September, etc.*, *fifth month, sixth month, etc.*

6. These designations may be treated as nouns and combined with the prepositions **in**, **ad**, **ex**; as,—

**ad ante diem IV Kalendās Octōbrēs**, up to the 28th of September.  
**ex ante diem quIntum Īdūs Octōbrēs**, from the 11th of October.

7. In leap year the 25th was reckoned as the extra day in February. The 24th was designated as **ante diem VI Kalendās Mārtiās**, and the 25th as **ante diem bis VI Kal. Mārt.**

## 372.

## CALENDAR.

Days of the Month.	March, May, July, October.	January, August, December.	April, June, September, November.	February.
1	KALENDĪS	KALENDĪS.	KALENDĪS.	KALENDĪS.
2	VI. Nōnās.	IV. Nōnās.	IV. Nōnās.	IV. Nōnās.
3	V.	III.	III.	III.
4	IV.	Pridiē Nōnās.	Pridiē Nōnās.	Pridiē Nōnās.
5	III.	NōNīS.	NōNīS.	NōNīS.
6	Pridiē Nōnās.	VIII. Īdūs.	VIII. Īdūs.	VIII. Īdūs.
7	NōNīS.	VII.	VII.	VII.
8	VIII. Īdūs.	VI.	VI.	VI.
9	VII.	V.	V.	V.
10	VI.	IV.	IV.	IV.
11	V.	III.	III.	III.
12	IV.	Pridiē Īdūs.	Pridiē Īdūs.	Pridiē Īdūs.
13	III.	ĪDIBUS.	ĪDIBUS.	ĪDIBUS.
14	Pridiē Īdūs.	XIX. Kalend.	XVIII. Kalend.	XVI. Kalend.
15	ĪDIBUS.	XVIII.	XVII.	XV.
16	XVII. Kalend.	XVII.	XVI.	XIV.
17	XVI.	XVI.	XV.	XIII.
18	XV.	XV.	XIV.	XII.
19	XIV.	XIV.	XIII.	XI.
20	XIII.	XIII.	XII.	X.
21	XII.	XII.	XI.	IX.
22	XI.	XI.	X.	VIII.
23	X.	X.	IX.	VII.
24	IX.	IX.	VIII.	VI.
25	VIII.	VIII.	VII.	V. (VI.)
26	VII.	VII.	VI.	IV. (V.)
27	VI.	VI.	V.	III. (IV.)
28	V.	V.	IV.	Prid. Kal. (III Kal.)
29	IV.	IV.	III.	(Prid. Kal.)
30	III.	III.	Pridiē Kalend.	(Enclosed forms are for leap-year.)
31	Pridiē Kalend.	Pridiē Kalend.		

## II. PROPER NAMES.

373. 1. The name of a Roman citizen regularly consisted of three parts: the *praenōmen* (or given name), the *nōmen* (name of the *gens* or clan), and the *cognōmen* (family name). Such a typical name is exemplified by **Mārcus Tullius Cicerō**, in which **Mārcus** is the *praenōmen*, **Tullius** the *nōmen*, and **Cicerō** the *cognōmen*. Sometimes a second *cognōmen* (in later Latin called an *agnōmen*) is added — especially in honor of military achievements; as, —

**Gāius Cornēlius Scipiō Africānus.**

## 2. ABBREVIATIONS OF PROPER NAMES.

A. = <b>Aulus.</b>	Mam. = <b>Māmerous.</b>
App. = <b>Appius.</b>	N. = <b>Numerius.</b>
C. = <b>Gāius.</b>	P. = <b>Pūblius.</b>
Cn. = <b>Gnaeus.</b>	Q. = <b>QuIntus.</b>
D. = <b>Decimus.</b>	Sex. = <b>Sextus.</b>
K. = <b>Kaesō.</b>	Ser. = <b>Servius.</b>
L. = <b>Lūcius.</b>	Sp. = <b>Spurius.</b>
M. = <b>Mārcus.</b>	T. = <b>Titus.</b>
M'. = <b>Mānius.</b>	Ti. = <b>Tiberius.</b>

## III. FIGURES OF SYNTAX AND RHETORIC.

## A. Figures of Syntax.

374. 1. **Ellipsis** is the omission of one or more words; as, — *quid multa, why (should I say) much?*

2. **Brachylogy** is a brief or condensed form of expression; as, — *ut ager sine cultūrā fructuōsus esse nōn potest, sīc sine doctrinā animus*, as a field cannot be productive without cultivation, so the mind (cannot be productive) without learning.

Special varieties of Brachylogy are —

a) **Zeugma**, in which one verb is made to stand for two; as, — *minis aut blandimentis corrupta* = (terrified) by threats or corrupted by flattery.

b) **Compendiary Comparison**, by which a modifier of an object is mentioned instead of the object itself; as, —

*dissimilis erat Charēs eōrum et factis et mōribus*, lit. *Chares was different from their conduct and character*, i.e. Chares's conduct and character were different, etc.

3. **Pléonasm** is an unnecessary fullness of expression ; as, —  
*prius praedicam*, lit. *I will first say in advance*.

4. **Hendiadys** (*ἐν διὰ δύον*, *one through two*) is the use of two nouns joined by a conjunction, in the sense of a noun modified by a Genitive or an Adjective ; as, —

*febris et aestus, the heat of fever ;*  
*celeritate cursuque, by swift running.*

5. **Prolépsis**, or **Anticipation**, is the introduction of an epithet in advance of the action which makes it appropriate ; as, —  
*submersās obrue puppēs*, lit. *overwhelm their submerged ships*,  
*i.e.* overwhelm and sink their ships.

a. The name Prolepsis is also applied to the introduction of a noun or pronoun as object of the main clause where we should expect it to stand as subject of a subordinate clause. Thus : —

*nōsti Mārcellum quam tardus sit, you know how slow*  
*Marcellus is* (lit. *you know Marcellus, how slow he is*).

Both varieties of Prolepsis are chiefly confined to poetry.

6. **Anacolíthon** is a lack of grammatical consistency in the construction of the sentence ; as, —

*tum Anci filii . . . impēnsius eis indignitās crēscere, then the sons*  
*of Ancus . . . their indignation increased all the more.*

7. **Hýsteron Próteron** consists in the inversion of the natural order of two words or phrases ; as, —

*moriāmur et in media arma ruāmus* = *let us rush into the midst of*  
*arms and die.*

#### B. Figures of Rhetoric.

375. 1. **Lítotes** (literally *softening*) is the expression of an idea by the denial of its opposite ; as, —

*haud parum labōris, no little toil* (*i.e.* much toil) ;  
*nōn ignōrō, I am not ignorant* (*i.e.* I am well aware).

2. **Oxymóron** is the combination of contradictory conceptions ; as, —  
*sapiēns insānia, wise folly.*

3. **Alliteration** is the employment of a succession of words presenting frequent repetition of the same letter (mostly initial) ; as, *sēnsim sine sēnsū aetās senēscit*.

4. **Onomatopéia** is the suiting of sound to sense ; as, —  
*quadrupedante putrem sonitū quatit ungula campum, 'And shake*  
*with horny hoof's the solid ground.'*

## INDEX TO THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE MOST IMPORTANT VERBS.

NOTE.—Compounds are not given unless they present some special irregularity. The references are to sections.

### A.

abdō, 122, I, 2.  
abiciō, 122, III.  
abnuō, 122, II.  
aboleō, 121, I.  
abstergeō, 121, III.  
absum, 125.  
accendō, 122, I, 4.  
accidit, 138, III.  
acciō, 121, I, N.  
accipō, 122, III.  
acquīrō, 122, I, 6.  
acuō, 122, II.  
addō, 122, I, 2.  
adhaerēscō, 122, IV, 2.  
adipiscor, 122, V.  
adolēscō, 122, IV, I.  
adsum, 125.  
adveniō, 123, IV.  
afferō, 129.  
afficiō, 122, III.  
affligō, 122, I, I, a.  
agnōscō, 122, IV, I.  
agō, 122, I, 3.  
algeō, 121, III.  
alō, 122, I, 5.  
amiciō, 123, III.  
amō, 120, I.  
amplector, 122, V.  
angō, 122, I, 7.  
aperiō, 123, II.  
appetō, 122, I, 6.  
arceō, 121, II, a.  
arcessō, 122, I, 6.  
ärdeō, 121, III.  
ärēscō, 122, IV, 2.  
arguō, 122, II.

ascendō, 122, I, 4.  
aspiciō, 122, III.  
assentior, 123, VII.  
assuēfaciō, 122, III.  
assuēfiō, 122, III.  
audiō, 123, I.  
auferō, 129.  
augeō, 121, III.  
aveō, 121, II, a, N. 2.

### C.

cadō, 122, I, 2.  
caedō, 122, I, 2.  
calefaciō, 122, III.  
calefiō, 122, III.  
caleō, 121, II, a.  
calēscō, 122, IV, 2.  
canō, 122, I, 2.  
capessō, 122, I, 6.  
capiō, 122, III.  
careō, 121, II, a.  
carpō, 122, I, I, a.  
caveō, 121, V.  
cēdō, 122, I, I, b.  
cēnseō, 121, II, b.  
cernō, 122, I, 6.  
cieō, 121, I.  
cingō, 122, I, I, a.  
circumsistō, 122, I, 2.  
claudō, 122, I, I, b.  
claudō, 122, I, 7.  
coemō, 122, I, 3.  
coepi, 133.  
coērceō, 121, II, a.  
cognōscō, 122, IV, I.  
cōgō, 122, I, 3.  
colligō, 122, I, 3.

colō, 122, I, 5.  
commīniscor, 122, V.  
comperiō, 123, V.  
compleō, 121, I.  
concutiō, 122, III.  
condō, 122, I, 2.  
cōfērō, 129.  
cōfiteor, 121, VII.  
congruō, 122, II.  
cōsenēscō, 122, IV, 2.  
cōserō, 122, I, 5.  
cōserō, 122, I, 6 (*plant*).  
cōnsidō, 122, I, 4.  
cōsistō, 122, I, 2.  
cōspiciō, 122, III.  
cōstat, 138, III.  
cōstituō, 122, II.  
cōsuēscō, 122, IV, I.  
cōsulō, 122, I, 5.  
contineō, 121, II, b.  
contingit, 138, III.  
coquō, 122, I, I, a.  
crepō, 120, II.  
crēscō, 122, IV, I.  
cubō, 120, II.  
cupiō, 122, III.  
currō, 122, I, 2.

### D.

dēbeō, 121, II, a.  
dēcernō, 122, I, 6.  
decer, 138, II.  
dēdecet, 138, II.  
dēdō, 122, I, 2.  
dēfendō, 122, I, 4.  
dēleō, 121, I.  
dēligō, 122, I, 3.

The references are to sections.

dēmō, 122, I, 3.  
 dēserō, 122, I, 5.  
 dēsinō, 122, I, 6.  
 dēsum, 125.  
 dīcō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 differō, 129.  
 diligō, 122, I, 3.  
 dīmicō, 120, II.  
 dirimō, 122, I, 3.  
 dīripiō, 122, III.  
 dīruō, 122, II.  
 discernō, 122, I, 6.  
 discō, 122, IV, 1.  
 disserō, 122, I, 5.  
 distingūō, p. 87, footnote.  
 dīvidō, 122, I, 1, b.  
 dō, 127.  
 doceō, 121, II, b.  
 doleō, 121, II, a.  
 domō, 120, II.  
 dūcō, 122, I, 1, a.

## E.

ēdō, 122, I, 2.  
 edō, 122, I, 3.  
 efferō, 129.  
 effugīō, 122, III.  
 egeō, 121, II, a, N. 1.  
 ēliciō, 122, III.  
 ēmineō, 121, II, a, N. 1.  
 emō, 122, I, 3.  
 eō, 122.  
 ēsuriō, 123, VI.  
 ēvādō, p. 87, footnote.  
 ēvānēscō, 122, IV, 3.  
 excolō, 122, I, 5.  
 excūdō, 122, I, 4.  
 exercēō, 121, II, a.  
 exterior, 123, VII.  
 explēō, 121, I, N.  
 explicō, 120, II.  
 extingūō, p. 87, footnote.  
 extimēscō, 122, IV, 2.

## F.

faciō, 122, III.  
 fallō, 122, I, 2.  
 fateor, 121, VII.  
 faveō, 121, V.  
 feriō, 123, VI.  
 ferō, 129.

ferveō, 121, VI.  
 figō, 122, I, 1, b.  
 findō, 122, I, 2, N.  
 fingō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 fiō, 131.  
 flectō, 122, I, 1, b.  
 fleō, 121, I.  
 flōreō, 121, II, a, N. 1.  
 fluō, 122, II.  
 flōrēscō, 122, IV, 2.  
 fodīō, 122, III.  
 foveō, 121, V.  
 frangō, 122, I, 3.  
 fremō, 122, I, 5.  
 fricō, 120, II.  
 frīgeō, 121, II, a, N. 2.  
 fruor, 122, V.  
 fugiō, 122, III.  
 fulciō, 123, III.  
 fulgeō, 121, III.  
 fulget, 138, I.  
 fundō, 122, I, 3.  
 fungor, 122, V.  
 furō, 122, I, 7.

## G.

gemō, 122, I, 5.  
 gerō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 gignō, 122, I, 5.  
 gradior, 122, V.

## H.

habeō, 121, II, a.  
 haereō, 121, III.  
 hauriō, 123, III.  
 horreō, 121, II, a, N. 1.

## I.

ignōscō, 122, IV, 1.  
 illiciō, 122, III.  
 imbuō, 122, II.  
 immineō, 121, II, a, N. 2.  
 impleō, 121, I, N.  
 implicō, 120, II.  
 incipiō, 122, III.  
 incolō, 122, I, 5.  
 incumbō, 122, I, 5.  
 indulgeō, 121, III.  
 induō, 122, II.  
 īferō, 129.

ingemīscō, 122, IV, 2.  
 insum, 125.  
 intellegō, 122, I, 3.  
 interficiō, 122, III.  
 intersum, 125.  
 invādō, p. 87, footnote.  
 inveniō, 123, IV.  
 īrāscor, 122, V.

## J.

jaceō, 121, II, a.  
 jaciō, 122, III.  
 jubeō, 121, III.  
 jungō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 juvō, 120, III.

## L.

lābor, 122, V.  
 lācessō, 122, I, 6.  
 laedō, 122, I, 1, b.  
 lambō, 122, I, 7.  
 largiōr, 123, VII.  
 lateō, 121, II, a, N. 1.  
 lavō, 120, III.  
 legō, 122, I, 3.  
 libet, 138, II.  
 liceor, 121, VII.  
 licet, 138, II.  
 loquor, 122, V.  
 lūceō, 121, III.  
 lūdō, 122, I, 1, b.  
 lūgeō, 121, III.  
 luō, 122, II.

## M.

maereō, 121, II, a, N. 2.  
 mālō, 130.  
 maneō, 121, III.  
 mātūrēscō, 122, IV, 3.  
 medeor, 121, VII.  
 meminī, 133.  
 mereō, 121, II, a.  
 mereor, 121, VII.  
 mergō, 122, I, 1, b.  
 mētior, 123, VII.  
 metuō, 122, II.  
 micō, 120, II.  
 minuō, 122, II.  
 misceō, 121, II, b.

The references are to sections.

miseret, 138, II.  
 misereor, 121, VII.  
 mittō, 122, I, I, *b*.  
 molō, 122, I, 5.  
 moneō, 121, II, *a*.  
 mordeō, 121, IV.  
 morior, 122, V.  
 moveō, 121, V.

## N.

nanciscor, 122, V.  
 nāscor, 122, V.  
 nectō, 122, I, I, *b*.  
 neglegō, 122, I, 3.  
 ningit, 138, I.  
 niteō, 121, II, *a*, N. I.  
 nitor, 122, V.  
 noceō, 121, II, *a*.  
 nōlō, 130.  
 nōscō, 122, IV, I.  
 nūbō, 122, I, I, *a*.

## O.

obdūrēscō, 122, IV, 3.  
 oblinō, 122, I, 6.  
 obliviscor, 122, V.  
 obmūtēscō, 122, IV, 3.  
 obruō, 122, II.  
 obsolēscō, 122, IV, I.  
 obsum, 125.  
 obtineō, 121, II, *b*.  
 ōdi, 133.  
 offerō, 129.  
 oleō, 121, II, *a*, N. I.  
 operiō, 123, II.  
 oporet, 138, II.  
 opperior, 123, VII.  
 ōrdior, 123, VII.  
 orior, 123, VII.

## P.

paenitet, 138, II.  
 palleō, 121, II, *a*, N. I.  
 pandō, 122, I, 4.  
 parcō, 122, I, 2.  
 pāreō, 121, II, *a*.  
 pariō, 122, III.  
 pāscō, 122, IV, I.  
 pāscor, 122, IV, I.

patefaciō, 122, III.  
 patefiō, 122, III.  
 pateō, 121, II, *a*, N. I.  
 patior, 122, V.  
 paveō, 121, V.  
 pelliciō, 122, III.  
 pellō, 122, I, 2.  
 pendēo, 121, IV.  
 pendō, 122, I, 2.  
 peragō, 122, I, 3.  
 percellō, 122, I, 2, N.  
 percrēbrēscō, 122, IV, 3.  
 perdō, 122, I, 2.  
 perficiō, 122, III.  
 perfringō, 122, I, 3.  
 perfruor, 122, V.  
 perlegō, 122, I, 3.  
 permulceō, 121, III.  
 perpetior, 122, V.  
 pervādō, p. 87, footnote.  
 petō, 122, I, 6.  
 piget, 138, II.  
 pingō, 122, I, I, *a*.  
 placeō, 121, II, *a*.  
 plaudō, 122, I, I, *b*.  
 pluit, 138, I.  
 polleō, 121, II, *a*, N. 2.  
 pollicor, 121, VII.  
 polluō, 122, II.  
 pōnō, 122, I, 6.  
 poscō, 122, IV, I.  
 possidō, 122, I, 4.  
 possum, 126.  
 pōtō, 120, I.  
 praebeō, 121, II, *a*.  
 praestat, 138, III.  
 praesum, 125.  
 prandeō, 121, VI.  
 prehendō, 122, I, 4.  
 premō, 122, I, I, *b*.  
 prōdō, 122, I, 2.  
 prōmō, 122, I, 3.  
 prōsum, 125.  
 prōsternō, 122, I, 6.  
 pudet, 138, II.  
 pungō, 122, I, 2.

## Q.

quaerō, 122, I, 6.  
 quatiō, 122, III.  
 queror, 122, V.  
 quiēscō, 122, IV, I.

rādō, 122, I, I, *b*.  
 rapiō, 122, III.  
 reddō, 122, I, 2.  
 redimō, 122, I, 3.  
 referciō, 123, III.  
 referō, 129.  
 referit, 138, II.  
 regō, 122, I, I, *a*.  
 relinquō, 122, I, 3.  
 reminiscor, 122, V.  
 reor, 121, VII.  
 reperiō, 123, V.  
 rēpō, 122, I, I, *a*.  
 resistō, 122, I, 2.  
 respuō, 122, II.  
 restinguō, p. 87, footnote.  
 retineō, 121, II, *b*.  
 rideō, 121, III.  
 rōdō, 122, I, I, *b*.  
 rubeō, 121, II, *a*, N. I.  
 rumpō, 122, I, 3.  
 ruō, 122, II.

## S.

saepiō, 123, III.  
 saliō, 123, II.  
 sanciō, 123, III.  
 sapiō, 122, III.  
 sarcīō, 123, III.  
 scindō, 122, I, 2, N.  
 scisō, 122, IV, 2.  
 scribō, 122, I, I, *a*.  
 sculpō, 122, I, I, *a*.  
 secō, 120, II.  
 sedeō, 121, V.  
 sentiō, 123, III.  
 sepeliō, 123, I.  
 sequor, 122, V.  
 serō, 122, I, 6.  
 serpō, 122, I, I, *a*.  
 sileō, 121, II, *a*, N.  
 sīnō, 122, I, 6.  
 solvō, 122, I, 4.  
 sonō, 120, II.  
 spargō, 122, I, I, *b*.  
 spernō, 122, I, 6.  
 splendeō, 121, II, *a*, N. I.  
 spondeō, 121, IV.  
 statuō, 122, II.  
 sternō, 122, I, 6.  
 -stinguō, 122, I, I, *a*.

The references are to sections.

stō, 120, IV.  
 strepō, 122, I, 5.  
 strideō, 121, VI.  
 stringō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 struō, 122, II.  
 studeō, 121, II, a, N. I.  
 suādeō, 121, III.  
 subigō, 122, I, 3.  
 subsum, 125.  
 sum, 100.  
 sūmō, 122, I, 3.  
 suō, 122, II.  
 supersum, 125.  
 sustineō, 121, II, b.

## T.

taceō, 121, II, a.  
 taedēt, 138, II.  
 tangō, 122, I, 2.  
 tegō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 temnō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 tendō, 122, I, 2.  
 teneō, 121, II, b.  
 terō, 122, I, 6.  
 terreō, 121, II, a.

texō, 122, I, 5.  
 timeō, 121, II, a, N. I.  
 tingō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 tollō, 122, I, 2, N.  
 tonat, 138, I.  
 tondeō, 121, IV.  
 tonō, 120, II.  
 torpeō, 121, II, a, N. I.  
 torqueō, 121, III.  
 torreō, 121, II, b.  
 trādō, 122, I, 2.  
 trahō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 tremō, 122, I, 5.  
 tribūō, 122, II.  
 trūdō, 122, I, 1, b.  
 tueor, 121, VII.  
 tundō, 122, I, 2.

U.

ulciscor, 122, V.  
 unguō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 urgeō, 121, III.  
 ūrō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 ūtor, 122, V.

V.

vādō, 122, I, 1, b.  
 valeō, 121, II, a.  
 vehō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 vellō, 122, I, 4.  
 veniō, 123, IV.  
 vereor, 121, VII.  
 vergō, 122, I, 7.  
 verrō, 122, I, 4.  
 vertō, 122, I, 4.  
 vescor, 122, V.  
 vetō, 120, II.  
 videō, 121, V.  
 vigeō, 121, II, a, N. I.  
 vinciō, 123, III.  
 vincō, 122, I, 3.  
 vireō, 121, II, a, N. I.  
 visō, 122, I, 4.  
 vivō, 122, I, 1, a.  
 volō, 130.  
 volvō, 122, I, 4.  
 vomō, 122, I, 5.  
 voveō, 121, V.

## GENERAL INDEX.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

**ABBREVIATIONS.** — Abl., ablative; acc., accusative; adj., adjective; adv., adverb, adverbial, or adverbially; cf., compare; comp., comparison or comparative; conj., conjunction or conjugation; const., constr., construction; dat., dative; decl., declension; gen., genitive; ind., indicative; indir. disc., indirect discourse; loc., locative; n., note; nom., nominative; plu., plural; prep., preposition; pron., pronoun or pronunciation; sing., singular; subj., subject; subjv., subjunctive; voc., vocative; w., with.

### A.

ᾳ, vowel, 2, 1; pronunciation, 3, 1; development of *ᾳ* before a single consonant, 7, 1, *a*; before two consonants, 7, 1, *b*; *ᾳ* as ending of nom. sing. of 1st decl., 20; in voc. sing. of Greek nouns in -*ɛs* of 1st decl., 22; in nom. sing. of Greek nouns in -*ɛ* of 1st decl., 22, 3; termination of nom. and acc. plu. of neuters, 23; 35; 48; termination of nom. sing. of nouns of 3d decl., 28; gender of nouns in -*ᾳ* of 3d decl., 43, 3; ending of acc. sing. of Greek nouns of 3d decl., 47, 1; regular quantity of final *a*, 363, 1; exceptions to quantity of final *a*, 363, 1, *a-c*.  
ᾳ, pronunciation, 3, 1; arising by contraction, 7, 2; as ending of stem in 1st decl., 18; *ᾳ*-stems inflected, 20; in voc. sing. of Greek nouns of 1st decl., 22; in voc. sing. of Greek nouns in -*ɛs* of 3d decl., 47, 4; distinguishing vowel of 1st conjugation, 98; ending of imperative act. of 1st conj., 101; final *a* long by exception, 363, 1, *a-c*.  
ᾳ, *ab*, *abs*, use, 142, 1; with town names, 229, 2.  
ᾳ to denote agency, 216.  
— to denote separation, 214.  
— place from which, 229.  
— with town names, 229, 2.  
— with abl. of gerund, 338, 4, *b*.  
ᾳ-stems, 20; 98; 101.

### Abbreviations of proper names, 373.

Ablative case, 17; 213 f.

— in -*ābus*, 21, 2, *c*.  
— in -*d* in prons., 84, 3; 85, 3.  
— formation of sing. of adjs. of 3d decl., 67, *a*; 70, 1-5.  
— of *i*-stems, 37; 38.  
— genuine abl. uses, 214 f.  
— absolute, 227.  
— of agent, 216.  
— of accompaniment, 222.  
— of accordance, 220, 3.  
— of association, 222, *A*.  
— of attendant circumstance, 221; 227, 2, *c*).  
— of cause, 219.  
— of comparison, 217.  
— of degree of difference, 223.  
— of fine or penalty, 208, 2, *b*.  
— of manner, 220.  
— of material, 224, 3.  
— of means, 218.  
— of penalty, 208, 2, *b*.  
— of place where, 228.  
— of place whence, 229.  
— of price, 225.  
— of quality, 224.  
— of separation, 214; with compounds of *dis-* and *se*, 214, 3.  
— of source, 215.  
— of specification, 226.  
— of time at which, 230.  
— of time during which, 231, 1.  
— of time within which, 231.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

Ablative case, of way by which, 213, 9.  
 — with *continēri*, *cōsistere*, *cōstāre*, 218, 4.  
 — with special phrases, 218, 7.  
 — with *jungere*, *mis̄cere*, *mūlāre*, etc., 222, A.  
 — with *faciō*, *fiō*, 218, 6.  
 — with prepositions, 142; 213 f.  
 — with verbs of filling, 218, 8.  
 — with verbs and adjs. of freeing, 214, 1, a, and N. 1.  
 — with adjs. of plenty, 218, 8.  
 — with *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, 218, 1.  
 — with *opus* and *ūsus*, 218, 2.  
 — with *nitor*, *innixus*, and *frētus*, 218, 3.  
*abs*, 142, 1.  
*absēns*, 125.  
 Absolute, ablative, 227.  
 — time, of participles, 336, 4.  
 — use of verbs, 174, a.  
 Abstract nouns, 12, 2, b; plural of, 55, 4, c.).  
*-ābus*, 21, 2, e).  
*ac*, 341, 2, b); = *as*, *than*, 341, 1, c).  
 Acatalectic verses, 366, 9.  
*accidit ut*, 297, 2.  
 Accent, 6; in gen. of nouns in *-ius* and *-ium*, 25, 1 and 2.  
*accidit ut*, 297, 2.  
*accidit quod*, 299, 1, b.  
 Accompaniment, abl. of, 222.  
 Accordance, abl. of, 220, 3.  
 Accusative case, 17; in *-ān* and *-ēn*, of Greek nouns, 22; in *-om* in 2d decl., 24; in *-ōn* and *-ōn* in Greek nouns, 27; in *-ā* in sing. of Greek nouns, 47, 1; in *-ās* in plu., 47, 3; in *-im* and *-īs* in i-stems, 37; 38; acc. sing. neut. as adv., 77, 3; 176, 3; 172 f.  
 — of duration of time, 181.  
 — of result produced, 173, B; 176.  
 — of extent of space, 181.  
 — of limit of motion, 182 f.  
 — of neut. prons. or adjs., 176, 2.  
 — of person or thing affected, 173, A; 175.  
 — in exclamations, 183.  
 — as subj. of inf., 184.  
 — with *admonēō*, *commoneō*, etc., 207.  
 — with adv. force, 176, 3.  
 — with compounds, 175, 2.  
 — with impersonal verbs, 175, 2, c.  
 — with intransitive verbs, 175, 2, a.  
 — with passive used as middle, 175, 2, d).  
 — with verbs of remembering and forgetting (*memīni*, *oblīscor*, *reminiscor*), 206, 1, 2.  
 — with verbs expressing emotion, 175, 2, b.  
 — with verbs of tasting and smelling, 176, 5.  
 — with verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, etc., 177.  
 — with verbs of asking, requesting, demanding, teaching, concealing, 178, 1-5.  
 — with adjs. (*propior*, *proximus*), 141, 3.  
 — with adverbs (*propius*, *proximē*), 141, 3; *clam*, *pridē*, 144, 2.  
*Genavam ad oppidum*, 182, 2, a.  
 — cognate acc., 176, 4.  
 — Greek acc., 180.  
 — synecdochical acc., 180.  
 — two accs., direct obj. and pred. acc., 177; person affected and result produced, 178; with compounds of *trāns*, 179; with other compounds, 179, 2.  
 — with prepositions, 141; 179 f.  
 — retained in pass., 178, 2.  
 Accusing, verbs of, constr., 208 f.  
*accūsō*, constr., 178, 1, d).  
*ācer*, decl., 68; compared, 71, 3.  
 Acquitting, verbs of, constr., 208 f.  
*ac sī*, with subjv., 307, 1.  
*ad*, 'toward,' 'in vicinity of,' 182, 3; *ad* with acc. alternating with dat., 358, 2.  
 — compounds of *ad* governing dat., 187, III; 188, 2, d).  
 — with gerund denoting purpose, 338, 3.  
*ādēs*, patronymic ending, 148, 6, a.  
*ādg* = *agg*-, 9, 2.  
 Adjectives, 62 f.; 354; derivation of, 150 f.  
 — of 1st and 2d decl., 63 ff.  
 — in *-ius*, gen. sing., 63, a.  
 — of 3d decl., 67 ff.; in abl., 70, 5.  
 — comparison of adjs., 71 f.; in *-er*, 71, 3; in *-īs*, 71, 4; comparative lacking, 73, 3; defective comparison, 73; not admitting comparison, 75;

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

comparison by *magis* and *maxime*, 74.  
 — numerals, 78 f.  
 — syntax, 233 ff.; attributive and predicate adjs., 233, 2.  
 — agreement, 234 f.  
 — used substantively, 236 f.  
 — denoting part of an object, 241, 1.  
 — with force of adverbs, 239.  
 — force of comp. and superl., 240, 1.  
 — not followed by infinitive, 333.  
 — not used with proper names, 354, 3.  
 — equivalent to a poss. gen., 354, 4.  
 — special Latin equivalents of Eng. adjs., 354, 1.  
 — equiv. to rel. clause, 241, 2.  
 — as pred. acc., 277, 2.  
 — position of adj., 350, 4.  
 — pronominal adjs., 92.  
 — governing gen., 204.  
 — governing dat., 192.  
 — governing acc., 141, 3.  
 — construed with abl., 214, 1, *d*; 217, 1; 218, 8; 223; 226, 2; 227, 1.  
 — with supine in -ū, 340, 2.

*adl.* = *all*, 9, 2.

*admonēō*, constr., 207.

Admonishing, const. of verbs of, 207.

*adr.* = *arr*., 9, 2.

*ads.* = *ass*., 9, 2.

*ad sensum*, constr., 235, *B*, 2, *c*; 254, 4.

*adulēscēns*, spelling, 9, 2.

*adulter*, decl., 23, 2.

*adultus*, force, 114, 2.

Adverbs, defined, 140; formation and comparison, 76 f.; 140, 157.  
 — in -iter from adjs. in -us, 77, 4.  
 — in -tus and -tim, 77, 5.  
 — in ī and -o, 77, 2.  
 — numeral, 79.  
 — as preps., 144, 2.  
 — derivation of, 157.  
 — with gen., 201, 2; 3; and *a*.  
 — special meanings, 347.  
 — position, 350, 6.

Adversative clauses, 309.  
 — conjunctions, 343.

*adversus*, prep. with acc., 141.

*ae*, how pronounced, 3, 2; phonetic changes, 7, 1, *d*.

*aedēs*, plu., 61.

*aequālis*, abl. sing. of, 70, 5, *a*; as subst., 238.

*aequor*, decl., 34.

*aequum est* = *aequum sit*, 271, 1, *b*).

*aes*, in plu., 55, 4, *b*; lacks gen. plu., 57, 7.

*aetās*, decl., 40, 1, *c*); *id aetatis*, 185, 2.

*-aeus*, suffix, 152, 3.

*aevom*, decl., 24.

Affected, acc. of person or thing, 175.

Agency, dat. of, 189; abl., 216.

Agent, abl., 216; with names of animals, 216, 2.

*ager*, decl., 23.

Agreement, nouns, 166; 168; 169, 2; 3; 4.  
 — adjs. 234; in gender, 235, *B*; in number, 235, *A*; prons., 250; verbs, with one subj., 254, 1; with two or more subjs., 255, 1.

*-āi*, case-ending, gen. sing., 1st decl., poet., 21, 2, *b*).

*ain*, 135, N.

*ajō*, 135; quantity of first syllable, 362, 5.

*-al*, declension of nouns in, 39.

*alacer*, decl., 68, 1; comp., 73, 4.

*aliqua*, 91, 2.

*aliqui*, 91; 91, 2.

*aliquis*, 91; 252, 2; *aliquis dicat, dixerit*, 280, 1.

*-ālis*, suffix, 151, 2.

*aliter ac*, 341, 1, *c*.

*alius*, 66; 92, 1; used correlatively, 253, 1.

*alius ac*, 'other than,' 341, 1, *c*).

*Allia*, gender of, 15, 3, N.

*alliciō*, conj., 109, 2, *b*).

Alliteration, 375, 3.

Alphabet, 1.

*alter*, decl., 66; 92, 1; used correlatively, 253, 1.

Alternative questions, 162, 4; indirect, 300, 4.

*alteruter*, decl., 92, 2.

*alvus*, gender of, 26, 1, *b*).

*amandus sum*, conj., 115.

*amātūrus sum*, conj., 115.

*amb-* (*ambi-*), 159, 3, N.

*ambō*, 80, 2, *a*; usage, 355, 2.

*amō*, conj., 101.

*amplius* = *amplius quam*, 217, 3.

*amussis*, -im, 38, 1.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

*an*, 162, 4, and *a*; 300, 4; *hanc scio an*,  
*nescio an*, 300, 5.

Anacolouthon, 374, 6.

Anapaest, 366, 2.

Anaphora, 350, 11, *b*.

Anastrophe of prep., 141, 2; 142, 3;  
144, 3.

*anceps* (*syllaba anceps*), defined, 366,  
10.

*Androgeos*, decl., 27.

*animal*, decl., 39.

Animals, as agents, 216, 2.

*animi*, locative, 232, 3.

*annōn*, in double questions, 162, 4.

Answers, 162, 5.

*ante*, prep. w. acc., 141; as adv., 144, 1;  
dat. w. verbs compounded w. *ante*,  
187, III; in expressions of time, 357,  
1; 371, 5; *ante diem*, 371, 5; 6.

Antecedent of rel., 251.

— attraction of, 251, 4.

— incorporated with rel., 251, 4.

Antecedent omitted, 251, 1.

— repeated with rel., 251, 3.

Antepenult, 6, 2.

*antepōnō*, with dat., 187, III, 2.

*antequam*, with ind., 291; with subjv.,  
292.

Anticipation, denoted by subjv. w.  
*antequam* and *priusquam*, 292; by  
subjv. with *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, 293,  
III, 2; 374, 5.

*-ānus*, suffix, 151, 2; 152, 1; 3.

Aorist tense, see Historical perfect.

Apodosis, 301 ff.

— in conditional sent. of 1st type, 302,  
4; result clauses as apodoses, 322; *quīn*-  
clauses as apodoses, 322; ind. ques-  
tions as apodoses, 322, *b*; *potuerim* in  
apodosis, 322, *c*; apodosis in indir. disc.,  
319-321; in expressions of obligation,  
ability, etc., 304, 3, *a*; with periphras-  
tic conjugations, 304, 3, *b*.

Apposition, 169; agreement, 169, 2;  
partitive, 169, 5; with voc. in nom.,  
171, 2; genitive w. force of appositive,  
202; *id* as appositive of clause, 247,  
1, *b*; inf. as appositive, 326; 329;  
subst. clauses as appositives, 282, 1,  
*f*; 294; 297, 3.

Appositive of locative, 169, 4; with acc.  
of limit of motion, 182, 2, *a*; with town

names, in abl. of place whence, 229,  
2.

— position of, 350, 2.

*aptus*, w. dat., 192, 2.

*apud*, prep. w. acc., 141.

*Archias*, declension of, 22.

*-ar*, declension of nouns in, 39.

*arguō*, constr., 178, 1, *d*.

*-aris*, suffix, 151, 2.

*-arium*, suffix, 148, 3.

*-arius*, suffix, 151, 2.

*armiger*, decl., 23, 2.

Arrangement of words, 348-350; of  
clauses, 351.

*Arsis*, defined, 366, 6.

*artūs*, dat. and abl. plu. of, 49, 3.

*arx*, decl., 40.

*-as*, acc. plu. of in Greek nouns, 47, 3.

*-ās*, old gen. sing., 1st decl., case-end-  
ing, 21, 2, *a*).

— ending of Greek nouns, nom.  
sing. in, 22.

— gender of nouns in *-as*, 43, 2; 45, 1.

— voc. of Greek nouns in *-as*, *antis*,  
47, 4.

— *-atis*, abl. of patrials in, 70, 5, *c*).

Asking, case const. with verbs of, 178, 1,  
*c*; subst. clauses w., 295, 1; ind. ques-  
tions, 300, 1.

Aspirates, 2, 3, *c*.

Assimilation of consonants, 8, 4 f.; 9, 2.

Association, abl. of, 222, *A*.

*Asyndeton*, 341, 4, *a*; 346.

*at*, 343, 1, *d*).

*-ātim*, suffix, 157, 2.

*Attās*, decl., 47, 4.

*atomus*, gender of, 26, 1, *c*).

*atque*, 341, 2, *b*; = *as*, 341, 1, *c*).

*atqui*, 343, 1, *e*).

Attendant circumstance, abl. of, 221;  
227, 2, *e*).

Attraction of demonstratives, 246, 5; of  
relatives, 250, 5; subjunctive by at-  
traction, 324; of adjectives, 327, 2, *a*;  
328, 2.

Attributive adjs., 233, 2.

*-ātus*, its force as suffix, 151, 4.

*audācter*, formation and comparison,  
76, 2.

*audēō*, conj., 114, 1.

*audiō*, conj., 107; with pres. partic.  
337, 3.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

*aulāi*, archaic gen., 21, 2, δ.

*ausus*, force as participle, 336, 5.

*aut*, 342, I, a).

*autem*, 343, I, c); 350, 8.

Auxiliary omitted in infin., 116, 5; in finite forms, 166, 3.

*auxilium*, *auxilia*, 61.

*-ax*, suffix, 150, 2.

**B.**

*balneum*, *balneae*, 60, 2.

*barbitos*, decl., 27.

Bēlieving, verbs of, with dat., 187, II.

*belli*, locative, 232, 2.

*bellum*, decl., 23.

*bene*, comparison, 77, I.

Benefiting, verbs of, w. dat., 187, II.

*benevolus*, comparison, 71, 5, a).

*-ber*, declension of month names in, 68, I.

*-bilis*, suffix, 150, 4.

*bonus*, decl., 63; comparison, 72.

*bōs*, decl., 41.

Brachylogy, 374, 2.

Bucolic diaeresis, 368, 3, d.

*-bulum*, suffix, 147, 4.

*-bundus*, suffix, 150, I.

*būris*, decl., 38, I.

**C.**

C., for G. as abbreviation of *Gāius*, 373.

*caēdēs*, decl., 40.

Caesura, 366, 8; in dactylic hexameter, 368, 3.

*calcar*, decl., 39.

Calendar, 371; 372.

Calends, 371, 2, a).

*campester*, decl., 68, I.

*canis*, decl., 38, 2.

*capiō*, conj., 110.

*carbasus*, gender of, 26, I, δ).

*carcer*, *carcerēs*, 61.

Cardinals, defined, 78, I; list of, 79; decl., 80; with and without *et*, 81, I; 3; expressed by subtraction, 81, 2; replaced by distributives in poetry, 81, 4, d.

*carē*, comparison, 76, 2.

*carō*, decl., 42.

*carrus*, *carrum*, 60, I.

Cases, 17; alike in form, 19; 170 ff.

Case-endings, 17, 3.

*castrum*, *castra*, 61.

Catalectic verses, 366, 9.

*causā*, with gen., 198, I; *nūlla causa est* cū, with subjv., 295, 7.

Causal clauses, 285; 286; clause of characteristic with accessory notion of cause, 283, 3.

— conjunctions, 345.

Cause, abl. of, 219; 227, 2, d).

*cavē*, 363, 2, b).

*cavē*, *cavē nē* in prohibitions, 276, δ.

*-ce*, 6, 3 f.; 87, footnote 2.

*cedo*, *cette*, 137, 3.

*cēdō*, with dat., 187, II.

*celeber*, decl., 68, I.

*celer*, decl., 68, 2.

*cēlō*, constr., 178, I, e).

*cēnātus*, force, 114, 2.

*cētera*, adverbial acc., 185, 2.

*cēteri*, use, 253, 4.

Characteristic, clauses of, 283; denoting cause or opposition ('although'), 283, 3; gen. of, 203, I; abl., 224.

Charge, gen. of, 208, I; 2.

Chiasmus, 350, II, c).

Choosing, const. w. verbs of, 177, I-3.

*circā*, *circiter*, *circum*, preps. w. acc., 141.

*circum*, compounds of, w. dat., 187, III.

*circumdō*, const., 187, I, a).

Circumstance, abl. of attendant, 221.

*cis*, prep. w. acc., 141.

*citerior*, comparison, 73, I.

*cito*, 77, 2, a.

*citrā*, prep. w. acc., 141.

*civitās*, decl., 40, I, e.

*clam*, with acc., 144, 2.

Clauses, coörd. and subord., 164, 165.

Clauses of characteristic, 283; purpose, 282; result, 284; causal, 285; temporal with *postquam*, *ut*, *ubi*, *simul ac*, etc., 287; with *cum*, 288; substantive clauses, 294 f.; condition, 301 f.; conditional comparison, 307; concessive, 308; adversative, 309; wish or proviso, 310; relative, 311 f.; 283 f.

*clāvis*, decl., 38, I.

Clinging, construction of verbs of, 358, 3.

*clipeus*, *clipeum*, 60, I.

Close of sentences, cadences used, 350, 12.

*coepī*, conj., 133; *coepitus est*, 133, I.

Cognate acc., 176, 4.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

*cognōmen*, 373.  
*cōgō*, w. acc., 178, 1, *d*); w. infin., 331, VI.  
 Collective nouns, 12, 2, *a*); w. plu. verb, 254, 4.  
*colus*, gender of, 26, 1, *b*).  
*com-*, compounds of, w. dat., 187, III.  
*comēdō*, conj., 128, 2.  
*comētēs*, decl., 22.  
*comitia*, as time expression, 230, 1.  
 Commanding, dat. w. verbs of, 187, II; subst. clause w. verbs of, 295, 1; commands expressed by jussive subjv., 275; by imperative, 281.  
 Common gender, 15, *B*, N. 1.  
 — nouns, 12, 1.  
 — syllables, 5, *B*, 3.  
*commonefaciō*, w. gen. and acc., 207.  
*commoneō*, w. gen. and acc., 207.  
*commūnīs*, w. gen., 204, 2; with dat., 204, 2, *a*.  
*commūtō*, w. abl., 222, *A*.  
 Comparatives, decl., 69; w. abl., 217; w. *quam*, 217, 2; occasional meaning, 240.  
 —, two required in Latin, 240, 4.  
 Comparison of adjs., 71 f.; of adverbs, 76; 77.  
 — participles as adjs., 71, 2.  
 — adjs. in *-dicus*, *-ficus*, *-volus*, 71, 5.  
 — defective, 73.  
 — abl. of, 217.  
 Comparison, conditional, 307.  
 Compendiary comparison, 374, 2, *b*); w. result clauses, 284, 4; w. clauses of characteristic, 283, 2, *a*.  
 Completed action, tenses expressing, 262-4; 267, 3.  
 Compounds, 158 f.; spelling of, 9, 2.  
 Compound sentences, 164.  
 — verbs governing acc., 175, 2, *a*; governing dat., 187, III; 188, 2, *d*.  
 Conative uses of pres., 259, 2; of imperf., 260, 3; of pres. partic., 336, 2, *a*.  
 Concessive clauses, 308; 'although' as accessory idea to clause of characteristic, 283, 3.  
 — subjunctive, 278.  
 Conclusion, see Apodosis.  
 Concrete nouns, 12, 2, *a*).  
 Condemning, verbs of, constr., 208 f.  
 Conditional clauses of comparison, 307.  
 — sentences, 1st type (nothing implied), 302; in indir. disc., 319; 2d type ('should' - 'would'), 303; in indir. disc., 320; 3d type (contrary to fact), 304; in indir. disc., 321; abl. abs. equivalent to, 227, 2, *b*); introduced by relative pronouns, 312; general conditions, 302, 2; 3; indicative in contrary-to-fact apodoses, 304, 3; protasis omitted or implied, 305, 1; protasis contained in imperative, or jussive subjv., 305, 2; employment of *nisi*, *sī nōn*, *sin*, *sī minus*, 306; conditional relative sentences, 312, 2.  
*cōfidō*, w. abl., 219, 1, *a*.  
 Conjugation, 11; 93 f.; the four conjugations, 98; periphrastic, 115; peculiarities of conj., 116.  
 Conjunctions, 145, 1; 341 f.  
*cōnor*, with inf., 295, 5, *a*.  
 Consecutive clauses, see Result clauses.  
*cōsistere*, with abl., 218, 4.  
 Consonant stems, nouns, 29 f.; adjs., 70, 1.  
 — partially adapted to 1-stems, 40.  
 Consonants, 2, 2 f.; pronunciation, 3, 3.  
 —, double, 2, 9.  
 — combinations of, in division into syllables, 4, 2 f.  
 Consonant changes, 8; omission of finals, 8, 3; assimilation of, 8, 4 f.  
 — stems, 29; following analogy of 1-stems, 40.  
*cōspiciō*, conj., 109, 2, *b*).  
*cōstāre*, w. abl., 218, 4.  
 Construction acc. to sense, 254, 4; 235, *B*, 2, *c*).  
*cōsuētūdō est*, with subjv. substantive clause, 297, 3.  
*cōsuēvi* = pres., 262, *A*.  
*cōsulāris*, abl. sing. of, 70, 5, *a*.  
 Contending, verbs of, with dat., 358, 3.  
*contentus*, w. abl., 219, 1.  
*continēri*, with abl., 218, 4.  
*contingit ut*, 297, 2.  
 Continued action, tenses for, 257, 1, *b*.  
*contrā*, prep. w. acc., 141; as adv., 144, *I*.  
 Contraction, 7, 2.  
 —, length of vowel as result of, 5, *A*, 1, *b*).  
 Contrary-to-fact conditions, 304.  
 Convicting, verbs of, constr., 208 f.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

Coördinate clauses, 165.  
 — conjunctions, 341 f.  
*cōpia, cōpiae*, 61.  
 Copulative conjunctions, 341.  
*cor*, lacks gen. plu., 57, 7.  
*cornū*, decl., 48.  
 Correlative conjunctions, 341, 3; 342, 2.  
 — adverbs, 140.  
*cottidiē*, spelling, 9, 2.  
 Countries, gender of, 26, 1, a.  
 Crime, gen. of, 208, 1; 2.  
*-crum*, suffix, 147, 4.  
*-culum*, suffix, 147, 4.  
*-culus (a, um)*, suffix, 148, 1.  
*cum*, appended, 142, 4.  
*cum* (conj.), 'when,' 288-290; 'whenever,' 288, 3.  
 — adversative, 309, 3.  
 — causal, 286, 2.  
 — explicative, 290.  
 — to denote a recurring action, 288, 3; 289, a.  
 — 'when suddenly,' 288, 2.  
*cum . . . tum*, 290, 2.  
*cum primum*, 287, 1.  
*cum*, spelling of, 9, 1.  
*cum* (prep.), with abl. of manner, 220; with abl. of accompaniment, 222; appended to prons., 142, 4.  
*-cundus*, suffix, 150, 1.  
*cupiō*, conj., 109, 2, a; with subst. clause developed from optative, 296; w. inf., 331, IV, and a.  
*cūr, nūlla causa est cūr*, w. subjv., 295, 7.  
*cūrō*, with gerundive const. as obj., 337, 8, b, 2.  
 Customary action, 259, 1; 260, 2.

D.

*D*, changed to *s*, 8, 2; *d* final omitted, 8, 3; assimilated, 8, 4.  
 Dactyl, 366, 2.  
 Dactylic hexameter, 368.  
 — pentameter, 369.  
*dapis*, defective, 57, 6.  
 Daring, verbs of, with obj. inf., 328, 1.  
 Dates, 371, 2-5; as indeclinable nouns, 371, 6; in leap year, 371, 7.  
 Dative, 17; irregular, 1st decl., 21, 2, c); 3d decl., 47, 5; 4th decl., 49, 2; 3; 5th decl., 52, 1 and 3; 186 ff.  
 — in the gerundive const., 339, 7.

— of agency, 189.  
 — of direction and limit of motion, 193.  
 — of indir. obj., 187.  
 — of advantage or disadvantage, so called, 188, 1.  
 — of local standpoint, 188, 2, a).  
 — of person judging, 188, 2, c).  
 — of possession, 190; 359, 1.  
 — of purpose or tendency, 191; 339, 7.  
 — of reference, 188.  
 — of separation, 188, 2, d).  
 — of the gerund, 338, 2.  
 — with adjs., 192; with *proprius, com-miūnis*, 204, 2; *similis*, 204, 3.  
 — with compound verbs, 187, III.  
 — with intrans. verbs, 187, II.  
 — with *nōmen est*, 190, 1.  
 — with impersonal pass. verbs, 187, II, b.  
 — with trans. verbs, 187, I.  
 — with verbs of mingling, 358, 3.  
 — ethical dat., 188, 2, b).  
*dē*, prep. w. abl., 142; with abl. instead of gen. of whole, 201, 1, a; with verbs of reminding, 207, a; compounds of *dē* governing dat., 188, 2, d; *dē vi*, with verbs of accusing and convicting, 208, 3; with gerund and gerundive, 338, 4, b.  
*dea, dēabus*, 21, 2, c).  
*dēbēbam, dēbūi* in apodosis, 304, 3, a).  
*dēbēō*, governing obj. inf., 328, 1.  
*dēbūi*, with pres. inf., 270, 2.  
*decenvir*, gen. plu. of, 25, 6, b).  
*decernō*, w. subst. clause developed from volitive, 295, 4.  
*decer*, w. acc., 175, 2, c).  
 Declarative sentences, defined, 161, 1; in indir. disc., 314.  
 Declension, 11; heteroclites, 59.  
 —, stems and gen. terminations, 18.  
 —, 1st decl., 20-22; 2d decl., 23-27; 3d decl., 28-47; 4th decl., 48-50; 5th decl., 51-53; of Greek nouns, 22; 27; 47; of adjs., 62-69; of prons., 84-90.  
 Decreeing, verbs of, w. subjv., 295, 4.  
*dēdecet*, 175, 2, c).  
 Defective verbs, 133 f.; nouns, 54 f.; 52, 4; 57; comparison, 73.  
 Definite perfect, see Present perfect.  
 Degree of difference, abl. of, 223.  
 Degrees of comparison, 71 ff.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

*délectat*, w. inf. as subj., 327, 1.  
*délector*, w. abl. of cause, 219.  
 Deliberative subjv., 277; in indir. questions, 300, 2; in indir. disc., 315, 3.  
 Demanding, verbs of, w. two accs., 178, 1; w. subst. clause, 295, 1.  
 Demonstrative pronouns, 87; 246; of 1st, 2d, and 3d persons, 87; position of demonstratives, 350, 5, a.  
 Denominative verbs, 156.  
 Dental mutes, 2, 4.  
 — stems, 33.  
 Dependent clauses, 282 ff.  
 Deponent verbs, 112; forms with passive meanings, 112, δ); semi-deponents, 114.  
 Depriving, verbs of, w. abl., 214, 1, δ.  
 Derivatives, 147 f.  
 -dēs, patronymics in, 148, 6.  
 Description, imperf. as tense of, 260, 1, a.  
 Desideratives, 155, 3.  
 Desire, adjs. of, w. gen., 204, 1; verbs of, w. subst. clauses, 296, 1.  
*déterior*, 73, 1.  
*deus*, decl., 25, 4.  
*dévertor*, 114, 3.  
*dexter*, decl., 65, 1.  
*di*, 159, 3, N.  
 Diaeresis, 366, 8; bucolic d., 368, 3, δ).  
 Diastole, 367, 2.  
*dic*, 116, 3.  
*dicitur*, *dictum est*, w. inf., 332, note.  
*dicō*, accent of compounds of, in imperative, 116, 3.  
 -*dicus*, comparison of adjs. in, 71, 5.  
*Didō*, decl., 47, 8.  
*diēs*, decl., 51; gender, 53.  
 Difference, abl. of degree of, 223.  
*difficile est* = Eng. potential, 271, 1, δ).  
*difficilis*, comp., 71, 4.  
*dignor*, with abl., 226, 2.  
*dignus*, 226, 2; in rel. clauses of purpose, 282, 3.  
 Dimeter verses, 366, 11.  
 Diminutives, 148, 1.  
 Diphthongs, 2, 1; 3, 2; diphthong stems, 41; diphthongs shortened, 362, 2.  
*diphthongus*, gender of, 26, 1, c).  
 Dipodies, 366, 11.  
 Direct reflexives, 244, 1.  
 — object, 172.  
 — quotation, 313.  
 — discourse, 313.  
 — questions, 162.  
*dīs-*, in compounds, 159, 3, N.  
 Disjunctive conjunctions, 342.  
*dissimilis*, comp., 71, 4.  
 Distributives, 63, 2; 78, 1; 79; 81, 4.  
*dīū*, compared, 77, 1.  
*dīves*, decl., 70, 1; compared, 71, 6.  
*dīxī*, 116, 4, c.  
*dō*, conj., 127.  
*dōceō*, with acc., 178, 1, δ); with inf., 331, VI.  
*dōmī*, locative, 232, 2.  
*dōmō*, 229, 1, δ).  
*dōmōs*, 182, 1, δ.  
*dōmum*, 182, 1, δ; 'house' in acc., 182, N.  
*dōmūs*, decl., 49, 4; gender, 50.  
*dōnec*, with ind., 293; with subjv., 293, III, 2.  
*dōnō*, constr., 187, 1, a.  
*dōs*, gender, 44, 3.  
 Double consonants, 2, 9.  
 — questions, 162, 4; indirect, 300, 4.  
 Doubting, verbs of, w. *quin*, 298.  
 Dubitative subjunctive, see Deliberative.  
*dubitō*, *dubium est*, *nōn dubitō*, *nōn dubium est*, with *quin*, 298; *nōn dubitō* w. inf., 298, a.  
*dūc*, 116, 3.  
*dūcō*, accent of compounds of, in imper., 116, 3.  
*dūsim*, *dūint*, 127, 2.  
 -*dūm*, 6, 3.  
*dūm*, temporal with ind., 293; with subjv., 293, III, 2; in wishes and provisos, 310.  
*dūmmodo*, 310.  
*dūo*, decl., 80, 2.  
 Duration of time, 181, 2.  
 Duty, expressed by gerundive, 189; 337, 8; verbs of duty in conclusion of cond. sentences contrary-to-fact, 304, 3, a; subst. clauses dependent on verbs of, 295, 6; inf. w. verbs of duty, 327, 1; 328, 1; 330; 'it is the duty of,' 198, 3; 'I perform a duty,' 218, 1.  
*dūumvir*, gen. plu. of, 25, 6, δ).  
*dūx*, decl., 32.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

## E.

*ɛ*, as vowel, 2, 1; as second member of diphthongs, 2, 1; sound of, 3, 1; change to *i*, 7, 1, *a*; for *ɛ*, 7, 1, *c*; in voc. sing. of 2d decl., 23; in abl. sing. of 3d decl., 31; dropped in nom. of neuters of 3d decl., 39; -*ɛ* for -*i* in abl. of *mare*, 39; alternating w. *i* in abl. sing. of i-stems, 37, 38; for *ɛ* in gen. sing. of 5th decl., 52, 1; in abl. sing. of adjs. of 3d decl., 70, 1, 3; in *benɛ* and *malɛ*, 77, 1; distinguishing vowel of 3d conj., 98; before *j*, 362, 5; for -*ɛ* in imperatives, 363, 2, *b*; in *temerɛ* and *saepe*, 363, 2, *c*.

*ɛ̄*, pronunciation, 3, 1; by contraction, 7, 2; as ending of Greek nouns, 22; *ɛ̄*-stems, 51; ending of dat. of 5th decl., 52, 3; distinguishing vowel of 2d conj., 98; -*ɛ̄* in *same*, 363, 2, *a*; in adverbs, 363, 2, *c*.

*ɛ̄, ex*, use, 142, 2; see *ex*.

*equis*, 91, 6.

*ēdic*, 116, 3.

Editorial 'we,' 242, 3.

*ēdō*, 128.

*ēdūc*, 116, 3.

*effic̄io ut*, 297, 1.

*effic̄itur ut*, 297, 2.

Effort, subjv. w. verbs of, 295, 5.

*egeō*, w. abl., 214, 1, *c*.

*ego*, 84.

*egomet*, 84, 2.

*ei*, diphthong, 2, 1; 3, 2.

-*ei*, gen. of 5th decl., 52, 1.

-*ēis*, 148, 6, *b*.

*ejus*, as poss., 86, 1.

Elegiac distich, 369, 2.

Elision, 366, 7.

Ellipsis, 374, 1.

-*ellus* (*a, um*), 148, 1.

Emphasis, 349.

Enclitics, accent of preceding syllable, 6, 3.

—, -*met*, 84, 2; -*pte*, 86, 3; *cum* as enclitic, 142, 4.

End of motion, see Limit.

Endings, case endings, 17, 3; personal, of verb, 96; in formation of words, 147f.

*enim*, 345.

-*ēnsimus* (-*ēnsumus*), 79, N.

-*ēnsis*, 151, 2; 152, 3.

Envy, verbs of, with dat., 187, II.

*ēō*, 132; cpds., 132, 1.

Epexegetical genitive, 202.

Epistolary tenses, 265.

*ēpistula*, spelling, 9, 2.

*ēpitomē*, decl., 22.

*ēpulum, epulæ*, 60, 2.

*ēquābus*, 21, 2, *c*).

*ēquester*, decl., 68, 1.

*ēquos*, decl., 24.

-*er*, decl., of nouns in, 23; adjs., 63; 64; 65; 68; adjs. in -*er* compared, 71, 3.

*ērgā*, prep. w. acc., 141.

*ērgō*, 344, 1, *b*).

-*ernus*, suffix, 154.

-*ēs*, gender of nouns in, 43, 1; exception, 44, 5; in nom. plu. of Greek nouns of 3d decl., 47, 2.

-*ēs*, ending of Greek nouns, nom. sing. in, 22.

—, gen. -*is*, decl. of nouns in, 40, 1, *a*).

*ēsse*, conjugation of, 100; compounds of, 125; 126; *ēsse* omitted, 116, 5.

*est quī*, with subj., 283, 2.

*et*, 341, 1, *a*; in enumerations, 341, 4, *c*).

*et is*, 247, 4.

*et . . . neque*, 341, 3.

Ethical dative, 188, 2, *b*).

*etiam*, in answers, 162, 5.

*et nōn*, 341, 2, *c*).

*etsi*, 'although,' 309, 2; *etsi*, 'even if,' 309, 2, *a*.

-*ētum*, suffix, 148, 3.

-*ēus*, inflection of Greek nouns in, 47, 6; adj. suffix, 151, 1.

*ēvenīt ut*, 297, 2.

*ex*, 142, 2; with abl., instead of gen. of whole, 201, 1, *a*; compounds of, with *ē*, 188, 2, *d*; with abl. of source, 215, 1.

Exchanging, verbs of, with abl. of association, 222, *A*.

Exclamation, acc. of, 183.

Exclamatory sentences, 161, 3.

Expectancy, clauses denoting, in subjv., 292, 1; 293, III, 2.

*ēxposcō*, constr., 178, 1, *a*).

*ēxsistō*, spelling, 9, 2.

*ēxpectō*, spelling, 9, 2.

*ēxterī, exterior*, 73, 2.

*ēxtrēmūs*, use, 241, 1.

*ēxuō*, w. abl., 214, 1, *b*.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

## F.

*f*, pronunciation, 3, 3; *nf*, quantity of vowel before, 5, 1, 2.  
*fac*, 116, 3; with subjv., 295, 5.  
*facile*, 77, 3.  
*facili*s, comp., 71, 4.  
*faciō*, 109, 2, *a*; pass. of, 131.  
 —, in imper., 116, 3.  
*falsus*, comparison, 73, 3.  
*famē*, 59, 2, *b*).  
 Familiarity, adjs. of, w. gen., 204, 1.  
*familias*, 21, 2, *a*).  
*fāri*, 136.  
*fār*, indeclinable, 58.  
*faucēs*, decl., 40, 1, *d*).  
 Favor, verbs signifying, with dat., 187, II.  
 Fearing, verbs of, constr., 296, 2.  
*febris*, decl., 38, 1.  
*fēlix*, 70.  
 Feminine, see Gender.  
 Feminine caesura, 368, 3, *c*.  
*femur*, decl., 42, 4.  
*-fer*, decl. of nouns in, 23, 2; adjs., 65, 1.  
*ferō*, and its compounds, 129.  
*-ficus*, comparison of adjs. in, 71, 5.  
*fidei*, 52, 1.  
*fidō*, 114, 1; with abl., 219, 1, *a*.  
*fidus*, compared, 73, 3.  
*fierem*, *fieri*, 362, 1, *c*; *fieri potest ut*, 298, 2.  
 Fifth decl., 51 f.  
 Figures of rhetoric, 375.  
 — of syntax, 374.  
*filī*, 25, 3.  
*filia*, *filiābus*, 21, 2, *e*).  
 Filling, verbs of, w. abl., 218, 8.  
 Final clauses, see Purpose clauses.  
 Final consonant omitted, 8, 3.  
 Final syllables, quantity, 363, 364.  
*finis*, *finēs*, 61.  
 Finite verb, 95.  
*fīō*, conj., 131.  
*fīō*, with abl., 218, 6.  
 First conj., 101; principal parts of verbs of, 120; deponents of 1st conj., 113.  
 First decl., 20 f.; peculiarities, 21; Greek nouns of 1st decl., 22.  
*fīt ut*, 297, 2.  
*flāgitō*, constr., 178, 1, *a*).  
*fodiō*, conj., 109, 2, *a*).  
 Foot, in verse, 366, 2.  
 'For,' its Latin equivalents, 358, 1.

*fore*, page 57, footnote 3.  
*fore ut*, 270, 3; 297, 2.  
*forem*, *forēs*, etc., page 57, footnote 2.  
*foris*, 228, 1, *c*.  
 Formation of words, 146 f.  
*fors*, *forte*, 57, 2, *a*.  
*fortior*, decl., 69.  
*fortis*, decl., 69.  
*fortūna*, *fortūnae*, 61.  
 Fourth conj., 107.  
 Fourth decl., 48; dat. in -ī, 49, 2; gen. in -ī, 49, 1; dat. abl. plu. in -ubus, 49, 3.  
*frāude*, abl. of manner, 220, 2.  
 Free, abl. w. adjs. signifying, 214, 1, *d*.  
 Freeing, abl. w. verbs of, 214, 1, *a*.  
*frēnum*, plu. of, 60, 2.  
 Frequentatives, 155, 2.  
*frētus* w. abl., 218, 3.  
 Fricatives, 2, 7.  
 Friendly, dat. w. adjs. signifying, 192, 1.  
*frēctus*, decl., 48.  
*frēgi*, compared, 72; 70, 6.  
*frēgis*, 57, 6.  
*frēor*, with abl., 218, 1; in gerundive constr., 339, 4.  
*fugīō*, conj., 109, 2, *a*).  
*fuī*, *fuīstī*, etc., for *sum*, *es*, etc., in compound tenses, p. 60, footnote; p. 61, footnote.  
 Fullness, adjs. of, w. abl., 218, 8; w. gen., 204, 1.  
*fungor*, w. abl., 218, 1; in gerundive constr., 339, 4.  
*fūr*, decl., 40, 1, *d*).  
*fūrtō*, abl. of manner, 220, 2.  
 Future tense, 261; w. imperative force, 261, 3.  
 — time in the subjv., 269.  
 — perfect, 264; with future meaning, 133, 2; inf., 270, 4.  
 — imperative, 281, 1.  
 — infinitive, 270, 1, *c*; periphrastic fut. inf., 270, 3, and *a*.  
 — participle, 337, 4.  
*futūrum esse ut*, with subjv., 270, 3.

## G.

*gaudeō*, semi-deponent, 114, 1.  
*gemō*, w. acc., 175, 2, *b*.  
 Gender, 13-15; in 1st decl., 20, 21; in 2d decl., 23; exceptions, 26; in 3d

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

decl., 43 f.; in 4th decl., 50; in 5th decl., 53; determined by endings, 14; by signification, 15, *A*; heterogeneous nouns, 60.

*gener*, decl., 23, 2.

General relatives, 312, 1; general truths, 259, 1; 262, *B*, 1; 'general' conditions, 302, 2; 3.

Genitive, 17; in -*i* for -*ī*, 25, 1 and 2; of 4th decl., in -*i*, 49, 1; of 5th decl. in -*i*, 52, 2; of 5th decl. in -*ī*, 52, 1; in -*ē*, 52, 3; of 1st decl. in -*ī*, 21, 2, *b*; of 1st decl. in -*ās*, 21, 2, *a*; gen. plu. -*um* for -*ārum*, 21, 2, *d*; -*um* for -*ōrum*, 25, 6; 63, 2; -*um* for -*īum*, 70, 7; gen. plu. lacking, 57, 7; syntax of, 194 f.

— of characteristic, 203, 1.

— of charge with judicial verbs, 208.

— of indefinite price, 203, 4.

— of indefinite value, 203, 3.

— of material, 197.

— of measure, 203, 2.

— of origin, 196.

— of possession, 198.

— of quality, 203.

— of the whole, 201.

— appositional, 202.

— objective, 200.

— of separation, 212, 3.

— subjective, 199.

~~—~~ with adjs., 204; with participles, 204, 1, *a*.

— with *causā*, *grātiā*, 198, 1.

— with verbs, 205 f.; of plenty and want, 212; with impers. verbs, 209.

— position of gen., 350, 1.

*genus*, decl., 36; *id genus*, 185, 1.

*-ger*, decl. of nouns in, 23, 2; adjs., 65, 1.

Gerund, 95, 1; 1st conj., 101; 2d conj., 103; 3d conj., 105; 4th conj., 107; syntax, 338; with object, 338, 5.

Gerundive, 95, 1; 1st conj., 102; 2d conj., 104; 3d conj., 106; 4th conj., 108; in periphrastic conj., 115; 337, 8.

Gerundive, const., 339, 1-6; in passive periphrastic conj., 337, 8 f.; gen. denoting purpose, 339, 6; with dat. of purpose, 191, 3; 339, 7.

*gnārūs*, not compared, 75, 2.

Gnomic present, 259, 1; perfect, 262, 1.

*gradior*, conj., 109, 2, *c*.

Grammatical gender, 15.

*grātiā*, with gen., 198, 1; *grātiae*, 61.

Greek nouns, 1st decl., 22; 2d decl., 27; exceptions in gender, 26, 1, *c*; 3d decl., 47; Greek acc., 180; Greek nouns in verse, 365.

*grūs*, decl., 41, 2.

*gu* = *gv*, 3, 3.

Guttural mutes, 2, 4.

— stems, 32.

H.

*h*, pron., 3, 3; *ph*, *ch*, *th*, 2, 4; 3, 3.

*habeō*, with perf. pass. partic., 337, 6.

*Hadria*, gender, 21, 1.

Happening, verbs of, w. ind., 299, 1, 2; w. subjv., 297, 2.

Hard consonants, 2, 3, *a*), footnote 1.

Hardening, 367, 4.

*hau*, use, 347, 2, *a*; *hau* *scīō an*, 300, 5.

*havē*, 137, 5.

Help, verbs signifying, w. dat., 187, II.

Hendiadys, 374, 4.

*heri*, locative, 232, 2.

Heteroclites, 59.

Heterogeneous nouns, 60.

Hexameter, dactylic, 368.

Hiatus, 366, 7, 4.

*hic*, 87; 246, 1; 246, 2; *hic*, 364, footnote.

*hiems*, 35, footnote.

Hindering, verbs of, with subjv., 295, 3.

Historical tenses, 258; historical present, 259, 3; 268, 3; historical perfect, 262, *B*; historical infinitive, 335.

*honor*, decl., 36.

Hoping, verbs of, w. inf., 331, I.

Hortatory subjv., 274.

*hortus*, decl., 23.

*hōscīne*, 87, footnote 1.

*hostis*, decl., 38.

*hōjusce*, 87, footnote 1.

*humī*, locative, 232, 2.

*humīlis*, comp., 71, 4.

*humus*, gender of, 26, 1, *b*.

*huncīne*, 87, footnote 1.

Hyperbaton, 350, 11, *a*).

Hypermeter, 367, 6.

Hysteron proteron, 374, 7.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

## I.

*i*, *i*, *i*; in diphthongs, 2, 1; pron., 3, 1; from *ɛ*, 7, 1, *a*; from *ɛ*, 7, 1, *b*; dropped by syncope, 7, 4; for *ɛ* in some words, 9, 1; changes to *ɛ*, 39; dropped, 39; final *i* short, 363, 3; becomes *j*, 367, 4.

*i*-stems, 37; 39; not always ending in *-is*, 38, 3.

*-i*, gen. and voc. of 2d decl. nouns in *-ius* and *-ium* in, 25, 1 and 2.

— gen. of 4th decl. nouns in *-us*, 49, 1.

— gen. of 5th decl. nouns, 52, 2.

*i*-stem, *vīs*, 41.

*i*, in abl., 3d decl., 38, 1; 39; in adjs., 67, 3, *a*; 70, 5; participles, 70, 3; patrials, 70, 5, *c*; nom. plu., of *is*, 87; as characteristic of 4th conj., 98.

*-ia*, 149.

*lambus*, 366, 2.

*lambic measures*, 370.

— trimeter, 370.

*-ānus*, suffix, 152, 1.

*-ias*, suffix, 148, 6, *b*).

*-ibam*, in imperf., 116, 4, *b*).

*-ibō*, in future, 116, 4, *b*).

*Ictus*, 366, 5.

*-icus*, suffix, 151, 2; 152, 2.

*id aetatis*, 185, 2.

*id genus*, 185, 1.

*id quod*, 247, 1, *b*.

*id temporis*, 185, 2.

Ideal 'you'; see Indefinite second person.

*idem*, 87; 248.

*idem ac*, 248, 2.

*Ides*, 371, 2, *c*).

*-idēs*, suffix, 148, 6, *a*).

*-idēs*, suffix, 148, 6, *a*).

*-idō*, suffix, 147, 3, *c*).

*idōneus*, not compared, 74, 2; w. dat., 192, 2; w. *ad* and acc., 192, 2 and N.; with rel. clause of purpose, 282, 3.

*-idus*, suffix, 150, 3.

*Idūs*, fem. by exception, 50.

*-ie*, in voc. sing. of adjs. in *-ius*, 63, 1.

*iēns*, pres. partic. from *ēt*, 132.

*-iēns*, as ending of numeral adverbs, 79 and N.

*-ier*, inf. ending, 216, 4, *a*.

*-iēs*, nouns in, 51.

*igitur*, 344, 1, *c*).

*ignis*, decl., 38.

*-ii*, in gen. sing. of *id*-stems, 25, 2.

*īs*, in dat. and abl. plu. of *is*, 87.

*-ile*, suffix, 148, 3.

*Ilion*, decl., 27.

*-ilis*, suffix, 151, 2.

*-ilis*, suffix, 150, 4.

Illative conjunctions, 344.

*ille*, 87; 'the following,' 246, 2; 'the former,' 246, 1; 'the well-known,' 246, 3; position, 350, 5, *b*.

*illūc*, 87, footnote 3.

*-illus (a, um)*, diminutive suffix, 148, 1.

*-im*, in acc., 3d decl., 38, 1.

*-im*, *-is* in subjv., 116, 4, *d*.

*impedimentum*, *impedimenta*, 61.

Imperative, 281; tenses in, 94, 3; 281, 1; future indic. with force of, 261, 3.

— as protasis of a conditional sent., 305, 2; as apodosis, 302, 4.

— sent. in indir. disc., 316.

Imperfect tense, 260; conative, 260, 3; inceptive, 260, 3; with *jam*, etc., 260, 4; epistolary imp., 265.

Imperfect subjv. in conditional sent. referring to the past, 304, 2.

Impersonal verbs, 138; gen. with, 209; dat. with, 187, II, *b*; in passive, 256, 3; with substantive clauses developed from volitive, 295, 6; of result, 297, 2; with infin., 327, 1; 330.

*impetus*, defective, 57, 4.

Implied indir. disc., 323.

*īmus*, 'bottom of,' 241, 1.

*īn*, prep., 143; verbs compounded w. *īn* governing acc., 175, 2, *a*, 2; verbs compounded w. *īn* governing dat., 187, III.

*īn* with abl. of place, 228; with abl. of time, 230, 2; 231.

*-īna*, suffix, 148, 5.

Inceptives, 155, 1.

Inchoatives, 155, 1.

Incomplete action, 257, 1, *b*; 267, 3.

Indeclinable adjs., 70, 6; 80, 6.

— nouns, 58; gender of, 15, 3.

Indefinite price, 225, 1; 203, 4.

Indefinite value, 203, 3.

Indefinite pronouns, 91; 252; in conditions, 302, 3.

Indefinite second person, 280, 3; 356, 3; 302, 2.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

Indicative, equivalent to Eng. subjv., 271.  
 — in apodosis of conditional sent. of 3d type, 304, 3 *a*) and *b*).  
*indigēō*, constr., 214, 1, N. 2.  
*indignus*, with abl., 226, 2; with rel. clause of purpose, 282, 3.  
 Indirect discourse, defined, 313 f.; mood in, 313 ff.; tenses in, 317-18; declarative sentences in, 314; interrog. sentences in, 315; imperative sentences in, 316; conditional sentences in, 319-22; verbs introducing, 331, 1; verb of saying, etc., implied, 314, 2; ind. in subord. clauses of indir. disc., 314, 3; inf. for subjv. in indir. disc., 314, 4; subj. acc. omitted, 314, 5; implied indir. disc., 323.  
 — questions, 300; particles introducing, 300, 1, *a*; deliberative subjv. in indir. quest., 300, 2; indir. quest. w. *si*, 300, 3; double indir. questions, 300, 4; indic. in indir. quest., 300, 6; in conditional sents. of 3d type, 322, 6.  
 — reflexives, 244, 2.  
 — object, 187.  
*inferum*, *inferior*, 73, 2.  
*infimus*, 241, 1.  
 Infinitive, gender of, 15, *A*, 3; in *-ier*, 116, 4, *a*; force of tenses in, 270; 326 ff.  
 — fut. perf. inf., 270, 4; periphrastic future, 270, 3.  
 — without subj. acc., 326-328; 314, 5.  
 — with subj. acc., 329-331.  
 — as obj., 328; 331.  
 — as subj., 327; 330.  
 — with adjs., 333.  
 — denoting purpose, 326, N.  
 — in abl. abs., 227, 3.  
 — in exclamations, 334.  
 — historical inf., 335.  
*infūtiā*, constr., 182, 5.  
 Inflection, 11.  
 Inflections, 11 ff.  
*infīrā*, prep. w. acc., 141.  
*ingēns*, comp., 73, 4.  
*infūriā*, abl. of manner, 220, 2.  
*injussū*, defective, 57, 1; the abl., 219, 2.  
*inl.* = *ill-*, 9, 2.

*innixus*, w. abl., 218, 3.  
*inops*, decl., 70, 2.  
*inguam*, conj., 134.  
 Inseparable prepositions, 159, 3, N.  
*insidiae*, plu. only, 56, 3.  
*instar*, 58; with gen., 198, 2.  
 Instrumental uses of abl., 213; 218 ff.  
 Intensive pron., 88.  
 Intensives (verbs), 155, 2.  
*inter*, prep. w. acc., 141; compounded w. verbs, governing dat. 187, III; to express reciprocal relation, 245.  
*interdūcō*, const., 188, 1, *a*.  
*interest*, constr., 210; 211.  
*interior*, comp., 73, 1.  
 Interjections, 145.  
 Interlocked order, 350, 11, *d*.  
 Interrogative pronouns, 90.  
 — sentences, 162; particles, 162, 2; omitted, 162, 2, *d*); in indir. disc., 315.  
*intrā*, prep. w. acc., 141.  
 Intransitive verbs, with cognate acc., 176, 4; in passive, 256, 3; 187, II, *b*; impersonal intransitives, 138, IV.  
*-inus*, suffix, 151, 2; 152, 1; 152, 3.  
*-iō*, verbs of 3d conj., 109.  
*-ior*, *ius*, comparative ending, 71.  
*ipse*, 88; 249; as indir. reflexive, 249, 3.  
*ipsius* and *ipsōrum*, with possessive pronouns, 243, 3.  
*-is*, decl. of nouns in, 23.  
 Irregular comparison, 72 ff.; nouns, 42; verbs, 124 f.  
*is*, 87; 247; as personal pron., 247, 2.  
*-is*, as patronymic ending, 148, 6, *b*); nouns in *-is* of 3d decl., 37 f.; adjs. in *-is*, 69.  
*-is*, acc. plu., 3d decl., 37; 40.  
 —, *-itis*, abl. of patrials in, 70, 5, *c*).  
*istae*, 87, footnote 2.  
*iste*, 87; 246, 4.  
*istic*, 6, 4.  
*istūc*, 6, 4; 87, footnote 2.  
*ita*, in answers, 162, 5.  
*itaque*, 344, 1, *a*).  
*iter*, 42, 1.  
*-itia*, 149.  
*-itō*, frequentatives in, 155, 2, *a*.  
*-ium*, gen. of nouns in, 25, 2; ending of gen. plu., 3d decl., 37 f.; 39; 40; 147, 3, *b*); 148, 2.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

*-ius*, gen. and voc. sing. of nouns in, 25, 1 and 2; of adjs., 63, *a*; 151, 2; 152, 2; 152, 3; *-ius* for *-iūs*, 362, 1, *a*).  
*-iūs*, suffix, 151, 2.

J.

*j*, 1, 2.  
*jaciō*, conj., 109, 2, *a*); compounds of, 9, 3; 362, 5.  
*jam*, etc., with present tense, 259, 4; with imperfect, 260, 4.  
*jecur*, decl., 42, 3.  
*jocō*, abl. of manner, 220, 2.  
*jocus*, plu. of, 60, 2.  
 Joining, verbs of; construction, 358, 3.  
*jubēō*, constr., 295, 1, *a*; 331, II.  
*jūdīcor*, w. inf., 332, *c*.  
*jūgerum*, 59, 1.  
 Julian calendar, 371.  
*jungō*, w. abl., 222, *A*.  
*Juppīter*, decl., 41.  
*jūrātūs*, 114, 2.  
*jūre*, abl. of manner, 220, 2.  
*jūs est*, with substantive clause, 297, 3.  
*jussū*, 57, 1; the abl., 219, 2.  
 Jussive subjv., 275; equiv. to a protasis, 305; 2.  
*juvat*, w. acc., 175, 2, *c*); with inf., 327, 1.  
*Juvenālē*, abl., 70, 5, *b*.  
*juvenis*, a cons. stem, 38, 2; comparison, 73, 4.  
*juvō*, with acc., 187, II, N.  
*jūxtā*, prep. w. acc., 141.

K.

*k*, 1, 1.  
 Knowing, verbs of, w. inf., 331, I.  
 Knowledge, adjs. of, w. gen., 204.

L.

*l*, pron., 3, 3.  
 Labial mutes, 2, 4.  
 — stems, 31; gender of, 43, 3; 46, 1.  
*lacer*, decl., 65, 1.  
*lacūs*, decl., 49, 3.  
*laedō*, w. acc., 187, II, N.  
*laetus*, w. adverbial force, 239.  
*lapis*, decl., 33.  
*largior*, 113.  
 Latin period, 362, 5.  
 Length of syllables, 5, *B*.  
 Length of vowels, 5, *A*.  
*-lentus*, suffix, 151, 3.

*lēō*, decl., 35.  
*Liber*, decl., 23, 2.  
*liber*, adj., decl., 65, 1.  
*liberō*, constr., 214, 1, N. I.  
*liberta*, *libertābus*, 21, 2, *c*).  
*liberum*, gen. plu., 25, 6, *c*).  
*līcet*, with subjv., 295, 6 and 8; 308, *a*; with inf., 327, 1; 330.  
*līcet*, adversative, 309, 4.  
 Likeness, adjs. of, w. dat., 192, 1.  
 Limit of motion, acc. of., 182.  
 Lingual mutes, 2, 4.  
*līnter*, decl., 40.  
 Liquids, 2, 5.  
 — stems, 34.  
*lis*, decl., 40, 1, *d*).  
 Litotes, 375, 1.  
*littera*, *litterae*, 61.  
*Locutī*, 17, 1; in *-ae*, 21, 2, *c*); in *-ī*, 25, 5; syntax, 232; apposition with, 169, 4; loc. uses of abl., 213; 228 f.  
*locō*, *locis*, the abl., 228, 1, *b*.  
*locus*, plurals of, 60, 2.  
 Long syllables, 5, *B*, 1.  
 — vowels, 5, *A*, 1.  
*longius* = *longius quam*, 217, 3.  
*longum est* = Eng. potential, 271, 1, *b*.  
*lubet*, *lubidō*, spelling, 9, 1.  
*lūdis*, the abl., 230, 1.  
*-lus*, *-la*, *-lum*, diminutives in, 148, 1.  
*lūx*, 57, 7.

M.

*m*, pron., 3, 3; changed to *n* before *d*, *c*, 8, 5, *c*; *m*-stem, 35, footnote; *m*-final in poetry, 366, 10.  
*maereō*, w. acc., 175, 2, *b*.  
*magis*, comparison, 77, 1; comparison with, 74.  
*magnī*, gen. of value, 203, 3.  
*magnopere*, compared, 77, 1.  
*magnus*, compared, 72.  
 Making, verbs of, w. two accusatives, 177.  
*male*, comparison, 77, 1.  
*maledīcēns*, comparison, 71, 5, *a*).  
*mālīm*, potential subjv., 280, 2, *a*.  
*māllem*, potential subjv., 280, 4.  
*mālō*, 130; with inf., 331, IV, and *a*; with subjv., 296, 1, *a*.  
*malus*, comparison, 72.  
*mane*, indeclinable, 58.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

Manner, abl. of, 220.  
*mare*, decl., 39, 2; *marī*, 228, 1, c).  
*mās*, decl., 40, 1, d).  
 Masculine, see Gender.  
 Masculine caesura, 368, 3, c.  
 Material, abl. of, 224, 3.  
*māteriēs*, *māteria*, 59, 2, a).  
*mātūrē*, compared, 77, 1.  
*mātūrus*, compared, 71, 3.  
*maxime*, adjs. compared with, 74.  
*maximī*, as gen. of value, 203, 3.  
*maximus*, 9, 1.  
 Means, abl. of, 218, abl. abs. denoting, 227, 2; denoted by partic., 337, 2, d.  
*mēd*, for *mē*, 84, 3.  
*Mediae* (consonants), 2, 3, b), footnote 2.  
*medius*, 'middle of,' 241, 1.  
*mei*, as objective gen., 242, 2.  
*melior*, comparison, 72.  
*melius est* = Eng. potential, 271, 1 b).  
*memini*, 133; constr., 206, 1, a; 2, a.  
*memor*, decl., 70, 2.  
*-men*, *-mentum*, suffixes, 147, 4.  
*mēnsis*, 38, 2, footnote 1.  
*mentem* (*in mentem venire*), 206, 3.  
*-met*, enclitic, 6, 3; 84, 2.  
 Metrical close of sent., 350, 12.  
*metuō*, w. subjv., 296, 2.  
*mi*, dat., 84, 1.  
*mi*, voc. of *meus*, 86, 2.  
 Middle voice, verbs in, 175, 2, d).  
*miles*, decl., 33.  
*militiae*, locative, 232, 2.  
*mille*, *milia*, decl., 80, 5.  
*minimē*, comparison, 77, 1; in answers, 162, 5, b).  
*minimus*, comparison, 72.  
*minor*, comparison, 72.  
*minoris*, gen. of value, 203, 3; of price, 203, 4.  
*minus*, comparison, 77, 1; = *minus quam*, 217, 3; *quō minus*, 295, 3; *sī minus*, note, 2 and a.  
*miror*, conj., 113.  
*mīrus*, comparison, 75, 2.  
*misēre*, with abl., 222, A; with dat., 358, 3.  
*misēreor*, with gen., 209, 2.  
*miserēscō*, with gen., 209, 2.  
*miseret*, constr., 209.  
 Mixed stems, 40.  
*modium*, gen. plu., 25, 6, a).

*mōdo*, in wishes and provisos, 310.  
*moneō*, 103; constr., 178, 1, d).  
 months, gender of names of, 15, 1; decl., 68, 1; abl. of month names, 70, 5, a); names, 371, 1.  
 Moods, 94, 2.  
 — in independent sentences, 271 f.  
 — in dependent clauses, 282 f.  
*Mora*, 366, 1.  
*mōrīor*, conj., 109, 2, c).  
*mōs*, decl., 36; *mōrēs*, 61.  
*mōs est*, with subjv., clause, 297, 3.  
*mūlibre secus*, constr., 185, 1.  
 Multiplication, distributives used to indicate, 81, 4, c.  
*multū*, 77, 3; compared, 77, 1.  
*multus*, compared, 72; with another adj., 241, 3.  
*mūs*, decl., 40, 1, d).  
*mūtāre*, with abl., 222, A.  
 Mutes, 2, 3.  
 Mute stems, 30.

N.

*n*, pronunciation, 3, 3; *n*-stems, 35.  
*n adulterīnum*, 2, 6.  
*-nam*, appended to *quis*, 90, 2, d.  
 Names, Roman, 373.  
 Naming verbs of, w. two accusatives, 177, 1.  
*Nasals*, 2, 6.  
*Nasal stems*, 35.  
*nātū*, 57, 1; *maximus nātū*, *minimus nātū*, 73, 4, footnotes, 4, 5; 226, 1.  
 Natural gender, 14.  
*nātūs*, constr., 215.  
*nāvīs*, decl., 41, 4  
*nd*, vowel short before, 5, 2, a.  
*-ne*, 6, 3 f.; 162, 2, c); 300, 1, b); *-ne*... *an*, 162, 4; in indir. double questions, 300, 4.  
*ne*, in prohibitions, 276; with hortatory subjv., 274; with jussive, 275; with concessive, 278; with optative, 279; in purpose clauses, 282; in substantive clauses, 295 f., 296; in provisos, 310.  
*ne*, 'lest,' 282, 1; 296, 2.  
*ne nōn* for *ut* after verbs of fearing, 296, 2.  
*ne*... *quidem*, 347, 1; 2.  
 Nearness, adjs. of, w. dat., 192, 1.  
*nec*, 341, 1, d); *nec usquam*, 341, 2, d).

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

*necessē est*, w. subjv., 295, 8.  
*necne*, in double questions, 162, 4.  
*nēfās*, indeclinable, 58.  
 Negatives, 347, 2; two negatives strengthening the negation, 347, 2.  
*nēmō*, defective, 57, 3; use, 252, 6.  
*nēquam*, indeclinable, 70, 6; compared, 72.  
*neque*, 341, 1, d); *neque* in purpose clauses, 282, 1, e.  
*nequeō*, conj., 137, 1.  
*nē quis*, use, 91, 5.  
*nēquiter*, compared, 77, 1.  
*nesciō an*, 300, 5.  
*nesciō quis*, as indef. pron., 253, 6.  
 Neuter, see Gender.  
*neuter*, decl., 66; use, 92, 1.  
*nēve (neu)*, in purpose clauses, 282, 1, d.  
*nf*, quantity of vowel before, 5, 1, a.  
*nihil*, indeclinable, 58.  
*nihil est cūr, quīn*, 295, 7.  
*ningit*, 'it snows', 138, 1.  
*nisi*, 306, 1 and 4.  
*nisi forte*, 306, 5.  
*nisi sī*, 306, 5.  
*nisi vērō*, 306, 5.  
*nītor*, constr., 218, 3.  
*nīx*, decl., 40, 1, d).  
 No, in answers, 162, 5, b.  
*-nō-* class of verbs, 117, 4.  
*nōlī*, with inf., in prohibitions, 276, b.  
*nōlim*, potential subjv., 280, 2, a.  
*nōllem*, potential subjv., 280, 4.  
*nōlō*, 130; with inf., 331, IV and a; 276, 2, a; with subjv., 296, 1, a.  
*nōmen*, decl., 35; *nōmen est*, constr., 190, 1; *nōmen*, as part of Roman name, 373.  
 Nominal, 17; 170; used for voc., 171, 1; nom. sing., lacking, 57, 6; pred. nom., 168.  
 Nones, 371, 2, b).  
*nōn*, in answers, 162, 5, b); with potential subjv., 280; with deliberative, 277.  
*nōn dubitō quīn*, with subjv., 298; *nōn dubitō*, w. inf., 298, a; b.  
*nōn modo* for *nōn modo nōn*, 343, 2, a.  
*nōnne*, 162, 2, a); 300, 1, b), N.  
*nōn quīa*, with ind., 286, 1, c; with subjv., 286, 1, b.  
*nōn quīn*, with subjv., 286, 1, b.  
*nōn quod*, with ind., 286, 1, c; with subjv., 286, 1, b.

*nōs = ego*, 242, 3.  
*nōstrī*, as objective gen., 242, 2.  
*nōstrūm*, as gen. of whole, 242, 2; as possessive gen., 242, 2, a.  
 Nouns, 12 ff.; 353; derivation of, 147 f.  
 — in -i- not always i-stems, 38, 1.  
 — of agency, force, 353, 4.  
 — used in plu. only, 56.  
 — used in sing. only, 55.  
 — used only in certain cases, 57.  
 — indeclinable, 58.  
 — with change of meaning in plural, 61.  
 — syntax, 166 f.  
 — predicate, agreement of, etc., 167 f.  
 — appositives, agreement of, etc., 169 f.

Noun and adj. forms of the verb, 95, 2.  
*nōvī*, as pres., 262, A.  
*nōvus*, compared, 73, 3.  
*nīs*, quantity of vowel before, 5, 1, a.  
*-nīs*, decl. of nouns in, 40, 1, c).  
*nīt*, quantity of vowel before, 5, 2, a.  
*nūbēs*, decl., 40, 1, a.  
*nūlla causa est cūr, quīn*, 295, 7.  
*nūltus*, decl., 66; 57, 3; use, 92, 1.  
*nūm*, 162, 2, b); 300, 1, b).  
 Number, 16; 94, 4.  
 Numerals, 78 f.; peculiarities in use of, 81.  
*nūmquis*, decl., 91, 5.  
*nūper*, compared, 77, 1.  
*-nūs*, suffix, 151, 2.

O.

*ō*, vowel, 2, 1; as element in diphthong *ā*, 2, 1; pron., 3, 1; alternating w. *ī* in certain classes of words, 9, 1; 2; 4; i-stems, 23; 24; in *cībō*, 77, 2, a; in *duō*, 80, 2; in *egō*, 84; 363, 4, a; in *modō*, 363, 4, a; in compounds of *pro-*, 363, 4, c; in *amō*, *leō*, etc., 363, 4, b.  
*ō*, pron., 3, 1; for *au*, 7, 1, e; by contraction, 7, 2; in abl. sing. of ad decl., 23; in nom. sing. of 3d decl., 35; in Greek nouns, 47, 8; in adverbs, 77, 2; in *amōbō*, 80, 2, a; in personal endings, 96.  
*ōb*, prep. w. acc., 141; verbs compounded w. governing dat., 187, III.  
 Obeying, verbs of, w. dat., 187, II.  
 Object, direct, 172 f.; two objects w. same verb, 177; 178; indirect, 187 f.; inf. as obj., 326; 328; 329; 331.  
 Objective gen., 200.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

Obligation, verb in expression of, 304, 3, *a*; see also Duty.

Oblique cases, 17, 2.

*obliviscor*, constr., 206, 1, *b*; 2.

*octōdecim* (for *undēvigintē*), 81, 2.

*ōdē*, 133.

*oe*, 2, 1; pron., 3, 2.

Old forms, *familiās*, 21, 2, *a*; *aulāi*, 21, 2, *b*; *servos*, *aevom*, *equos*, etc., 24; *mēd*, *tēd*, 84, 3; *sēd*, 85, 3.

*olle*, archaic for *ille*, 87.

*-olus* (*a*, *um*), 148, 1.

*-om*, later *-um* in 2d decl., 23.

*-on*, Greek nouns 2d decl. in, 27.

Onomatopœia, 375, 4.

*opera*, *operae*, 61.

Operations of nature, impersonal verbs expressing, 138, 1.

*opīniōne* with comparatives, 217, 4.

*opis*, 57, 6; *opes*, 61.

*oportet*, 138, II; w. subjv., 295, 6; 8; w. inf., 327; 330.

*oportuit*, with pres. inf. 'ought to have,' 270, 2; with perf. inf., 270, 2, *a*.

*oppidum* (*Genavam ad oppidum*), 182, 2, *a*.

Optative subjv., 272; 279; substantive clauses developed from, 296.

*optimātēs*, decl., 40, 1, *d*.

*optimus*, comp., 72.

*optō*, w. subst. cl. developed from optative, 296, 1.

*optumus*, spelling, 9, 1.

*opus est*, w. abl., 218, 2; w. partic., 218, 2, *c*.

*-or*, nouns in, 34; 36; *-or* for *-os*, 36; gender of nouns in, 43, 1; exceptions in gender, 44, 2; as suffix, 147, 2.

Oratio Obliqua, 313 f.

Order of words, 348 f.

Ordinals, 78, 1; 79.

*orior*, conjugation, 123, VII.

*orisundus*, constr., 215, 2.

*ōrō*, with acc., 178, 1, *a*.

*Orpheus*, decl. 47, 6.

Orthography, peculiarities, 9.

*ortus*, constr., 215.

*ōs*, decl., 57, 7.

*os*, decl., 42.

*-os*, later *-us* in 2d decl., 23.

*-ōs*, later *-or* in 3d decl., 36, 1.

— *-ōs*, Greek nouns, 2d decl. in, 27.

*-ōsus*, form of suffix, 151, 3.

*ōvis*, decl., 38, 1.

Oxymoron, 375, 2.

P.

*ō*, pron., 3, 3; by assimilation, 8, 4; by partial assimilation, 8, 5.

*paenitet*, 138, II; with gen., 209.

*palam*, as prep. w. abl., 144, 2.

Palatal mutes, 2, 4.

*palūster*, decl., 68, 1.

Parasitic vowels, 7, 3.

*parātus*, with infin., 333.

Pardon, verbs signifying, w. dat., 187, II.

*pariō*, 109, 2, *a*).

*paris*, *partes*, 61.

*parte*, abl. of place, 228, 1, *b*.

*partem*, adverbially used, 185, 1.

Participation, adjs. of, w. gen., 204, 1.

Participial stem, 97, III; formation, 119.

Participles, in *-ans* and *-ēns*, 70, 3; gen. plur. of in *-um*, 70, 7; pres. act. partic., 97, I, 5; 101; 103; 105; 107; 110; 113; fut. act. partic., 97, III; as one of the principal parts of the verb, p. 55, footnote; 100; 101; 103; 105; 107; 110; 113; perf. pass. partic., 97, III; 102; 104; 106; 108; 111; 113; gerundive, see Gerundive; fut. act., peculiar formation of, 119, 4; perf. pass., w. act. or neuter meaning, 114, 2; of deponents, 112, *b*; syntax, 336 ff.

Participles, fut. act., 119, 4; denoting purpose, 337, 4.

— perf. act., how supplied, 356, 2.

— perf. pass., 336, 3; as pres., 336, 5.

— pres. partic., 336, 2; with conative force, 336, 2, *a*.

— perf. pass., with active meaning, 114, 2; pred. use of partic., 337, 2; participles equivalent to subordinate clauses, 337, 2; to coördinate clauses, 337, 5; w. *opus est*, 218, 2, *c*; with noun equivalent to abstract noun, 337, 6; with *habeō*, 337, 7.

— with *videō*, *audiō*, *faciō*, etc., 337, 3.

Particles, 139 f.; 341 f.

Partitive apposition, 169, 5.

Partitive gen., so called, 201.

Parts of speech, 10.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

*parum*, comparison, 77, 1.  
*parvī*, gen. of value, 203, 3.  
*parvus*, comparison, 72.  
 Passive, verbs in, with middle meaning, 175, 2, d) ; 256 ; verbs governing dat, used in pass. only impersonally, 187, II, b ; constr. of passive verbs of saying, etc., 332, and note ; how supplied when missing, 356, 1.  
*patiōr*, conj., 109, 2, c) ; 113 ; with inf., 331, III.  
 Patrial adj., 70, 5, c).  
 Patronymics, 148, 6.  
*paulum*, formation, 77, 3.  
*paulus*, spelling, 9, 2.  
*pauper*, decl., 70, 1.  
*pedester*, decl., 68, 1.  
*pelagus*, gender of, 26, 2.  
*pelvis*, decl., 38, 1.  
 Penalty, abl. of, 208, 2, b.  
*penātēs*, decl., 40, 1, d).  
*penes*, prep., w. acc., 141.  
 Pentameter, dactylic, 369.  
 Penult, 6, 2.  
*per*, prep. w. acc., 141 ; with acc. of time and space, 181, 2.  
 Perceiving, verbs of, w. inf., 331, I.  
 Perfect active ptc., how supplied in Latin, 356, 2.  
 Perfect pass. partic., force of w. dependent verbs, 112, b ; dat. of agency sometimes used w., 189, 2 ; *opus*, 218, 2, c.  
 Perfect stem, 97, II ; formation, 118.  
 — in -āvī, -ēvī, -īvī contracted, 116, 1.  
 — historical perf., 262.  
 — with force of pres., 262 ; 133, 2 ; pres. perf. and hist. perf. distinguished, 237, 1 and 2 ; gnomic perf., 262, 1 ; perf. subjv. as historical tense, 268, 6 and 7, b ; perf. inf. w. *oportuit*, 270, 2 ; perf. prohibitive, 279, a ; perf. potential, 280, 1 and 2 ; perf. concessive, 278 ; sequence of tenses after perf. inf., 268, 2.  
 Periodic structure, 351, 5.  
 Periphrastic conj., 115 ; 269, 3 ; in conditional sentences of the 3d type, 304, 3, b) ; in indir. disc., 322 ; in passive, 337, 8, b, 1.  
 — fut. inf., 270, 3.

Persons, 95, 4 ; ad sing. of indefinite subject, 356, 3.  
 Personal pronouns, 84 ; 242 ; as subject, omission of, 166, 2 ; as objective genitives, 242, 2.  
 — endings, 96.  
*persuādeō*, with dat., 187, II, a ; with subjv., 295, 1.  
 Persuading, verbs of, w. dat., 187, II.  
*ph*, 2, 3, c ; 2, 4 ; 3, 3.  
*pigēt*, with gen., 209.  
 Pity, verbs of, w. gen., 209, 1 and 2.  
 Place to which, 182 ; whence, 229 ; place where, 228.  
*placitus*, force, 114, 2.  
 Pleasing, verbs of, w. dat., 187, II, a ; w. acc., 187, II, a, N.  
*plēbēs*, heteroclite, 59, 2, d).  
*plēbī*, gen., 52, 2.  
 Plenty and Want, verbs of, constr., 212 ; cf. 218, 8.  
*plēnus*, w. gen., 218, 8, a.  
 Pleonasm, 374, 3.  
*plērāque*, 6, 5.  
*pluit*, 138, I.  
 Pluperfect tense, formation, 100 ; syntax, 263 ; 265 ; 287, 2 ; 288, 3 ; with imperfect meaning, 133, 2.  
 Plural, 16 ; in 5th decl., 52, 4 ; of proper names, 55, 4, a) ; of abstract nouns, 55, 4, c) : nouns used in, only, 56 ; with change of meaning, 61 ; stylistic use, 353, 1 ; 2.  
*Pluralia tantum*, 56 ; 81, 4, b).  
*plūris*, gen. of value, 203, 3.  
*plūs*, decl., 70 ; 70, 4 ; = *plūs quam*, 217, 3.  
*poēma*, decl., 47, 5.  
 Polysyndeton, 341, 4, b).  
*por*, inseparable prep., 159, 3, e.  
*porticus*, gender, 50.  
*portus*, decl., 49, 3.  
*poscō*, constr., 178, 1, a).  
 Position of clauses, 351, 3.  
 — of words, 348 ; 350 ; 351.  
 Possessive dat., 190 ; gen., 198 ; contrasted with dat. of poss., 359, 1.  
 Possessive pronouns, 86 ; 243 ; = objective gen., 243, 2 ; position of, 243, 1, a.  
 Possibility, verbs of, put in indic. in cond. sentences, 304, 3, a.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

*possum*, 126; with present infin., 'I might,' 271, 1, a; in cond. sentences, 304, 3, a.  
*post*, prep. w. acc., 144, 1; in expressions of time, 357, 1.  
 Post-positive words, 343, 1, c.  
*posteāquam*, 287, 1; 4.  
*posterus*, *posterior*, comp., 73, 2.  
*posteāquam*, 287; separated, 287, 3; with imperf. ind., 287, 4; w. pluperf. ind., 287, 3; with subjv., 287, 5.  
*postrēmus*, use, 241, 2.  
*postridē*, with gen., 201, 3, a.  
*postulō*, constr., 178, 1, a.  
 Potential subjv., 272; 280.  
*potior*, with gen., 212, 2; with abl., 218, 1; in gerundive constr., 339, 4.  
 —, adj., 73, 1.  
*potius*, compared, 77, 1.  
*potuī*, *poterim*, in apodosis of conditional sent. of 3d type, 304, 3, a; in indir. disc., 322, c.  
*potuī*, with pres. inf. = 'could have,' 270, 2.  
*potuerim*, in dependent apodosis, 322, c.  
*pōtū*, force, 114, 2.  
*prae*, prep., w. abl., 142; verbs compounded with governing dat., 187, III; short in *praeacūtus*, etc., 362, 2.  
*Praenōmen*, 373.  
*praeſens*, 125.  
*praeſum*, w. dat., 187, III.  
*prānsus*, force, 114, 2.  
*prēi*, -em, -e, 57, 5, a.  
 Predicate, 163.  
 — gen., 198, 3; 203, 5.  
 Predicate nouns, 167; 168; in acc., 177; predicate nouns or adjs. attracted to dat., 327, 2, a; to nom., 328, 2.  
 — adjectives, 232, 2; 177, 2.  
 Prepositions, assimilation of, in compounds, 8, 4; 9, 2; with acc., 141; with abl., 142; as adverbs, 144; inseparable prepositions, 159, 3, N.; position, 350, 7; prepositional phrases as attributive modifiers, 353, 5; anastrophe of, 144, 3; 141, 2; 142, 3; usage with abl. of sep., 214 f.; with abl. of source, 215.  
 Present tense, 259; gnomic, 259, 1; native, 259, 2; historical, 259, 3; with *jam*, *pridē*, *jam diū*, etc., 259, 4; with *dum*, 'while,' 293, 1; in *Repraesentatiō*, 318; pres. subjv., in -im, 127, 2; pres. partic., see Participle.  
 — stem, 97, 1; formation, 117.  
 — perfect, 257, 1 and 2.  
 Preventing, verbs of, w. subjv. clause, 295, 3.  
 Price, indefinite, special words in gen., 203, 4; also 225, 1.  
 —, abl. of, 225.  
*pridē*, with gen., 201, 3, a; with acc., 144, 2.  
 Primary tenses, see Principal tenses.  
*primus*, 'first who,' 241, 2.  
*princeps*, decl., 31.  
 Principal parts, 99; list, p. 251.  
 — tenses, 258 f.  
*prior*, compared, 73, 1.  
*prius*, compared, 77, 1.  
*priusquam*, with ind., 291; with subjv., 292; separated, 291.  
 Privation, verbs of, w. abl., 214, 1, b and c.  
*prō*, prep. w. abl., 142.  
*procul*, as prep. w. abl., 144, 2.  
*prohibeō*, w. abl., 214, 2; w. subjv. clause, 295, 3.  
 Prohibitions, method of expressing, 276.  
 Prohibitive subjv., 276.  
 Prolepsis, 374, 5.  
 Pronominal adjs., 253.  
 Pronouns, defined, 82; classes, 83; personal, 84; reflexive, 85; possessive, 86; demonstrative, 87; intensive, 88; relative, 89; interrogative, 90; indefinite, 91; pronominal adjs., 92; personal, omission of, as subject, 166, 2; syntax, 242 f.; personal, 242 f.; possess., 243 f.; reflex., 244 f.; reciprocal, 245 f.; demonstrative, 246 f.; relative, 250 f.; indef., 252 f.; position 350, 5; 355.  
 Pronunciation, Roman, 3.  
*prope*, compared, 77, 1.  
 Proper names, abbreviated, 373.  
 — nouns, 12, 1.  
*propior*, compared, 73, 1; with acc., 141, 3.  
*proprius*, with dat., 204, 2, a; with gen., 204, 2.  
*proper*, prep. w. acc., 141.  
 Prosody, 360 f.  
*prosper*, decl., 65, 1.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

*prōsum*, conj., 125, N.

Protasis, 301; denoting repeated action, 302, 3; without *si*, 305; of indef. 2d sing., 302, 2; see Conditions.

Provisos, 310.

*proximē*, -us, comp., 73, 1; 77, 1; with acc., 141, 3.

*prudēns*, decl., 70.

-pte, 86, 3.

*pudet*, with gen., 209; w. inf., 327, 1.

*puer*, decl., 23.

*pulcher*, comp., 71, 3.

*puppis*, decl., 38, 1.

Purpose, dat. of purpose, 191; with dat. and gerundive, 191, 3; w. *ad* and acc., 192, 2; subjv. of purp., 282, 1; w. *quō*, 282, 1, a; w. *ut nē*, 282, 1, b; with *nōn* in purpose clause, 282, 1, c; *nēve* (*neu*) in purpose clauses, 282, 1, d; *neque*, 282, 1, e; rel. clauses of purpose, 282, 2; w. *dignus*, *indignus*, *idōneus*, 282, 3; independent of principal verb, 282, 4; inf., denoting purpose, 362, N.; fut. partic., denoting purpose, 337, 4; gerund, w. *ad*, 338, 3; gerundive, 339, 2; supine, 340.

Q.

-*qu*-, pron., 3, 3; both letters consonants, 74, a.

*quaerō*, w. indir. questions, 300, 1, δ), N.

*quaesō*, 137, 2.

Quality, gen., 203; abl., 224.

*quam*, in comparisons, 217, 2; with sub perl., 240, 3; *ante . . . quam*, *post . . . quam*, *prius . . . quam*, see *antequam*, *postquam*, *priusquam*; *quam quī*, 283, 2, a.

*quam si*, 307, 1.

*quam ut*, with subjv., 284, 4.

*quamquam*, with ind., 309, 2; with subjv., 309, 6; = 'and yet,' 309, 5.

*quamvis*, with subjv., 309, 1; 6; denoting a fact, 309, 6.

*quandō*, 286, 3, δ.

*quanti*, as geh. of price, 203, 4; of value, 203, 3.

Quantity, 5.

— of syllables, 5, B; 363 f.

— of vowels, 5, A; 362; in Greek words, 365.

*quasi*, 307, 1.

*quatiō*, conj., 109, 2, a).

*-que*, accent of word preceding, 6, 3; 6, 5; 341, 1, δ); 2, a); 4, c).

*queō*, 137, 1.

Questions, word, sentence, 162 f.; rhetorical, 162, 3; double (alternative), 162, 4; indirect, 300; questions in indir. disc., 315.

*qui*, rel., 89; interr., 90; indef., 91; for *quis* in indir. questions, 90, 2, δ; with *nē*, *si*, *nisi*, *num*, 91, 5; in purpose clauses, 282, 2; abl., 90, 2, a.

*quia*, in causal clauses, 286, 1.

*quiccum*, 89.

*quiccumque*, decl., 91, 8.

*quidam*, decl., 91; syntax, 252, 3.

*quidem*, post-positive, 347, 1.

*quilibet*, decl., 91.

*quīn*, in result clauses, 284, 3; in substantive clauses, 295, 3; 298; = *qui* *nōn* in clauses of characteristic, 283, 4; with ind., 281, 3; in indir. disc., 322 and a; *nūlla causa est quīn*, 295, 7.

*quīnam*, 90, 2, d.

*Quintīlis* (= *Julius*), 371.

*quippe qui*, in clauses of characteristic, 283, 3.

*Quirītēs*, decl., 40, 1, d.

*quis*, indef., 91; interr., 90; 90, 2, c; 252, 1; *nesciō quis*, 253, 6; with *nē*, *si*, *nisi*, *num*, 91, 5.

*quis est qui*, 283, 2.

*quis = quibus*, 89.

*quisnam*, inflection, 90, 2, d.

*quispiam*, inflection, 91.

*quisquam*, inflection, 91; usage, 252, 4.

*quisque*, inflection, 91; usage, 252, 5.

*quisquis*, inflection, 91, 8. \*

*quitīs*, inflection, 91.

*quō*, in purpose clauses, 282, 1, a.

*quoad*, with ind., 293; with subjv., 293, III, 2.

*quod*, in causal clauses, 286, 1; in substantive clauses, 299; 331, V, a; 'as regards the fact,' 299, 2.

*quod audierim*, 283, 5; *quod sciam*, 283, 5.

*quod (si)*, adverbial acc., 185, 2.

*quom*, early form of *cum*, 9, 1.

*quō minus*, after verbs of hindering, 295, 3.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

*quoniam*, in causal clauses, 286, 1.  
*quoque*, post-positive, 347.  
*-quus*, decl. of nouns in, 24.

## R.

*r*, pron., 3, 3; for *s* between vowels ('Rhotacism'), 8, 1.  
*rapid*, conj., 109, 2, a).  
*rāstrum*, plurals of, 60, 2.  
*ratus*, 'thinking,' 336, 5.  
 Reciprocal pronouns, 85, 2; 245; cf. 253, 3.  
 Reduplication in perf., 118, 4, a); in pres., 117, 7.  
 Reference, dat. of, 188.  
*rēfert*, constr., 210; 211, 4.  
 Reflexive pronouns, 85; 244; 249, 3.  
*regō*, conj., 105.  
 Regular verbs, 101-113.  
*rēi*, 362, 1, b).  
*reicō*, quantity, 362, 5.  
 Relative adverbs, in rel. clauses of purp., 282, 2.  
 — clauses, of purp., 282, 2; w. *dignus*, *indignus*, *idōneus*, 282, 3; of characteristic, 283; denoting cause or opposition, 283, 3; restrictive, 283, 5; introduced by *qui*, 283, 4; 284, 3; conditional rel. clauses, 311; 312, 1 and 2; relative as subj. of inf., 314, 4; rel. clause standing first, 251, 4, a.  
 — pronouns, inflection, 89; use, 250 ff.; = Eng. demonstrative, 251, 6; agreement, 250; not omitted as in Eng., 251, 5; fondness for subordinate clauses, 355.  
*relinquitur ut*, 297, 2.  
*reliqui*, use, 253, 5.  
*reliquum est*, with subjv., 295, 6.  
*rēmex*, decl., 32.  
 Remembering, verbs of, cases used w., 206.  
 Reminding, verbs of, const., 207.  
*reminiscor*, constr., 206, 2.  
 Removing, verbs of, w. abl., 214, 2.  
*reposcō*, constr., 178, 1, a).  
*Repraesentatiō*, 318.  
*requiēs*, *requiem*, *requiētem*, 59, 2, c).  
*rēs*, decl., 51.  
 Resisting, verbs of, w. dat., 187, II.  
 Restrictive clauses, 283, 5.  
 Result, acc. of, 173, B; 176; clauses of,

284; 297; in dependent apodoses, 322, and a; sequence of tense in, 268, 6.  
*revertor*, semi-deponent, 114, 3.  
 Rhetorical questions, 162, 3; 277, a; in indir. disc., 315, 2.  
 Rhotacism, 8, 1; 36, 1.  
 Rivers, gender of names of, 15, A, 1.  
*rogātū*, abl. of cause, 219, 2.  
*rogō*, constr., 178, 1, c); 178, 1, a).  
 Roman pronunciation, 3.  
 Root, 17, 3, footnote 1.  
*-rs*, decl. of nouns in, 40, 1, c).  
*rūre*, abl. place from which, 229, 1, b.  
*rūrī*, abl. place in which, 228, 1, c.  
*rūs*, 57, 7; acc. limit of motion, 182, 1, b.  
 S.  
*s*, pron., 3, 3; changed to *r* between vowels, 8, 1; *s*, *ss*, from *dt*, *tt*, *ts*, 8, 2.  
 -*s*, decl. of monosyllables in, preceded by one or more consonants, 40, 1, b).  
*s*-stems, 36.  
*sacer*, decl., 65; comparison, 73, 3.  
*saepe*, compared, 77, 1.  
*sāl*, 57, 7; *sālēs*, 61.  
*salūbris*, decl., 68, 3.  
*salūtāris*, comp., 73, 4.  
*salvē*, *salvēte*, 137, 4.  
*Samnitēs*, decl., 40, 1, d).  
*sānē*, in answers, 162, 5.  
*sapiō*, conj., 109, 2, a).  
*satur*, decl., 65, 2.  
 Saying, verbs of, w. inf. of ind. disc., 331, 1.  
*scīo*, *quod scīam*, 283, 5.  
 -*scī*-class of verbs, 117, 6; 155.  
*scribere ad aliquem*, 358, 2.  
*sē*, use, 244.  
*sē*, compounds of, 159, 3, e.  
 Second conj., 103; decl., 23; peculiarities, 25; second person indefinite, 280, 3; 356, 3; 302, 2.  
 Secondary tenses, see Historical tenses  
*secundum*, prep. w. acc., 141.  
*secūris*, decl., 38, 1.  
*secus*, compared, 77, 1.  
*secus (virile secus)*, 185, 1; 58.  
*secūtūs*, 'following,' 336, 5.  
*sēd*, *sē*, 85, 3.  
*sēd*, compounds of, 159, 3, e.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

*sed*, 343, 1, a).  
*sedile*, decl., 39.  
*sementis*, decl., 38, 1.  
 Semi-deponent verbs, 114.  
 Semivowels, 2, 8.  
*senex*, decl., 42; compared, 73, 4.  
 Sentences, classification, 160 f.; simple and compound, 164; sentence-structure, 351; sentence questions, 162, 2.  
*sententiā*, abl. of accordance, 220, 3.  
 Separation, dat. of, 188, 2, d); gen., 212, 3; abl., 214.  
 Sequence of tenses, 267; 268.  
*sequester*, decl., 68, 1.  
*sequitur ut*, 297, 2.  
*sequor*, conj., 113.  
 Serving, verbs of, w. dat., 187, II.  
*servos*, decl., 24.  
*sēsē*, decl., 85.  
*Sextilis* (= *Augustus*), 371.  
 Sharing, adjs. of, w. gen., 204, 1.  
 Short syllables, 5, B, 2; vowels, 5, A, 2.  
 Showing, verbs of, w. two accs., 177.  
*sī*, with indir. questions, 300, 3; in protasis, 301; omitted, 305.  
*signifer*, decl., 23, 2.  
*silentiō*, abl. of manner, 220, 2.  
*silvester*, decl., 68, 3.  
*similis*, with dat., 204, 3; with gen., 204, 3; comp., 71, 4.  
*sī minus*, use, 306, 2.  
 Simple sentences, 164.  
*simul*, as prep., w. abl., 144, 2.  
*simul ac*, w. ind., 287, 1; 2.  
*sī nōn*, usage, 306, 1 and 2.  
*sin*, usage, 306, 3.  
*sin minus*, 306, 2, a.  
 Singular, second person indefinite, 280, 3; 356, 3; 302, 2.  
*sinō*, with inf., 331, III.  
*sitis*, decl., 38, 1.  
 Smelling, verbs of, constr., 176, 5.  
 Soft consonants, 2, 3, b), footnote 2.  
*-sō*, verbs in, 155, 2.  
*socer*, decl., 23, 2.  
*socium*, gen. plu., 25, 6, c).  
*sōl*, decl., 57, 7.  
*soleō*, semi-dep., 114, 1.  
*solutus*, used as present partic., 336, 5.  
*sōlus*, 66; *sōlus est qui* with subjv., 283, 2.  
 Sonant consonants, 2, 3, b), footnote 2.

*Sōracte*, decl., 39, 2.  
 Sounds, classification, 2.  
 — of the letters, 3.  
 Source, abl., 215.  
 Space, extent of, 181.  
 Sparing, verbs of, w. dat., 187, II.  
 Specification, abl. of, 226.  
*sphē*, quantity, 362, 1, b.  
 Spelling, see Orthography.  
 Spirants, 2, 7.  
 Spondaic verses, 368, 2.  
 Spondee, 368, 1.  
*sponte suā*, abl. accordance, 220, 3.  
*sponsis*, -e, defective, 57, 2, b.  
 Statutes, fut. imperative used in, 281, 1, b.  
 Stem, 17, 3.  
 —, verb, 97, 117.  
 Structure of sentences, see Sentences.  
 Style, hints on, 352 f.  
*su* = *sv*, 3, 3.  
*sub*, prep. with acc. and abl., 143; compounds of, w. dat., 187, III.  
 Subject, 163; nom., 166; acc., 184; subject acc. of inf., 184; omitted, 314, 5; clauses as subject, 294; 295, 6; inf. as subj., 327; 330.  
 Subjective gen., 199.  
 Subjunctive, tenses in, 94, 3.  
 — in independent sentences, 272; by attraction, 324; tenses of, 266 f.; method of expressing future time in, 269; volitive (hortatory, jussive, prohibitive, deliberative, concessive), 273 f.; optative (wishes), 279; potential, 280; in clauses of purpose, 282; of characteristic, 283; of result, 284; of cause, 286; temporal clauses with *postquam*, *postēquam*, 287, 5; temporal clauses with *cum*, 288-290; with *antequam* and *priusquam*, 292; with *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, 293, III, 2; substantive clauses, 294 f.; indir. questions, 300; in apodosis of first type conditions, 302, 4; jussive subjunctive as protasis of condition, 305, 2; with *velut*, *tamquam*, etc., 307; with *necessē est*, *oportet*, etc., 295, 6 and 8; with *licet*, 309, 4; with *quamvis*, *quamquam*, *etsi*, *cum*, 'although,' 309 f.  
*sublātus*, p. 99, footnote.  
*subm* = *summ*-, 9, 2.  
 Subordinate clauses, 165.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

Substantive clauses, 294 f.; developed from the volitive, 295, 1-8; developed from the optative, 296; with *nōn dubitō*, 298; indir. questions, 300; without *ut*, 295, 8; of result, 297; introduced by *quod*, 299.  
 — use of adjs., 236-8.  
*sublier*, prep. w. acc., 143, 1.  
 Suffixes, 17, 3, footnote 1; 147 f.  
*sui*, 85; as objective gen., 244, 2; = possessive gen., 244, 2.  
*sum*, conj., 100; omitted when auxiliary, 166, 3.  
*summus*, 'top of,' 241, 1.  
*sunt quī*, with subjv., 283, 2.  
*suōpte*, *suāpte*, 86, 3.  
*supellex*, decl., 42, 2.  
*super*, prep. w. acc., 143, 1.  
*superus*, compared, 73, 2.  
 Superlative degree; of adjs., 71, 1; 2; in *-rimus*, 91, 3; in *-limus*, 71, 4; irregular superl., 72; 73; lacking, 73, 4; formed w. *maxime*, 74; of adverbs, 76, 2; irregular, 77, 1; force of, 240, 2.  
 Supine, 340.  
*suprā*, prep. w. acc., 141.  
*-sūra*, suffix, 147, 3, a.  
 Surd consonants, 2, 3, a), footnote 1.  
*sūs*, decl., 41.  
*sustulī*, p. 99, footnote.  
*suus*, decl., 86, 1; 244; *suus quisque*, 244, 4, a.  
*Syllaba anceps*, 366, 10.  
 Syllables, division, 4; quantity of, 5, B.  
 Synapheia, 367, 6.  
 Synaeresis, 367, 1.  
 Synchysis, 350, 11, d).  
 Syncope, 7, 4; 367, 8.  
 Synecdochical acc., 180.  
 Synizesis, 367, 1.  
 Syntax, 160 f.  
 Systole, 367, 3.

T.

*t*, pron., 3, 3; *th*, 2, 3, c; 3, 3; changes, 8, 2; dropped, 8, 3.  
*taedet*, 138, II; w. gen., 209.  
 Taking away, verbs of, w. dat., 188, 2, d.  
*talentum*, gen. plu., 25, 6, a).  
*tamen*, 343, 1, f.  
*tametsi*, 309, 2.  
*tamquam*, *tamquam si*, w. subjv., 307.

*tantōn*, 6, 4.  
*-tās*, 149; gen. *-tātis*, decl. of nouns in, 40, 1, e).  
 Tasting, verbs of, constr., 176, 5.  
 Teaching, verbs of, constr., 178, 1, b.  
*tēd*, = *tē*, 84, 3.  
 Temporal clauses, w. *postquam*, *ut*, *ubi*, *simul ac*, 287; w. *cum*, 288; 289; w. *antequam* and *priusquam*, 291; 292; with *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, 293.  
*temporis* (*id temporis*), 185, 2.  
 Tendency, dat. of, 191.  
*tener*, decl., 64.  
 Tenses, 94, 3; 257 ff.; of inf., 270; of inf. in indir. disc., 317; of participles, 336; of subjv., 266; sequence of, 266-268; in indir. disc., 317; 318.  
 Tenues (consonants), 2, 3, a), footnote 1.  
*tenuis*, position, 142, 3.  
 Terminations, 17, 3.  
*terni*, how used, 81, 4, b.  
*-ternus*, 154.  
*terrā marique*, 228, 1, c.  
*terrester*, 68, 3.  
 Tetrameter verses, 366, 11.  
 Thematic verbs, 101-113.  
 — vowels, 117, footnote.  
 Thesis, 366, 6.  
 Third conj., 105; 109 f.; decl., 28 f.; gender in, 43 f.  
 Threatening, verbs of, 187, II.  
*-tim*, adverbs in, 157, 2.  
 Time, at which, 230; during which, 181; 231, 1; within which, 231.  
*timeō nē* and *ut*, 296, 2.  
*-tinus*, suffix, 154.  
*-tiō*, suffix, 147, 3.  
 Tmesis, 367, 7.  
*-tō* as suffix of verbs, 155, 2.  
*-tor*, use of nouns in, 353, 4.  
*tōtus*, 66; preposition absent w., in expression of place relations, 228, 1, b).  
 Towns, gender of names of, 15, 2; names of, denoting limit of motion, 182, 1, a; denoting place where, 228, 1, a; place from which, 229, 1, a; appositives of town names, 169, 4; 229, 2.  
*trādītur*, *trāditum est*, w. inf., 332, N.  
*trāns*, prep. w. acc., 141; constr. of verbs compounded with, 179.  
 Transitive verbs, 174.  
 Trees, gender of names of, 15, 2.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

**t**  
*tr̄̄s*, decl., 80, 3.  
 Tribach, 370, 2.  
*tribus*, decl., 49, 3; gender, 50.  
 Trimeter verses, 366, 11.  
*tr̄̄s*, use, 81, 4, b).  
*tr̄̄umvir*, gen. plu. of, 25, 6, b).  
*-tr̄̄x*, suffix, 147, 1.  
 Trochee, 366, 2.  
*-tr̄̄m*, suffix, 147, 4.  
 Trusting, verbs of, w. dat., 187, II.  
*tū*, decl., 84.  
*-tūdō*, suffix, 149.  
*tūi*, as objective gen., 242, 2.  
*-tūra*, suffix, 147, 3, a).  
*tūs*, decl., 57, 7.  
*-tūs*, suffix, 147, 3; 151, 4.  
*tūssis*, decl., 38.  
*tūtē*, *tūtēmet*, *tūtēmet*, 84, 2.  
 Two accusatives, 177; 178.  
 Two datives, 191, 2.

**U.**

*u*, instead of *i* in some words, 9, 1; instead of *a*, 9, 1; 9, 4.  
*u*, becomes *v*, 367, 4.  
*u*-stems, 48.  
*ū*-stems, 41.  
*-ū*, dat. sing., 4th decl., 49, 2.  
*über*, decl., 70, 1.  
*ubi*, with ind., 287, 1; 2; with gen., 201, 3.  
*-ubus*, dat. plu., 4th decl., 49, 3.  
*ūllus*, decl., 66.  
*ūlterior*, compared, 73, 1.  
*ultimus*, use, 241, 2.  
*ultrā*, prep. w. acc., 141.  
*-ulus*, diminutive ending, 150, 2; (*a*, *um*), 148, 1.  
*-um*, 1st decl., gen. plu. in, 21, 2, d); 2d decl., 25, 6; for *-ium*, 70, 7.  
*-undus*, *-undī*, in gerund and gerundive, 116, 2.  
*ūnus*, decl., 66; 92, 1; *ūnus est quī*, with subjv., 283, 2.  
*-uriō*, ending of desiderative verbs, 155, 3.  
*-ūrus*, ending of fut. act. partic., 101; 103 ff.; *-ūrus fuisse* in apodosis of conditional sentences contrary-to-fact, in indir. disc., 321, 2; *-ūrus fuerim* in indir. questions serving as apodoses, 322, b).

*-us*, neuter nouns of 2d decl. in, 26, 2; nom. in 3d decl., in *-us*, 36; gender of nouns in *-us* of 3d decl., 43, 3; exceptions in gender, 46, 4.  
*-ūs*, nouns of 3d decl. in, 43, 2.  
*ūsque ad*, w. acc., 141, 1.  
*ūsus est*, with abl., 218, 2.  
*ut*, temporal, 287, 1; 2; *ut*, *utī*, in purpose clauses, 282; in result clauses, 284; in substantive clauses, 295 f.; substantive clauses without, 295, 8; with verbs of fearing, 296, 2.  
*ut nē*, = *nē*, 282, 1, b; 295, 1, 4, 5.  
*ut non* instead of *nē*, 282, 1, c; in clauses of result, 284, 297.  
*ut quī*, introducing clauses of characteristic, 283, 3.  
*ut sī*, w. subjv., 307, 1.  
*uter*, decl., 66; 92, 1.  
*uter*, decl., 40, 1, d).  
*utercumque*, decl., 92, 2.  
*uterlibet*, decl., 92, 2.  
*uterque*, decl., 92, 2; use, 355, 2.  
*utervis*, decl., 92, 2.  
*ūtilius est*, = Eng. potential, 271, 1, b).  
*utinam*, with optative subjv., 279, 1 and 2.  
*ūtor*, with abl., 218, 1; in gerundive constr., 339, 4.  
*utpote quī*, introducing clauses of characteristic, 283, 3.  
*utrdque*, 6, 5.  
*utrum . . . an*, 162, 4; 300, 4.

**V.**

*v*, 1, 1; pron., 3, 3; developing from *u*, 367, 4.  
*v*, becomes *u*, 367, 5.  
*valdē*, by syncope, for *validē*, 7, 4.  
*valē*, 363, 2, b).  
 Value, indefinite, in gen., 203, 3.  
*vannus*, gender of, 26, 1, b).  
 Variations in spelling, 9.  
*vās*, decl., 59, 1.  
*-ve*, 6, 3; 342, 1, b).  
*vel*, 342, 1, b); with superl., 240, 3.  
*velim*, potential subjv., 280, 2, a.  
*vellem*, potential subjv., 280, 4.  
*velut*, *velut sī*, w. subjv., 307, 1.  
*venter*, decl., 40, 1, d).  
*Verba sentiētē et dēclarandī*, w. inf. of indir. disc., 331, 1; passive use of these, 332.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

Verbal adj., 150, 1-4.

Verbs, 94 f.; personal endings, 96; deponent, 112; archaic and poetic forms, 116, 4; irregular, 124; defective, 133; impersonal, 138; with substantive clauses of result, 297, 2; omission of, 166, 3; transitive, 174; used absolutely, 174, a; passives used as middles, 175, 2, d); of smelling and tasting, constr., 176, 5; not used in passive, 177, 3, a; intransitives impersonal in passive, 187, II, b; 256, 3; compounded with preps., constr., 187, III; of judicial action, constr., 208; derivation of, 155 f.; inceptive or inchoative, 155, 1; frequentative or intensive, 155, 2; desiderative, 155, 3; denominative, 156; agreement of, 254 f.

Verb stems, 97; formation of, 117 f. *vereor*, conj., 113; with subst. clause in subjv., 296, 2.

*Vergilius*, gen. of, 25, 1.

*veritus*, with present force, 336, 5.

*vêrō*, 343, 1, g); in answers, 162, 5.

Verse, 366, 3.

Verse-structure, 366 f.

Versification, 361.

*versus*, prep. w. acc., 141; follows its case, 141, 2.

*vêrūm*, 343, 1, b).

*vescor*, with abl., 218, 1.

*vesper*, decl., 23, 2.

*vesperi*, locative, 232, 2.

*vestri*, as obj. gen., 242, 2.

*vestrum*, as gen. of whole, 242, 2; as possessive gen., 242, 2, a.

*vetō*, with inf., 331, 11.

*vetus*, decl., 70; compared, 73, 3.

*vi*, 220, 2.

*vicem*, used adverbially, 185, 1; *vicis*, vice, 57, 5, b.

*victor*, decl., 34.

*viden*, accent, 6, 4.

*videō*, with pres. partic., 337, 3.

*vigil*, decl., 34.

*violenter*, formation, 77, 4, a.

*vir*, decl., 23.

—, gen. plu. of nouns compounded with, 25, 6, b).

*virile secus*, constr., 185, 1.

*virus*, gender of, 26, 2.

*vis*, decl., 41.

*viscera*, used in plu. only, 56, 3.

Vocative case, 17; 19, 1; of Greek proper names in -ās, 47, 4; of adj. in -ius, 63, 1; 171; in -i for -ie, 25, 1; position of, 350, 3.

Voiced sounds, 2, 3, a.

Voiced consonants, 2, 3, b).

Voiceless consonants, 2, 3, a.

Voices, 94; 256; middle voice, 256, 1.

Volitive subjunctive, 272 f.

*volnus*, spelling, 9, 1.

*volo*, 130; with inf., 331, IV and a; 270, 2, a; with subjv., 296, 1, a.

*volt*, spelling, 9, 1.

*voltus*, spelling, 9, 1.

*volucer*, decl., 68, 1.

*voluntate*, 220, 2.

-*volus*, comparison of adj. in, 71, 5.

Vowels, 2, 1; sounds of the, 3, 1; quantity of, 5, A; contraction of, 7, 2; parasitic, 7, 3.

Vowel changes, 7.

*vulgas*, gender of, 26, 2.

-*vum*, -*vus*, decl. of nouns in, 24.

## W.

Want, verbs and adj. of, w. abl., 214, 1, c; d).

Way by which, abl. of, 218, 9.

We, editorial, 242, 3.

Whole, gen. of, 201.

Wills, use of fut. imperative in, 281, 1, b.

Winds, gender of names of, 15, 1.

Wish, clauses with *dum*, etc., expressing a, 310.

Wishes, subjunctive in, 279; see Optative subjunctive.

Wishing, verbs of, with subst. clause, 296, 1; with obj. inf., 331, IV.

Word-formation, 146 f.

Word-order, 348 f.

Word questions, 162, 1.

## X.

*x*, 2, 9; = *cs* and *gs*, 32.

-*x*, decl. of monosyllables in, preceded by one or more cons., 40, 1, b); gender of nouns in -*x* of 3d decl., 43, 2; exceptions, 45, 4.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

## Y.

*y*, 1, 1.  
Yes, how expressed, 162, 5.  
'You,' indefinite, 356, 3; 280, 3; 302, 2.

## Z.

*z*, 1, 1; 2, 9.  
Zeugma, 374, 2, a).







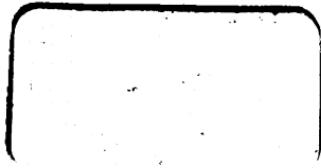
















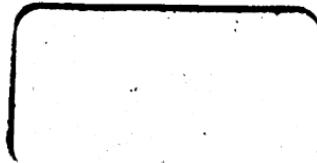












Digitized by Google



